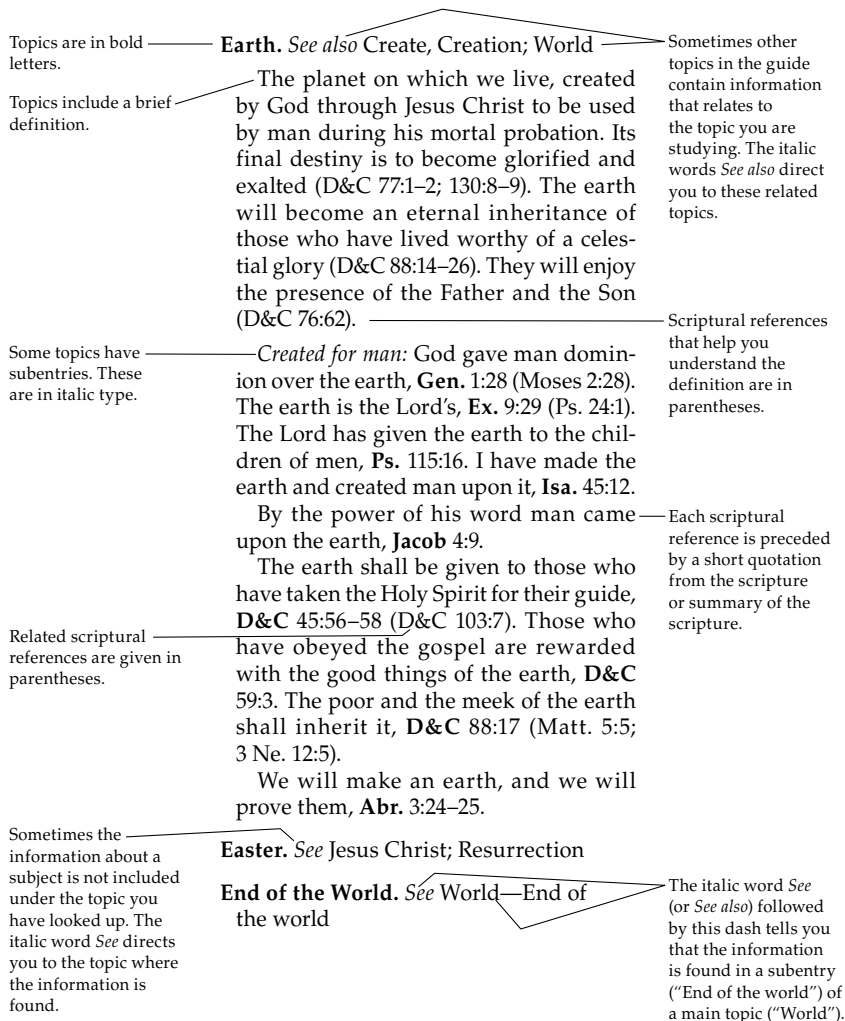


THE GUIDE TO THE SCRIPTURES

The Guide to the Scriptures defines selected doctrines, principles, people, and places found in the Holy Bible, the Book of Mormon, the Doctrine and Covenants, and the Pearl of Great Price. It also provides key scriptural references for you to study for each topic. This Guide can help you in your individual and family study of the scriptures. It can help you answer questions about the gospel, study topics in the scriptures, prepare talks and lessons, and increase your knowledge and testimony of the gospel.

The following diagram explains a sample entry in the Guide to the Scriptures:



Aaron, Brother of Moses. *See also* Aaronic Priesthood; Moses

In the Old Testament, a son of Amram and Jochebed, of the tribe of Levi (Ex. 6:16–20); the elder brother of Moses (Ex. 7:7).

Was appointed by the Lord to assist Moses in bringing the children of Israel out of Egypt and to be his spokesman, Ex. 4:10–16, 27–31; 5:1–12:51. On Mount Sinai, Moses received directions about the appointment of Aaron and his four sons to the Aaronic Priesthood, Ex. 28:1–4. Made a golden calf at the people's request, Ex. 32:1–6, 21, 24, 35. Died on Mount Hor at the age of 123, Num. 20:22–29 (Num. 33:38–39).

The Lord confirmed a priesthood also upon Aaron and his seed, D&C 84:18, 26–27, 30. Those who magnify priesthood callings become the sons of Moses and of Aaron, D&C 84:33–34.

Aaron, Son of Mosiah. *See also* Mosiah, Son of Benjamin; Mosiah, Sons of

In the Book of Mormon, a son of King Mosiah. Aaron served as a missionary whose diligent efforts helped to convert many souls to Christ.

Was an unbeliever who sought to destroy the Church, Mosiah 27:8–10, 34. An angel appeared to him and his companions, Mosiah 27:11. Repented and began preaching the word of God, Mosiah 27:32–28:8. Refused to be named king and went instead to the land of the Lamanites to preach the word of God, Alma 17:6–9. Fasted and prayed for guidance, Alma 17:8–11. Taught King Lamoni's father, Alma 22:1–26. Went to preach to the Zoramites, Alma 31:6–7.

Aaronic Priesthood. *See also* Aaron, Brother of Moses; Law of Moses; Priesthood

The lesser priesthood (Heb. 7:11–12; D&C 107:13–14). Its offices are bishop, priest, teacher, and deacon (D&C 84:30;

107:10, 14–15, 87–88). Anciently, under the law of Moses, there were high priests, priests, and Levites. Because the ancient Israelites rebelled against God, Moses and the holy priesthood were taken from them and the lesser priesthood continued. They had refused to be sanctified and receive the Melchizedek Priesthood and its ordinances. (See D&C 84:23–26.) The Aaronic Priesthood deals with the temporal and outward ordinances of the law and the gospel (1 Chr. 23:27–32; D&C 84:26–27; 107:20). It holds the keys of the ministering of angels, of the gospel of repentance, and of baptism (D&C 13). The Aaronic Priesthood was restored to the earth in this dispensation on May 15, 1829. John the Baptist conferred it on Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery near Harmony, Pennsylvania (D&C 13; JS—H 1:68–73).

And he shall have the covenant of an everlasting priesthood, Num. 25:13. The Lord shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them, Mal. 3:3 (3 Ne. 24:3).

No man taketh this honor unto himself, Heb. 5:4. Perfection does not come by the Levitical Priesthood, Heb. 7:11.

This priesthood shall never be taken from the earth until the sons of Levi do offer an offering, D&C 13. Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery were ordained unto the Aaronic Priesthood, D&C 27:8. The lesser priesthood holds the key of the ministering of angels, D&C 84:26 (D&C 13). There are two priesthoods, namely, the Melchizedek and Aaronic, D&C 107:1. The second priesthood is called the Priesthood of Aaron, D&C 107:13.

Abed-nego. *See also* Daniel

In the Old Testament, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were three Israelite youths who, along with Daniel, were brought into the palace of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon. Abed-nego's Hebrew name was Azariah. The four young men refused to defile themselves by partaking of the king's meat

and wine (Dan. 1). Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were thrown into a fiery furnace by the king but were miraculously preserved (Dan. 3).

Abel. *See also* Adam; Cain

In the Old Testament, a son of Adam and Eve.

Offered to God a more excellent sacrifice than did his brother Cain, **Gen.** 4:4–5 (Heb. 11:4; **Moses** 5:16–21). Was murdered by Cain, **Gen.** 4:8 (**Moses** 5:32).

Received the priesthood from Adam, **D&C** 84:16.

Satan plotted with Cain to murder Abel, **Moses** 5:28–31 (Hel. 6:27).

Abinadi. *See also* Martyr, Martyrdom

A Nephite prophet in the Book of Mormon.

Prophesied that God would punish the people of wicked King Noah unless they repented, **Mosiah** 11:20–25. Was imprisoned for prophesying the destruction of King Noah and his people, **Mosiah** 12:1–17. Taught King Noah's wicked priests of the law of Moses and of Christ, **Mosiah** 12–16. Alma the Elder believed and wrote his words, **Mosiah** 17:2–4. Was burned to death by King Noah, **Mosiah** 17:20.

Abominable, Abomination. *See also* Sin

In the scriptures, something that causes disgust or hatred to the righteous and pure.

Lying lips are abomination to the Lord, **Prov.** 12:22.

Pride is abominable in the sight of the Lord, **Jacob** 2:13–22. The wicked are consigned to a view of their own abominations, **Mosiah** 3:25. Unchastity is most abominable above all sins save murder and denying the Holy Ghost, **Alma** 39:3–5.

The indignation of the Lord is kindled against their abominations, **D&C** 97:24.

Abominable Church. *See* Devil—The church of the devil

Abraham. *See also* Abrahamic Covenant

A son of Terah, born in Ur of the Chaldees (**Gen.** 11:26, 31; 17:5). A prophet of the Lord with whom the Lord made eternal covenants, through which all the nations of the earth are blessed. Abraham was originally named Abram.

Migrated to Haran, where Terah died, **Gen.** 11:31–32 (**Abr.** 2:1–5). Was called by God to journey to Canaan and to receive a divine covenant, **Gen.** 12:1–8 (**Abr.** 2:4, 15–17). Journeyed to Egypt, **Gen.** 12:9–20 (**Abr.** 2:21–25). Settled in Hebron, **Gen.** 13:18. Rescued Lot, **Gen.** 14:1–16. Met with Melchizedek, **Gen.** 14:18–20. Hagar bore his son Ishmael, **Gen.** 16:15–16. His name was changed to Abraham, **Gen.** 17:5. The Lord told Abraham and Sarah that they would have a son, **Gen.** 17:15–22; 18:1–14. Sarah bore his son Isaac, **Gen.** 21:2–3. Was commanded to sacrifice Isaac, **Gen.** 22:1–18. Sarah died and was buried, **Gen.** 23:1–2, 19. Abraham died and was buried, **Gen.** 25:8–10.

Abraham's willingness to offer Isaac was a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son, **Jacob** 4:5. Paid tithes to Melchizedek, **Alma** 13:15. Foresaw and testified of Christ's coming, **Hel.** 8:16–17.

Received the priesthood from Melchizedek, **D&C** 84:14. The faithful become the seed of Abraham, **D&C** 84:33–34 (**Gal.** 3:27–29). Received all things by revelation and has received his exaltation, **D&C** 132:29.

Sought for the blessings of the fathers and for appointment unto the priesthood, **Abr.** 1:1–4. Was persecuted by false priests of Chaldea, **Abr.** 1:5–15. Was saved by the Lord, **Abr.** 1:16–20. Learned about the sun, moon, and stars, **Abr.** 3:1–14. Learned about pre-earth life and the Creation, **Abr.** 3:22–28.

The book of Abraham: Ancient records written by Abraham that came into

the possession of the Church in 1835. The records and some mummies were discovered in Egyptian catacombs by Antonio Lebolo, who willed them to Michael Chandler. Chandler exhibited them in the United States in 1835. Some friends of Joseph Smith bought them from Chandler and gave them to the Prophet, who translated them. Some of these records are now found in the Pearl of Great Price.

Chapter 1 records Abraham's experiences in Ur of the Chaldees, where wicked priests tried to sacrifice him. Chapter 2 tells of his journey to Canaan. The Lord appeared to him and made covenants with him. Chapter 3 records that Abraham saw the universe and perceived the relationships between heavenly bodies. Chapters 4–5 are another account of the Creation.

The seed of Abraham: People who, by obedience to the laws and ordinances of the gospel of Jesus Christ, receive the promises and covenants made by God to Abraham. Men and women may receive these blessings if they are literally of Abraham's lineage or if they are adopted into his family by embracing the gospel and being baptized (Gal. 3:26–29; 4:1–7; D&C 84:33–34; 103:17; 132:30–32; Abr. 2:9–11). Literal descendants of Abraham may lose their blessings by disobedience (Rom. 4:13; 9:6–8).

Abrahamic Covenant. *See also* Abraham; Circumcision; Covenant

Abraham received the gospel and was ordained to the higher priesthood (D&C 84:14; Abr. 2:11), and he entered into celestial marriage, which is the covenant of exaltation (D&C 131:1–4; 132:19, 29). Abraham received a promise that all of the blessings of these covenants would be offered to his mortal posterity (D&C 132:29–31; Abr. 2:6–11). Together, these covenants and promises are called the Abrahamic covenant. The restoration of this covenant was the Restoration of the gospel in the last

days, for through it all the nations of the earth are blessed (Gal. 3:8–9, 29; D&C 110:12; 124:58; Abr. 2:10–11).

Abram. *See* Abraham

Account, Accountable, Accountability. *See also* Agency

The Lord has said that all people are responsible for their own motives, attitudes, desires, and actions.

The age of accountability is the age at which children are considered to be responsible for their actions and capable of committing sin and repenting.

I will judge every one according to his ways, **Ezek.** 18:30.

They shall give account of every idle word, **Matt.** 12:36. Give an account of thy stewardship, **Luke** 16:2. Every one of us shall give an account of himself to God, **Rom.** 14:12. The dead will be judged according to their works, **Rev.** 20:12.

Our words, works, and thoughts will condemn us, **Alma** 12:14. We are our own judges, whether to do good or evil, **Alma** 41:7. Ye are permitted to act for yourselves, **Hel.** 14:29–31. This thing shall ye teach—repentance and baptism unto those who are accountable, **Moro.** 8:10.

All must repent and be baptized who have arrived at the years of accountability, **D&C** 18:42. Satan cannot tempt little children, until they begin to become accountable before me, **D&C** 29:46–47. Children shall be baptized when eight years old, **D&C** 68:27. Every man will be accountable for his own sins in the day of judgment, **D&C** 101:78.

It is given unto men to know good from evil; wherefore they are agents unto themselves, **Moses** 6:56. Men will be punished for their own sins, **A of F** 1:2.

Accountability, Age of. *See* Account, Accountable, Accountability; Baptism, Baptize—Baptism not for infants; Child, Children; Infant Baptism

Acts of the Apostles. *See also* Luke

This book is the second of a two-part work written by Luke to Theophilus. The first part is known as the Gospel According to Luke. Chapters 1–12 record some of the major missionary activities of the Twelve Apostles under the direction of Peter immediately following the Savior's death and resurrection. Chapters 13–28 outline some of the Apostle Paul's travels and missionary work.

Adam. *See also* Adam-ondi-Ahman; Archangel; Eden; Eve; Fall of Adam and Eve; Michael

The first man created on earth.

Adam is the father and patriarch of the human race on the earth. His transgression in the Garden of Eden (Gen. 3; D&C 29:40–42; Moses 4) caused him to “fall” and become mortal, a step necessary in order for mankind to progress on this earth (2 Ne. 2:14–29; Alma 12:21–26). Adam and Eve should therefore be honored for their role in making our eternal growth possible. Adam is the Ancient of Days and is also known as Michael (Dan. 7; D&C 27:11; 107:53–54; 116; 138:38). He is the archangel (D&C 107:54) and will come again to the earth as the patriarch of the human family (D&C 116).

God created man in his own image, **Gen.** 1:26–28 (Moses 2:26–28; Abr. 4:26–28). God gave man dominion over all things and commanded him to multiply and fill the earth, **Gen.** 1:28–31 (Moses 2:28–31; Abr. 4:28–31). God placed Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden and forbade them to eat of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, **Gen.** 2:7–9, 15–17 (Moses 3:7–9, 15–17; Abr. 5:7–13). Adam named every living creature, **Gen.** 2:19–20 (Moses 3:19–20; Abr. 5:20–21). Adam and Eve were married by God, **Gen.** 2:18–25 (Moses 3:18–25; Abr. 5:14–21). Adam and Eve were tempted by Satan, partook of the forbidden fruit, and were cast out of the Garden of Eden, **Gen.** 3 (Moses 4). Adam was 930 years old at his death, **Gen.** 5:5 (Moses 6:12).

Adam was the first man, **D&C** 84:16. Before his death Adam called his righteous posterity together at Adam-ondi-Ahman and blessed them, **D&C** 107:53–57.

Adam offered sacrifice, **Moses** 5:4–8. Adam was baptized, received the Holy Ghost, and was ordained to the priesthood, **Moses** 6:51–68.

Adam-ondi-Ahman. *See also* Adam

The place where Adam blessed his righteous posterity three years before he died (D&C 107:53–56) and where he will come before the time of the Second Coming (D&C 116).

Administration to the Sick. *See also*

Anoint; Hands, Laying on of; Heal, Healings; Oil; Priesthood

A blessing given to the sick by men who hold the Melchizedek Priesthood, involving the use of consecrated oil.

Lay thy hand upon her, **Matt.** 9:18. Jesus laid his hands upon a few sick folk and healed them, **Mark** 6:5. Christ's Apostles anointed with oil many that were sick and healed them, **Mark** 6:13. The elders are to anoint and heal the sick, **James** 5:14–15.

Ye shall not heal the sick except it be required of you by them who desire, **D&C** 24:13–14. Elders shall lay their hands upon the sick, **D&C** 42:44. Lay your hands upon the sick, and they shall recover, **D&C** 66:9.

Adoption. *See also* Abraham—The seed of Abraham; Children of Christ; Israel; Sons and Daughters of God

The scriptures speak of two types of adoption.

(1) A person who is of non-Israelite lineage becomes a member of the family of Abraham and the house of Israel by having faith in Jesus Christ, repenting, being baptized by immersion, and receiving the Holy Ghost (2 Ne. 31:17–18; D&C 84:73–74; Abr. 2:6, 10–11).

(2) All who have received the saving

Adultery

ordinances of the gospel become sons and daughters of Jesus Christ by continued obedience to His commandments (Rom. 8:15–17; Gal. 3:24–29; 4:5–7; Mosiah 5:7–8).

Adultery. *See also* Chastity; Fornication; Homosexual Behavior; Sensual, Sensuality; Sexual Immorality

The unlawful sexual association of men and women. Although adultery generally refers to sexual intercourse between a married person and someone other than his or her spouse, in the scriptures it may also refer to the unmarried.

Sometimes adultery is used as a symbol for the apostasy of a nation or a whole people from the ways of the Lord (Num. 25:1–3; Jer. 3:6–10; Ezek. 16:15–59; Hosea 4).

Joseph would not do this great wickedness, and sin against God, **Gen.** 39:7–12. Thou shalt not commit adultery, **Ex.** 20:14.

Whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery in his heart, **Matt.** 5:28. Neither fornicators nor adulterers shall inherit the kingdom of God, **1 Cor.** 6:9–10. God will judge whoremongers and adulterers, **Heb.** 13:4.

Adultery is most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost, **Alma** 39:3–5.

He that committeth adultery, and repenteth not, shall be cast out, **D&C** 42:23–26. If any shall commit adultery in their hearts, they shall not have the Spirit, **D&C** 63:14–16.

Adversary. *See* Devil

Adversity. *See also* Chasten, Chastening; Endure; Persecute, Persecution; Tempt, Temptation

Through adversity—trials, troubles, and distress—man can have many experiences that lead to spiritual

growth and eternal progress by turning to the Lord.

God himself saved you out of all your adversities and your tribulations, **1 Sam.** 10:19. They cried unto the Lord in their trouble, **Ps.** 107:6, 13, 19, 28. Though the Lord give you the bread of adversity, yet shall not thy teachers be removed, **Isa.** 30:20–21.

It must needs be, that there is an opposition in all things, **2 Ne.** 2:11.

If they never should have bitter they could not know the sweet, **D&C** 29:39. Thine adversity shall be but a small moment, **D&C** 121:7–8. All these things shall give thee experience, and shall be for thy good, **D&C** 122:5–8.

They taste the bitter, that they may know to prize the good, **Moses** 6:55.

Advocate. *See also* Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ is our Advocate with the Father (Moro. 7:28) and pleads our cause with Him.

Jesus Christ is our advocate with the Father, **1 Jn.** 2:1 (D&C 110:4).

Jesus shall make intercession for all, **2 Ne.** 2:9 (Heb. 7:25). Jesus gained victory over death, giving him power to make intercession for the children of men, **Mosiah** 15:8.

I am your advocate with the Father, **D&C** 29:5. Jesus Christ is pleading your cause, **D&C** 45:3–5.

Agency. *See also* Account, Accountable, Accountability; Free, Freedom

The ability and privilege God gives people to choose and to act for themselves.

Of every tree thou mayest freely eat, **Gen.** 2:16. Choose you this day whom ye will serve, **Josh.** 24:15 (Alma 30:8; Moses 6:33).

Man could not act for himself save it should be that he was enticed, **2 Ne.** 2:15–16. Men are free to choose liberty and eternal life or captivity and death,

2 Ne. 2:27. Ye are free; ye are permitted to act for yourselves, **Hel. 14:30.**

A third part of the hosts of heaven turned he away because of their agency, **D&C 29:36.** It must needs be that the devil should tempt men, or they could not be agents, **D&C 29:39.** Let every man choose for himself, **D&C 37:4.** Every man may act according to the moral agency which I have given unto him, **D&C 101:78.**

Satan sought to destroy the agency of man, **Moses 4:3.** The Lord gave unto man his agency, **Moses 7:32.**

Agrippa. *See also* Paul

In the New Testament, the son of Herod Agrippa I and brother of Bernice and Drusilla. He was king of Chalcis, located in the Lebanon. He listened to the Apostle Paul and was almost persuaded to be a Christian (Acts 25–26; JS—H 1:24).

Ahab. *See also* Jezebel

In the Old Testament, one of the most wicked and powerful kings of northern Israel. He married Jezebel, a Sidonian princess, through whose influence the worship of Baal and Ashtoreth was established in Israel (1 Kgs. 16:29–33; 2 Kgs. 3:2) and an attempt was made to do away with the prophets and the worship of Jehovah (1 Kgs. 18:13).

Reigned over Israel in Samaria twenty and two years, **1 Kgs. 16:29** (1 Kgs. 16–22). Did evil in the sight of the Lord above all that were before him, **1 Kgs. 16:30.** Was slain in battle, **1 Kgs. 22:29–40.**

Alcohol. *See* Word of Wisdom

Alma, Son of Alma. *See also* Alma the Elder; Amulek; Mosiah, Sons of

In the Book of Mormon, the first chief judge and prophet in the Nephite nation. In his early years he sought to destroy the Church (Mosiah 27:8–10). However, an angel appeared to him and he was converted to the gospel (Mosiah

27:8–24; Alma 36:6–27). Later he gave up his position as chief judge in order to teach the people (Alma 4:11–20).

The book of Alma: A separate book in the Book of Mormon, comprising an abridgment of the records of the prophets Alma, the son of Alma, and his son Helaman. The events depicted in the book take place from approximately 91 to 52 B.C. The book contains 63 chapters. Chapters 1–4 describe the rebellion of the followers of Nehor and Amlici against the Nephites. The resulting wars were among the most destructive to that point in Nephite history. Chapters 5–16 contain the account of Alma's early missionary journeys, including his sermon on the Good Shepherd (Alma 5) and his preaching with Amulek in the city Ammonihah. Chapters 17–27 contain the record of the sons of Mosiah and their ministry among the Lamanites. Chapters 28–44 contain some of Alma's most important sermons. In chapter 32 Alma compared the word to a seed; in chapter 36 he recounted his conversion story to his son Helaman. Chapters 39–42 record Alma's counsel to his son Corianton, who had become involved in moral transgression; this important sermon explains justice, mercy, Resurrection, and the Atonement. Chapters 45–63 describe Nephite wars of that time period and migrations under Hagoth. Such great leaders as Captain Moroni, Teancum, and Lehi helped to preserve the Nephites through their courageous and timely actions.

Alma the Elder

A Nephite prophet in the Book of Mormon who organized the Church in the days of wicked King Noah.

Was a priest of wicked King Noah and a descendant of Nephi, **Mosiah 17:1–2.** After hearing and believing Abinadi, was cast out by the king. He fled, hid, and wrote Abinadi's words, **Mosiah 17:3–4.** Repented and taught the words

Alms, Almsgiving

of Abinadi, **Mosiah** 18:1. Baptized at the waters of Mormon, **Mosiah** 18:12–16. Organized the Church, **Mosiah** 18:17–29. Arrived with his people in Zarahemla, **Mosiah** 24:25. Was given authority over the Church, **Mosiah** 26:8. Judged and led the Church, **Mosiah** 26:34–39. Conferred the office of high priest on his son, **Alma** 4:4 (**Mosiah** 29:42; **Alma** 5:3).

Alms, Almsgiving. *See also* Fast, Fasting; Offering; Poor; Welfare

Offerings to help the poor.

Do not your alms before men, **Matt.** 6:1–4 (3 **Ne.** 13:1–4). This poor widow hath cast more in than all they, **Mark** 12:41–44. It is more blessed to give than to receive, **Acts** 20:33–35.

I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, **Mosiah** 4:26. The people of the Church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he has, **Mosiah** 18:27.

Alpha and Omega. *See also* Jesus Christ

Alpha is the first letter in the Greek alphabet; Omega is the last. They are also names given to Jesus Christ and are used as symbols to show that Christ is both the beginning and the end (**Rev.** 1:8; **D&C** 19:1).

Altar. *See also* Sacrifice

A structure used for sacrifices, offerings, and worship.

Noah built an altar unto the Lord and offered burnt offerings, **Gen.** 8:20. Abram built an altar unto the Lord, **Gen.** 12:7–8. Abraham bound Isaac his son on the altar, **Gen.** 22:9 (**Gen.** 22:1–13). Jacob built there an altar and called the place El-beth-el, **Gen.** 35:6–7. Elijah built an altar and challenged the priests of Baal, **1 Kgs.** 18:17–40.

If thou bring thy gift to the altar, first be reconciled to thy brother, **Matt.** 5:23–24. I saw under the altar the souls

of them that were slain for the word of God, **Rev.** 6:9 (**D&C** 135:7).

Lehi built an altar of stones and gave thanks unto the Lord, **1 Ne.** 2:7.

Abraham was saved from death on an altar of Elkenah, **Abr.** 1:8–20.

Amalekites (Book of Mormon)

A group of Nephite apostates who led the Lamanites to battle against the Nephites (**Alma** 21–24; 43).

Amalekites (Old Testament)

An Arab tribe that lived in the desert of Paran between the Arabah and the Mediterranean. They were constantly at war with the Hebrews from the time of Moses (**Ex.** 17:8) to Saul and David (**1 Sam.** 15; 27:8; 30; **2 Sam.** 8:11–12).

Amalickiah

In the Book of Mormon, a Nephite traitor who gained power among the Lamanites and led them against the Nephites (**Alma** 46–51).

Amen. *See also* Prayer

Means “may it be so” or “so it is.” *Amen* is said to show hearty or solemn acceptance and agreement (**Deut.** 27:14–26) or truthfulness (**1 Kgs.** 1:36). Today at the end of prayers, testimonies, and talks, those who heard the prayer or message say an audible *amen* to indicate agreement and acceptance.

In Old Testament times, a person was to say *amen* when making an oath (**1 Chr.** 16:7, 35–36; **Neh.** 5:12–13; 8:2–6). Christ is called “the Amen, the faithful and true witness” (**Rev.** 3:14). *Amen* also served as the token of a covenant in the School of the Prophets (**D&C** 88:133–135).

Amlici, Amlicites

A man in the Book of Mormon who led a group of Nephites who desired a king during the reign of the judges. These Nephites, called Amlicites, openly rebelled against God, for which they were cursed (**Alma** 2–3).

Ammon, Descendant of Zarahemla.*See also* Limhi

In the Book of Mormon, a strong and mighty man who led an expedition from Zarahemla to the land of Lehi-Nephi (Mosiah 7:1–16). He was shown ancient records and explained what a seer is (Mosiah 8:5–18). He later helped to free King Limhi and his people from the Lamanites and bring them back to Zarahemla (Mosiah 22).

Ammon, Son of Mosiah. *See also*

Anti-Nephi-Lehies; Mosiah, Son of Benjamin; Mosiah, Sons of

In the Book of Mormon, a son of King Mosiah. Ammon served as a missionary whose diligent efforts helped to convert many souls to Christ.

Was an unbeliever who sought to destroy the Church, **Mosiah** 27:8–10, 34. An angel appeared to him and his companions, **Mosiah** 27:11. Repented and began preaching the word of God, **Mosiah** 27:32–28:8. Refused to be named king and went instead to the land of the Lamanites to preach the word of God, **Alma** 17:6–9. Fasted and prayed for guidance, **Alma** 17:8–11. Was taken bound to King Lamoni, **Alma** 17:20–21. Saved Lamoni's flocks, **Alma** 17:26–39. Preached to Lamoni, **Alma** 18:1–19:13. Thanked God and was overpowered with joy, **Alma** 19:14. His converts never fell away, **Alma** 23:6. Rejoiced in being an instrument in God's hands in bringing thousands to the truth, **Alma** 26:1–8 (Alma 26). Led the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi to safety, **Alma** 27. Felt great joy in meeting Alma, **Alma** 27:16–18.

Amos

A prophet of the Old Testament who prophesied from approximately 792 to 740 B.C. in the days of Uzziah, king of Judah, and Jeroboam, king of Israel.

The book of Amos: A book in the Old Testament. Many of Amos's prophecies

warn Israel and her neighboring nations to return to righteousness.

Chapters 1–5 call Israel and her neighboring nations to repentance. Chapter 3 explains that the Lord reveals His secrets to the prophets and that because of transgression, Israel will be destroyed by an adversary. Chapters 6–8 prophesy the downfall of Israel many years before the Assyrian invasion. Chapter 9 prophesies that Israel will be restored to her own land.

Amulek. *See also* Alma, Son of Alma

In the Book of Mormon, a missionary companion of Alma, son of Alma.

Was visited by an angel, **Alma** 8:20; 10:7. Received Alma into his home, **Alma** 8:21–27. Preached with power to the people of Ammonihah, **Alma** 8:29–32; 10:1–11. Was a descendant of Nephi, Lehi, and Manasseh, **Alma** 10:2–3. Testified of truth, **Alma** 10:4–11. Called people to repentance and was rejected, **Alma** 10:12–32. Contended with Zeezrom, **Alma** 11:20–40. Taught of resurrection, judgment, and restoration, **Alma** 11:41–45. Wanted to stop martyrdom of believers, **Alma** 14:9–10. Was imprisoned with Alma, **Alma** 14:14–23. Broke free of prison bonds through faith, **Alma** 14:24–29. Testified of the Atonement, mercy, and justice, **Alma** 34:8–16. Taught about prayer, **Alma** 34:17–28. Encouraged people not to procrastinate repentance, **Alma** 34:30–41. The faith of Alma and Amulek caused prison walls to tumble, **Ether** 12:13.

Ananias of Damascus. *See also* Paul

A Christian disciple at Damascus who baptized Paul (Acts 9:10–18; 22:12).

Ananias of Jerusalem

In the New Testament, he and his wife, Sapphira, lied to the Lord by holding back a portion of money that they had consecrated to the Lord. When Peter confronted them, they both fell to the ground and died (Acts 5:1–11).

Ancient of Days. *See* Adam

Andrew

In the New Testament, brother of Simon Peter and one of the Twelve Apostles called by Jesus during His mortal ministry (Matt. 4:18–19; Mark 1:16–18, 29).

Angels

There are two kinds of beings in heaven who are called angels: those who are spirits and those who have bodies of flesh and bone. Angels who are spirits have not yet obtained a body of flesh and bone, or they are spirits who have once had a mortal body and are awaiting resurrection. Angels who have bodies of flesh and bone have either been resurrected from the dead or translated.

There are many references in scripture to the work of angels. Sometimes angels speak with a voice of thunder as they deliver God's messages (Mosiah 27:11–16). Righteous mortal men may also be called angels (JST, Gen. 19:15 [Appendix]). Some angels serve around the throne of God in heaven (Alma 36:22).

The scriptures also speak of the devil's angels. These are those spirits who followed Lucifer and were thrust out of God's presence in the premortal life and cast down to the earth (Rev. 12:1–9; 2 Ne. 9:9, 16; D&C 29:36–37).

Jacob saw angels of God ascending and descending, **Gen.** 28:12. Angels of God met Jacob, **Gen.** 32:1–2. Gideon saw an angel of the Lord face to face, **Judg.** 6:22. An angel stretched out his hand upon Jerusalem to destroy it, **2 Sam.** 24:16. An angel touched Elijah and said to him, Arise and eat, **1 Kgs.** 19:5–7. Daniel saw the angel Gabriel in a vision, **Dan.** 8:15–16. The angel Michael helped Daniel, **Dan.** 10:13.

The angel Gabriel was sent from God, **Luke** 1:19, 26–27. The devil's angels will be reserved in chains unto the judgment, **Jude** 1:6 (2 Pet. 2:4).

People saw angels descending out of heaven, **3 Ne.** 17:24. Moroni wrote about the ministering of angels, **Moro.** 7:25–32.

The Aaronic Priesthood holds the keys of the ministering of angels, **D&C** 13. Moroni, John the Baptist, Peter, James, John, Moses, Elijah, and Elias all ministered to Joseph Smith as angels, **D&C** 27:5–12. Ye are not able to abide the ministering of angels, **D&C** 67:13. Michael, the archangel, is Adam, **D&C** 107:54. Angels are resurrected personages, having bodies of flesh and bones, **D&C** 129. There are no angels who minister to this earth but those who belong to it, **D&C** 130:5. Men who do not obey God's law of eternal marriage neither marry nor are given in marriage but are appointed angels in heaven, **D&C** 132:16–17.

Anger. *See also* Hate, Hatred; Love

Anger is the display of temper. The Lord cautioned His Saints to control their anger (Matt. 5:22). Neither parent nor child should abuse others in the family. In the scriptures, anger often has the figurative image of fire (2 Ne. 15:25; D&C 1:13).

And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell, **Gen.** 4:5. The Lord is slow to anger, and of great mercy, **Ps.** 145:8. A soft answer turneth away wrath, **Prov.** 15:1. A wrathful man stirreth up strife, but he that is slow to anger appeaseth strife, **Prov.** 15:18 (Prov. 14:29). For my name's sake will I defer mine anger, **Isa.** 48:9. I have spread out my hands unto a people that provoketh me to anger continually, **Isa.** 65:2–3.

Whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also, **Matt.** 5:39. Ye fathers, provoke not your children to wrath, **Eph.** 6:4.

Because I have told you the truth, ye are angry with me, **Mosiah** 13:4. I will visit this people in mine anger, **Alma** 8:29.

Against none is his wrath kindled save those who confess not his hand in all things, **D&C** 59:21. I, the Lord, am angry with the wicked, **D&C** 63:32.

Anna

In the New Testament, a prophetess of the tribe of Asher. At the time of Jesus' birth, she was an aged widow. She saw the infant Jesus at His presentation in the temple and recognized Him as the Redeemer (Luke 2:36–38).

Annas. *See also* Caiaphas

In the New Testament, a man of great influence in the Sanhedrin. Jesus, when arrested, was first brought to him (John 18:13); he also took a leading part in the trial of the Apostles (Acts 4:3–6).

Anoint. *See also* Administration to the Sick; Oil

In ancient times, the Lord's prophets anointed with oil those who would perform special duties, such as Aaron or the priests or the kings who would rule over Israel. In the Church today, to anoint is to place a small amount of consecrated oil on a person's head as part of a special blessing. This can be done only under the authority and power of the Melchizedek Priesthood. After the anointing, a person acting by authority of that same priesthood may seal the anointing and give a special blessing to the one anointed.

Anoint them, and consecrate them that they may minister unto me, **Ex.** 28:41 (Lev. 8:6–12, 30). Anoint him to be captain over my people Israel, **1 Sam.** 9:16; 10:1.

The elders are to anoint and bless the sick, **James** 5:14–15 (**D&C** 42:44).

Anointed One. *See also* Jesus Christ; Messiah

Jesus is called the *Christ* (a Greek word) or the *Messiah* (an Aramaic word). Both words mean "the anointed." He is the one *anointed* of the Father to be the Father's personal representative in all

things pertaining to the salvation of mankind.

The Lord has anointed me, **Isa.** 61:1–3.

He has anointed one to preach the gospel, **Luke** 4:16–22. Jesus was anointed by God the Father, **Acts** 4:27. God anointed Jesus of Nazareth, **Acts** 10:38.

Antichrist. *See also* Devil

Anyone or anything that counterfeits the true gospel plan of salvation and that openly or secretly opposes Christ. John the Revelator described the antichrist as a deceiver (1 Jn. 2:18–22; 4:3–6; 2 Jn. 1:7). The great antichrist is Lucifer, but he has many assistants, both spirit beings and mortals.

The son of perdition opposes and exalts himself above all that is called God, **2 Thes.** 2:1–12. He deceives them that dwell on the earth by the means of miracles, **Rev.** 13:13–17.

Sherem denied Christ and deceived many, **Jacob** 7:1–23. Nehor taught false doctrines, established a church, and introduced priestcraft, **Alma** 1:2–16. Korihor ridiculed Christ, the Atonement, and the spirit of prophecy, **Alma** 30:6–60.

Anti-Nephi-Lehies. *See also* Ammon, Son of Mosiah; Helaman, Sons of; Mosiah, Sons of

In the Book of Mormon, a name given to the Lamanites who were converted by the sons of Mosiah. After their conversion, these people, who were also called the people of Ammon, were faithful throughout their lives (**Alma** 23:4–7, 16–17; 27:20–27).

They took the name of Anti-Nephi-Lehies, **Alma** 23:16–17; 24:1. They refused to shed blood and buried their weapons, **Alma** 24:6–19. Their sons prepared for war and chose Helaman as their leader, **Alma** 53:16–19; 56–58 (these sons were also known as the 2,000 stripping warriors).

Apocalypse

Apocalypse. *See also* Revelation of John

The book of Revelation, the last book in the New Testament; can also mean any remarkable revelation; from a Greek word meaning “revealed” or “uncovered.”

Apocrypha. *See also* Bible; Scriptures

Sacred books of the Jewish people that were not included in the Hebrew Bible but are retained in the Bibles of some Christian churches. These books are often valuable in linking the Old and New Testaments and are regarded in the Church as useful reading.

The Apocrypha are mostly translated correctly but with incorrect interpolations, **D&C** 91:1–3. The Apocrypha can benefit those enlightened by the Spirit, **D&C** 91:4–6.

Apostasy. *See also* Rebellion; Restoration of the Gospel

A turning away from the truth by individuals, the Church, or entire nations.

General apostasy: Israel had to guard against their hearts turning away from the Lord, **Deut.** 29:18. Where there is no vision, the people perish, **Prov.** 29:18. They have broken the everlasting covenant, **Isa.** 24:5.

The winds beat upon that house, and it fell, **Matt.** 7:27. I marvel that ye are so soon removed unto another gospel, **Gal.** 1:6.

They commenced in the good path but lost their way in the mist, **1 Ne.** 8:23 (1 Ne. 12:17). After they had tasted of the fruit, they fell away into forbidden paths, **1 Ne.** 8:28. Nephite apostasy caused a stumbling block for nonbelievers, **Alma** 4:6–12. Many members of the Church became proud and persecuted other members, **Hel.** 3:33–34 (Hel. 4:11–13; 5:2–3). When the Lord prospers his people, they sometimes harden their hearts and forget him, **Hel.** 12:2; 13:38. The Nephites

hardened their hearts and fell under Satan’s power, **3 Ne.** 2:1–3. Moroni prophesied about apostasy in the last days, **Morm.** 8:28, 31–41.

Apostasy will precede the Second Coming, **D&C** 1:13–16.

Apostasy of the early Christian church: This people draw near me with their mouth, **Isa.** 29:10, 13. Darkness shall cover the earth, **Isa.** 60:2. The Lord will send a famine of hearing the words of the Lord, **Amos** 8:11.

There shall arise false Christs and false prophets, **Matt.** 24:24. Grievous wolves shall enter in among you, **Acts** 20:29. I marvel that ye are so soon removed from him, **Gal.** 1:6. There will be a falling away before the Second Coming, **2 Thes.** 2:3. Some people err concerning the truth, **2 Tim.** 2:18. Some people have a form of godliness but deny the power thereof, **2 Tim.** 3:2–5. The time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine, **2 Tim.** 4:3–4. There will be false prophets and false teachers among the people, **2 Pet.** 2:1. Certain men crept in denying the only Lord God, **Jude** 1:4. Some men said they were Apostles and were not, **Rev.** 2:2.

Nephi saw the formation of a great and abominable church, **1 Ne.** 13:26. The Gentiles have stumbled and built up many churches, **2 Ne.** 26:20.

They have strayed from mine ordinances and have broken mine everlasting covenant, **D&C** 1:15. Darkness covers the earth and gross darkness the minds of the people, **D&C** 112:23.

Joseph was told that the churches were all wrong; their hearts were far from God, **JS—H** 1:19.

Apostle. *See also* Disciple; Revelation

In Greek, *Apostle* means “one sent forth.” It was the title Jesus gave to the Twelve whom He chose and ordained to be His closest disciples and helpers during His ministry on earth (Luke 6:13; John 15:16). He sent them forth to represent Him and to minister for Him

after His Ascension into heaven. Both anciently and in the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles in the restored Church today, an Apostle is a special witness of Jesus Christ in all the world to testify of His divinity and of His resurrection from the dead (Acts 1:22; D&C 107:23).

Christ's church is built on the foundation of Apostles and prophets, **Eph.** 2:20; 4:11.

Lehi and Nephi saw the twelve Apostles following Jesus, **1 Ne.** 1:10; 11:34. Apostles are to judge the house of Israel, **Morm.** 3:18.

Those who do not heed the words of the prophets and Apostles shall be cut off, **D&C** 1:14 (3 **Ne.** 12:1). The calling and mission of the Twelve were revealed, **D&C** 18:26–36. Joseph Smith was ordained an Apostle, **D&C** 20:2; 21:1. Apostles are special witnesses of Christ's name and bear the keys of the ministry, **D&C** 27:12 (D&C 112:30–32). Twelve Apostles form a quorum equal in authority to the First Presidency, **D&C** 107:23–24. The Twelve are a Traveling Presiding High Council, **D&C** 107:33. Apostles hold the keys of missionary work, **D&C** 107:35. Some of the duties of Apostles are described, **D&C** 107:58. I say unto all the Twelve: follow me, and feed my sheep, **D&C** 112:14–15.

We believe in Apostles, **A of F** 1:6.

Selection of Apostles: Apostles are chosen by the Lord (John 6:70; 15:16).

Of his disciples, Jesus chose twelve Apostles, **Luke** 6:13–16. Matthias was chosen to be an Apostle, **Acts** 1:21–26.

Oliver Cowdery and David Whitmer were commanded to search out the Twelve, **D&C** 18:37–39.

Archangel. *See also* Adam; Michael

Michael, or Adam, is the archangel or chief angel.

The Lord shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, **1 Thes.** 4:16. Michael is the archangel, **Jude** 1:9 (D&C 29:26; 88:112; 128:20–21).

Ark. *See also* Flood at Noah's Time; Noah, Bible Patriarch; Rainbow

In the Old Testament, the boat built by Noah to preserve life during the great Flood.

Make thee an ark of gopher wood, **Gen.** 6:14. The ark rested on the mountains of Ararat, **Gen.** 8:4.

The Jaredite barges were tight like the ark of Noah, **Ether** 6:7.

Ark of the Covenant. *See also* Tabernacle

Also known as the Ark of Jehovah and the Ark of the Testimony, the Ark of the Covenant was an oblong chest or box made of wood overlaid with gold. It was the oldest and most sacred of the religious symbols of the Israelites. The Mercy Seat which formed its covering was regarded as the earthly dwelling place of Jehovah (Ex. 25:22). Upon the completion of the temple, the ark was placed in the Holy of Holies, the most holy place in the structure (1 Kgs. 8:1–8).

Moses made the ark at God's command, **Ex.** 25. The children of Levi were charged to take care of the ark, **Num.** 3:15, 31. The ark of the covenant went before them, **Num.** 10:33. Take this book of the law, and put it in the ark of the covenant, **Deut.** 31:24–26. The waters of Jordan were cut off before the ark of the covenant, **Josh.** 3:13–17; 4:1–7. Priests took the ark of the covenant in conquering Jericho, **Josh.** 6:6–20. Philistines captured the ark of God, **1 Sam.** 5. The Lord blessed the house of Obed-edom because of the ark of God, **2 Sam.** 6:11–12. Uzza was slain by the Lord when he disobediently attempted to steady the ark, **1 Chr.** 13:9–12 (D&C 85:8). Build ye the sanctuary of the Lord God, to bring the ark of the covenant, **1 Chr.** 22:19.

The contents of the ark of the covenant are described, **Heb.** 9:4.

Armageddon

Armageddon. *See also* Gog; Magog; Second Coming of Jesus Christ

The name *Armageddon* is derived from the Hebrew *Har Megiddon*, meaning the “mountain of Megiddo.” The valley of Megiddo is in the western portion of the plain of Esdraelon, fifty miles (eighty kilometers) north of Jerusalem, and is the site of several crucial battles in Old Testament times. A great and final conflict that will take place near the time of the Second Coming of the Lord is called the battle of Armageddon because it will begin in the same locale. (See Ezek. 39:11; Zech. 12–14, especially 12:11; Rev. 16:14–21.)

Armor

A covering worn to protect the body from blows or thrusts of weapons. The word is also used to mean spiritual attributes that protect a person from temptation or evil.

Put on the whole armor of God, **Eph.** 6:10–18 (D&C 27:15–18).

Articles of Faith. *See also* Pearl of Great Price; Smith, Joseph, Jr.

Thirteen basic points of belief to which members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints ascribe.

Joseph Smith first wrote them in a letter to John Wentworth, editor of the *Chicago Democrat*, in answer to his request to know what members of the Church believed. The letter became known as the Wentworth Letter and was first published in the *Times and Seasons* in March 1842. On October 10, 1880, the Articles of Faith were formally accepted as scripture by the vote of the members of the Church and were included as part of the Pearl of Great Price.

Asa

In the Old Testament, the third king of Judah. The scriptures record that his “heart was perfect with the Lord all his days” (1 Kgs. 15:14). During his reign he

raised the army to a state of efficiency, threw off the Ethiopian yoke, removed the false idols, and invited the people to make a covenant to seek Jehovah (1 Kgs. 15–16; 2 Chr. 14–16). However, when he became diseased in his feet, he did not seek the Lord’s help and died (1 Kgs. 15:23–24; 2 Chr. 16:12–13).

Ascension. *See also* Jesus Christ; Second Coming of Jesus Christ

The formal departure of the Savior from the earth, forty days after His Resurrection. The Ascension took place from a point on the Mount of Olives in the presence of the disciples (Mark 16:19; Luke 24:51). At that time two angels from heaven testified that in the future the Lord would return “in like manner” (Acts 1:9–12).

Asher. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, a son of Jacob and Zilpah, Leah’s handmaiden (Gen. 30:12–13).

The tribe of Asher: Jacob blessed Asher (Gen. 49:20), and Moses blessed the descendants of Asher (Deut. 33:1, 24–29). These descendants were called “mighty men of valour” (1 Chr. 7:40).

Ask. *See also* Prayer

To inquire, question, or petition God for a special favor.

Ask, and it shall be given you, **Matt.** 7:7. If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, **James** 1:5 (JS—H 1:7–20).

Ask me in faith, **1 Ne.** 15:11. If ye cannot understand these words, it will be because ye ask not, **2 Ne.** 32:4. Ask in sincerity of heart, **Mosiah** 4:10. God doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, **Mosiah** 4:21. Ask God if these things are not true, **Moro.** 10:4.

They love darkness rather than light; therefore, they will not ask of me, **D&C** 10:21. Ye are commanded in all things to ask of God, **D&C** 46:7.

Assyria

An ancient empire that, with its rival Babylon, ruled much of the old states of Syria and Palestine throughout most of Old Testament times. Even though the Assyrians were a major power from the mid-12th century B.C. until the close of the 7th century B.C., they were never able to build a stable political structure. They ruled by terror, crushing their enemies by fire and sword or weakening them by deporting large portions of a population to other parts of their empire. The people who were placed under Assyrian rule constantly fought against the empire. (See 2 Kgs. 18–19; 2 Chr. 32; Isa. 7:17–20; 10; 19; 37.)

Atone, Atonement. *See also* Blood; Children of Christ; Cross; Crucifixion; Fall of Adam and Eve; Forgive; Gethsemane; Grace; Immortal, Immortality; Jesus Christ; Justification, Justify; Merciful, Mercy; Plan of Redemption; Redeem, Redeemed, Redemption; Remission of Sins; Repent, Repentance; Resurrection; Sacrament; Sacrifice; Salvation; Sanctification; Sons and Daughters of God

To reconcile man to God.

As used in the scriptures, to atone is to suffer the penalty for an act of sin, thereby removing the effects of sin from the repentant sinner and allowing him to be reconciled to God. Jesus Christ was the only one capable of making a perfect atonement for all mankind. He was able to do so because of His selection and foreordination in the Grand Council before the world was formed (Ether 3:14; Moses 4:1–2; Abr. 3:27), His divine Sonship, and His sinless life. His Atonement included His suffering for the sins of mankind, the shedding of His blood, and His death and subsequent resurrection from the grave (Isa. 53:3–12; Luke 22:44; Mosiah 3:5–11; Alma 7:10–13; D&C

19:16–19). Because of the Atonement, all people will rise from the dead with immortal bodies (1 Cor. 15:22). The Atonement also provides the way for us to be forgiven of our sins and live forever with God. But a person who has reached the age of accountability and received the law can receive these blessings only if he has faith in Jesus Christ, repents of his sins, receives the ordinances of salvation, and obeys the commandments of God. Those who do not reach the age of accountability and those without the law are redeemed through the Atonement (Mosiah 15:24–25; Moro. 8:22). The scriptures clearly teach that if Christ had not atoned for our sins, no law, ordinance, or sacrifice would satisfy the demands of justice, and man could never regain God's presence (2 Ne. 2; 9).

This is my blood, shed for many for the remission of sins, **Matt.** 26:28. His sweat was as it were great drops of blood, **Luke** 22:39–44. I will give my flesh for the life of the world, **John** 6:51. I am the resurrection, and the life, **John** 11:25. Christ is the author of eternal salvation unto all them that obey, **Heb.** 5:9. We are sanctified by the shedding of the blood of Christ, **Heb.** 9; 10:1–10. Christ also hath once suffered for sins, **1 Pet.** 3:18. The blood of Jesus Christ cleanses us from all sin, **1 Jn.** 1:7.

He was lifted up upon the cross and slain for sins, **1 Ne.** 11:32–33. Redemption comes to those who have a broken heart and contrite spirit, **2 Ne.** 2:3–10, 25–27. He offered himself a sacrifice for sin, **2 Ne.** 2:7. The Atonement ransoms men from the Fall and saves them from death and hell, **2 Ne.** 9:5–24. It must needs be an infinite atonement, **2 Ne.** 9:7. Be reconciled unto God through the atonement of Christ, **Jacob** 4:11. His blood atones for the sins of those who have ignorantly sinned, **Mosiah** 3:11–18. Man received salvation through the Atonement, **Mosiah** 4:6–8. Were it not for the Atonement, they must unavoidably

Authority

perish, **Mosiah** 13:27–32. He shall atone for the sins of the world, **Alma** 34:8–16. God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, **Alma** 42:11–30. I am the God of the whole earth, slain for the sins of the world, **3 Ne.** 11:14.

I, God, have suffered these things for all, **D&C** 19:16. Little children are redeemed through mine Only Begotten, **D&C** 29:46–47. Behold the sufferings and death of him who did no sin, **D&C** 45:3–5.

This thing is a similitude of the sacrifice of the Only Begotten, **Moses** 5:7. Through the Atonement of Christ, all mankind may be saved, **A of F** 1:3.

Authority. *See also* Call, Called of God, Calling; Keys of the Priesthood; Ordain, Ordination; Power; Priesthood

The permission granted to men on earth called or ordained to act for and in behalf of God the Father or Jesus Christ in doing God's work.

I have sent thee, **Ex.** 3:12–15. Speak all that I command thee, **Ex.** 7:2.

He gave the twelve disciples power, **Matt.** 10:1. Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, **John** 15:16.

Nephi and Lehi preached with great authority, **Hel.** 5:18. Nephi, the son of Helaman, was a man of God, having great power and authority from God, **Hel.** 11:18 (3 **Ne.** 7:17). Jesus gave power and authority to twelve Nephites, **3 Ne.** 12:1–2.

Joseph Smith was called of God and ordained, **D&C** 20:2. No one shall preach my gospel or build up my Church unless he is ordained and it is known to the Church that he has authority, **D&C** 42:11. Elders are to preach the gospel, acting in authority, **D&C** 68:8. The Melchizedek Priesthood has authority to administer in spiritual things, **D&C** 107:8, 18–19. What is

done by divine authority becomes law, **D&C** 128:9.

Any who preach or administer for God must be called of God by those in authority, **A of F** 1:5.

Baal. *See also* Idolatry

A male sun-god worshiped principally in Phoenicia (1 **Kgs.** 16:31) but also worshiped in different ways in various places: by the Moabites as Baal-peor (Num. 25:1–3), at Shechem as Baal-berith (Judg. 8:33; 9:4), at Ekron as Baal-zebub (2 **Kgs.** 1:2). Baal may be the same as Bel of Babylon and Zeus of Greece. The word *Baal* expresses the relationship between a lord and his slave. The usual symbol for Baal was a bull. Ash-toreth was the goddess generally worshiped along with Baal.

Baal was sometimes combined with another name or word to indicate a connection with Baal, such as a place where he was worshiped or a person with attributes like those of Baal. Later, because *Baal* came to have very evil meanings, the word *Bosheth* replaced it in those combined names. *Bosheth* means “shame.”

Babel, Babylon. *See also* Nebuchadnezzar; World

The capital of Babylonia.

Babel was founded by Nimrod and was one of the oldest cities in the land of Mesopotamia, or Shinar (Gen. 10:8–10). The Lord confounded the language at the time the people were building the Tower of Babel (Gen. 11:1–9; Ether 1:3–5, 33–35). Babylon later became Nebuchadnezzar's capital. He built an enormous city of which the ruins still remain. Babylon became a very wicked city and has since come to symbolize the wickedness of the world.

Flee out of the midst of Babylon, **Jer.** 51:6.

Babylon will be established and will fall, **Rev.** 17–18.

Babylon shall be destroyed, **2 Ne.** 25:15.

Babylon shall fall, **D&C** 1:16. I will not spare any that remain in Babylon, **D&C** 64:24. Go ye out from Babylon, **D&C** 133:5, 7, 14.

Backbiting. See Evil Speaking

Balaam

A prophet in the Old Testament who wanted to curse Israel for money. He was commanded by the Lord not to curse Israel (Num. 22–24).

Balaam's ass refused to go forward because an angel stood in its path, **Num.** 22:22–35.

Balm of Gilead

An aromatic gum or spice used for healing wounds (Gen. 43:11; Jer. 8:22; 46:11; 51:8). A bush producing the resin from which the balm was made grew so plentifully in Gilead in Old Testament times that the balm came to be known as the "balm of Gilead" (Gen. 37:25; Ezek. 27:17).

Baptism, Baptize. See also Born Again, Born of God; Holy Ghost; Infant Baptism; Ordinances

The word used in the original Greek text means to "dip" or "immerse." Baptism by immersion in water by one having authority is the introductory ordinance of the gospel and is necessary to become a member of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. It is preceded by faith in Jesus Christ and by repentance. It must be followed by receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost in order to be complete (2 Ne. 31:13–14). Baptism by water and the Spirit is necessary before a person can enter the celestial kingdom. Adam was the first to be baptized (Moses 6:64–65). Jesus also was baptized to fulfill all righteousness and to show the way for all mankind (Matt. 3:13–17; 2 Ne. 31:5–12).

Because all on the earth do not have the opportunity to accept the gospel

during mortality, the Lord has authorized baptisms performed by proxy for the dead. Therefore, those who accept the gospel in the spirit world may qualify for entrance into God's kingdom.

Essential: Suffer it to be so now to fulfill all righteousness, **Matt.** 3:15. Jesus came and was baptized of John, **Mark** 1:9. The Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God, being not baptized, **Luke** 7:30. Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God, **John** 3:5. Repent, and be baptized every one of you, **Acts** 2:38.

He commands all men that they must be baptized in his name, **2 Ne.** 9:23–24. Men must follow Christ, be baptized, receive the Holy Ghost, and endure to the end to be saved, **2 Ne.** 31. Christ's doctrine is that men should believe and be baptized, **3 Ne.** 11:20–40.

They who believe not on your words and are not baptized in water in my name shall be damned, **D&C** 84:74.

God explained to Adam why repentance and baptism are necessary, **Moses** 6:52–60.

Baptism by immersion: Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water, **Matt.** 3:16 (Mark 1:10). John was baptizing in Aenon because there was much water there, **John** 3:23. Philip and the eunuch went down into the water, **Acts** 8:38. We are buried with him by baptism, **Rom.** 6:4 (Col. 2:12).

Follow your Lord and your Savior down into the water, **2 Ne.** 31:13. Alma, Helam, and others were buried in the water, **Mosiah** 18:12–16. And then shall ye immerse them in the water, **3 Ne.** 11:25–26.

The proper manner of baptism is explained, **D&C** 20:72–74. They were baptized after the manner of his burial, being buried in the water in his name, **D&C** 76:50–51.

Adam was laid under the water and was brought forth out of the water,

Moses 6:64. Baptism is by immersion for the remission of sins, **A of F** 1:4.

Baptism for remission of sins: Arise and be baptized, and wash away thy sins, **Acts** 22:16.

After baptism comes a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy Ghost, **2 Ne.** 31:17. Come and be baptized unto repentance that ye may be washed from your sins, **Alma** 7:14. Blessed are they who shall believe and be baptized, for they shall receive a remission of their sins, **3 Ne.** 12:1–2.

Declare repentance and faith on the Savior and remission of sins by baptism, **D&C** 19:31.

We believe in baptism by immersion for the remission of sins, **A of F** 1:4.

Proper authority: Go ye and teach all nations, baptizing in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost, **Matt.** 28:19 (**D&C** 68:8).

Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized, but there was none in the land that had authority from God, **Mosiah** 21:33. I give unto you power that ye shall baptize, **3 Ne.** 11:19–21.

The Aaronic Priesthood holds the keys of baptism by immersion for the remission of sins, **D&C** 13. They are they who are ordained of me to baptize in my name, **D&C** 18:29.

John the Baptist gave Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery the authority to baptize, **JS—H** 1:68–69.

Qualifications for baptism: Repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son, **2 Ne.** 31:11. Ye must repent and be born again, **Alma** 7:14. See that ye are not baptized unworthily, **Morm.** 9:29. Teach parents that they must repent and be baptized and humble themselves, **Moro.** 8:10.

Qualifications for those desiring baptism are set forth, **D&C** 20:37. Children shall be baptized for the remission of their sins when eight years old, **D&C** 68:25, 27.

Covenant made through baptism: Ye have entered into a covenant with him that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, **Mosiah** 18:8–10, 13.

Those who repent, take on Christ's name, and determine to serve him shall be received by baptism, **D&C** 20:37.

Baptism for the dead: What shall they do which are baptized for the dead, **1 Cor.** 15:29.

Baptisms for the dead are performed for the remission of sins, **D&C** 124:29; 127:5–9; 128:1; 138:33.

Baptism not for infants: It is solemn mockery before God that ye should baptize little children, **Moro.** 8:4–23.

Children shall be baptized when eight years old, **D&C** 68:27. All children who die before the years of accountability are saved in the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 137:10.

Baptist. See John the Baptist

Barabbas

Name of the man released instead of Jesus at the time of the Crucifixion. Barabbas was an insurrectionist, a murderer, and a robber (**Matt.** 27:16–26; **Mark** 15:6–15; **Luke** 23:18–25; **John** 18:40).

Barnabas

Name given to Joseph (also called Joses), a Levite of Cyprus, who sold his land and gave the proceeds to the Apostles (**Acts** 4:36–37). Though not one of the original Twelve Apostles, he did become an Apostle (**Acts** 14:4, 14) and served on several missionary journeys (**Acts** 11:22–30; 12:25; 13–15; **1 Cor.** 9:6; **Gal.** 2:1, 9; **Col.** 4:10).

Bartholomew. See also Nathanael

In the New Testament, one of the original Twelve Apostles of Jesus Christ (**Matt.** 10:2–4).

Bathsheba. See also David

Wife of Uriah; later, wife of David and mother of Solomon. King David committed adultery with her. He also

arranged for her husband's death in battle (2 Sam. 11), which sin had eternal consequences for David (D&C 132:39).

Beatitudes. *See also* Sermon on the Mount

A series of teachings that Jesus gave in the Sermon on the Mount that describe a refined and spiritual character (Matt. 5:3–12; Luke 6:20–23). The Beatitudes are arranged in such a way that each statement builds upon the one that precedes it. A more comprehensive and accurate record of the Beatitudes is found in 3 Ne. 12.

Beginning. *See also* Create, Creation; Jesus Christ; Premortal Life

Generally refers to the time before this mortal life—that is, the premortal life. Sometimes Jesus Christ is referred to as the Beginning.

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth, **Gen.** 1:1 (Moses 2:1).

In the beginning was the Word, **John** 1:1.

I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, **3 Ne.** 9:18.

Christ is the beginning and the end, **D&C** 19:1. The new and everlasting covenant was from the beginning, **D&C** 22:1. Man was in the beginning with God, **D&C** 93:23, 29. Noble and great spirits were chosen in the beginning to be rulers, **D&C** 138:55.

Mine Only Begotten was with me from the beginning, **Moses** 2:26.

Begotten. *See also* Born Again, Born of God; Children of Christ; Only Begotten; Sons and Daughters of God

To be born. To beget is to give birth, to procreate, or to call into being. In the scriptures, these words are often used to mean being born of God. Although Jesus Christ is the only child begotten of the Father in mortality, all people may be spiritually begotten of Christ by accepting Him, obeying His

commandments, and becoming new persons through the power of the Holy Ghost.

This day have I begotten thee, **Ps.** 2:7 (Acts 13:33; Heb. 1:5–6; 5:5).

His glory was of the only begotten of the Father, **John** 1:14 (2 Ne. 25:12; Alma 12:33–34; D&C 76:23). God so loved the world that he gave his only begotten Son, **John** 3:16 (D&C 20:21).

Christ has spiritually begotten his people, **Mosiah** 5:7.

Those who are begotten through the Lord are the Church of the Firstborn, **D&C** 93:22.

Belief, Believe. *See also* Faith; Jesus Christ; Trust; Unbelief

To have faith in someone or to accept something as true. A person must repent and believe in Jesus Christ in order to be saved in the kingdom of God (D&C 20:29).

Believe in the Lord your God; believe his prophets, **2 Chr.** 20:20. Daniel was not hurt in the lions' den because he believed in God, **Dan.** 6:23.

As thou hast believed, so be it done unto thee, **Matt.** 8:13. Whatsoever ye shall ask in prayer, believing, ye shall receive, **Matt.** 21:22. Be not afraid, only believe, **Mark** 5:36. All things are possible to him that believes, **Mark** 9:23–24. He that believes and is baptized shall be saved, **Mark** 16:16 (2 Ne. 2:9; 3 Ne. 11:33–35). He that believes in the Son has everlasting life, **John** 3:16, 18, 36 (John 5:24; D&C 10:50). We believe and are sure that thou art the Christ, **John** 6:69. He that believeth in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live, **John** 11:25–26. We who have believed do enter into rest, **Heb.** 4:3. Believe on Jesus Christ, and love one another, **1 Jn.** 3:23.

The Messiah will destroy none who believe in him, **2 Ne.** 6:14. The Jews will be persecuted until they are persuaded to believe in Christ, **2 Ne.** 25:16. If ye believe these things, see that ye do

them, **Mosiah** 4:10. The Son will take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name, **Alma** 11:40. Blessed is he who believes in the word of God without being compelled, **Alma** 32:16. If ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, **Alma** 32:27. If ye believe on Christ's name, ye will repent, **Hel.** 14:13. Those who believe in Christ believe in the Father also, **3 Ne.** 11:35. Never has man believed in the Lord as the brother of Jared did, **Ether** 3:15. Every thing that persuades to believe in Christ is sent by the power of Christ, **Moro.** 7:16–17.

Those who believe on the Lord's words will be given a manifestation of the Spirit, **D&C** 5:16. Those who believe on the Lord's name will become sons of God, **D&C** 11:30 (John 1:12). To some it is given to believe on others' words, **D&C** 46:14. Signs follow those who believe, **D&C** 58:64 (D&C 63:7–12).

Those who believe, repent, and are baptized shall receive the Holy Ghost, **Moses** 6:52.

Belshazzar. *See also* Babel, Babylon

In the Old Testament, the last king of Babylon, reigning before Cyrus conquered Babylon; the son and successor of Nebuchadnezzar (Dan. 5:1–2).

Benjamin, Father of Mosiah. *See also* Mosiah, Son of Benjamin

A Book of Mormon prophet and king (Mosiah 1–6).

Dealt with serious problems in establishing peace in the land, **Omni** 1:23–25 (W of M 1:12–18). Taught his sons, **Mosiah** 1:1–8. Conferred the kingdom on his son Mosiah, **Mosiah** 1:9–18. His people gathered to hear his final address, **Mosiah** 2:1–8. Addressed his people, **Mosiah** 2:9–4:30. His people made a covenant with the Lord, **Mosiah** 5–6.

Benjamin, Son of Jacob. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob and Rachel (Gen. 35:16–20).

The tribe of Benjamin: Jacob blessed Benjamin (Gen. 49:27). The descendants of Benjamin were a warlike race. Two important Benjamites were Saul, the first Israelite king (1 Sam. 9:1–2), and Paul, the New Testament Apostle (Rom. 11:1).

Bethany

The village in which Jesus Christ stayed during the last week of His mortal life (Matt. 21:17; Mark 11:11). Located on the southeast slope of Mount Olivet, Bethany was the home of Lazarus, Mary, and Martha (John 11:1–46; 12:1).

Bethel

In Hebrew, means “house of God” and is one of the most sacred spots in Israel. It is located about ten miles (sixteen kilometers) north of Jerusalem. Here Abraham built his altar at the time of his first arrival in Canaan (Gen. 12:8; 13:3). Here Jacob saw in vision a ladder reaching up into heaven (Gen. 28:10–19). It was also a holy place in the days of Samuel (1 Sam. 7:16; 10:3).

Bethlehem

A small city located five miles (eight kilometers) south of Jerusalem. In Hebrew, Bethlehem means “house of bread”; it is also called Ephrath, meaning “fruitful.” Jesus Christ was born in Bethlehem (Micah 5:2; Matt. 2:1–8). It is the burial place of Rachel (Gen. 35:19; 48:7).

Ruth and Boaz lived there, **Ruth** 1:22. Samuel anointed David there, **1 Sam.** 16:1–13; 17:12, 15; 20:6, 28.

Herod had the children slain there, **Matt.** 2:16.

Bible. *See also* Apocrypha; Canon; Ephraim—The stick of Ephraim or

Joseph; Judah—The stick of Judah; New Testament; Old Testament; Scriptures

A collection of Hebrew and Christian writings that contains divine revelations. The word *bible* means “the books.” The Bible is the work of many prophets and inspired writers acting under the influence of the Holy Spirit (2 Pet. 1:21).

The Christian Bible has two divisions, commonly known as the Old and New Testaments. The Old Testament consists of the books of scripture used among the Jews of Palestine during the Lord’s mortal ministry. The New Testament contains writings belonging to the Apostolic age and regarded as having the same sanctity and authority as the Jewish scriptures. The books of the Old Testament are drawn from a national literature extending over many centuries and were written almost entirely in Hebrew, while the books of the New Testament are the work of a single generation and were written mainly in Greek.

In the Old Testament the word *testament* represents a Hebrew word meaning “covenant.” The Old Covenant is the law that was given to Moses when Israel rejected the fulness of the gospel had by God’s people from the beginning of mortality. The New Covenant is the gospel as taught by Jesus Christ.

In the Hebrew Bible (the Old Testament) the books were divided into three groups: the Law, the Prophets, and the Writings. The Bible used by the Christian world classifies the books according to subject matter, such as historical, poetical, and prophetical.

The books of the New Testament are generally in this order: the four Gospels and Acts; the epistles of Paul; the general epistles of James, Peter, John, and Jude; and the Revelation of John.

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints reveres and respects the Bible and affirms also that the Lord continues to give additional revelation through His prophets in the last

days that supports and verifies the biblical account of God’s dealings with mankind.

The stick of Judah (the Bible) and the stick of Joseph (the Book of Mormon) will become one in the Lord’s hand, **Ezek.** 37:15–20.

The Bible’s truthfulness will be established by latter-day scripture, **1 Ne.** 13:38–40. The Bible will be joined by the Book of Mormon in putting down false doctrine, **2 Ne.** 3:12. A Bible! A Bible! We have got a Bible, **2 Ne.** 29:3–10. All who believe the Bible will also believe the Book of Mormon, **Morm.** 7:8–10.

Elders shall teach the principles of my gospel, which are in the Bible and the Book of Mormon, **D&C** 42:12.

We believe the Bible to be the word of God as far as it is translated correctly, **A of F** 1:8.

Bible, Joseph Smith Translation (JST). See Joseph Smith Translation (JST)

Birth Control. See also Family; Marriage, Marry

Controlling the number of children born to a couple by limiting or preventing conception.

Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, **Gen.** 1:28 (Moses 2:28). Children are an heritage of the Lord, **Ps.** 127:3–5.

Lehi’s family were to raise up seed unto the Lord, **1 Ne.** 7:1.

Marriage is ordained of God unto man, **D&C** 49:15–17. The exalted will receive a fulness and a continuation of the seeds forever and ever, **D&C** 132:19, 63.

Birthright. See also Covenant; Firstborn

A right of inheritance belonging to the firstborn son. In a broad sense, the birthright includes any or all rights or inheritance transmitted to a person when he is born into a family and culture.

Bishop

Sell me this day thy birthright, **Gen.** 25:29–34 (**Gen.** 27:36). The first-born sat according to his birthright, **Gen.** 43:33. He set Ephraim before Manasseh, **Gen.** 48:14–20 (**Jer.** 31:9). The birthright was Joseph's, **1 Chr.** 5:2.

Esau sold his birthright, **Heb.** 12:16.

Ye are lawful heirs, **D&C** 86:9. Zion has a right to the priesthood by lineage, **D&C** 113:8 (**Abr.** 2:9–11).

Bishop. *See also* Aaronic Priesthood

Means "overseer," an office or position of responsibility. Bishop is an ordained office in the Aaronic Priesthood (**D&C** 20:67; 107:87–88), and a bishop is a common judge in Israel (**D&C** 107:72, 74).

The Holy Ghost has made you overseers, **Acts** 20:28. Qualifications are set forth for bishops, **1 Tim.** 3:1–7 (**Titus** 1:7).

A bishop is to be ordained, **D&C** 20:67. Edward Partridge was to serve as a bishop unto the Church, **D&C** 41:9. A bishop is to discern spiritual gifts, **D&C** 46:27, 29. A high priest may officiate in the office of bishop, **D&C** 68:14, 19 (**D&C** 107:17). A bishop is appointed of the Lord, **D&C** 72. A bishop is to care for the poor, **D&C** 84:112. A bishop is to administer all temporal things, **D&C** 107:68. A bishop is president of the Aaronic Priesthood, **D&C** 107:87–88.

Blaspheme, Blasphemy. *See also* Profanity; Unpardonable Sin

Speaking disrespectfully or irreverently of God or sacred things.

Jesus was charged several times by the Jews with speaking blasphemy because He claimed the right to forgive sins (**Matt.** 9:2–3; **Luke** 5:20–21), because He called Himself the Son of God (**John** 10:22–36; 19:7), and because He said they would see Him sitting on the right hand of power and coming in the clouds of heaven (**Matt.** 26:64–65). These charges would have been true if He had not actually been all that He said He was. The charge brought against Him by

the false witnesses at the trial before the Sanhedrin (**Matt.** 26:59–61) was of blasphemy against God's temple. Blasphemy against the Holy Ghost, which is willfully denying Christ after having received a perfect knowledge of Him, is the unforgivable sin (**Matt.** 12:31–32; **Mark** 3:28–29; **D&C** 132:27).

He that blasphemeth the name of the Lord shall be put to death, **Lev.** 24:11–16.

The Lord's enemies will not be left to blaspheme his name, **D&C** 105:15. Vengeance will come upon those who blaspheme against the Lord, **D&C** 112:24–26.

Bless, Blessed, Blessing. *See also* Administration to the Sick; Grace; Law; Patriarchal Blessings; Thankful, Thanks, Thanksgiving

To confer divine favor upon someone. Anything contributing to true happiness, well-being, or prosperity is a blessing.

All blessings are based on eternal laws (**D&C** 130:20–21). Because God wants His children to find joy in life (**2 Ne.** 2:25), He grants blessings to them as a result of their obedience to His commandments (**D&C** 82:10), in answer to a prayer or priesthood ordinance (**D&C** 19:38; 107:65–67), or through His grace (**2 Ne.** 25:23).

A well-known list of statements about blessedness is the Beatitudes (**Matt.** 5:1–12; **3 Ne.** 12:1–12).

General: I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, **Gen.** 12:2–3 (**1 Ne.** 15:18; **Abr.** 2:9–11). Blessings are upon the head of the just, **Prov.** 10:6. A faithful man shall abound with blessings, **Prov.** 28:20. The Lord will open the windows of heaven and pour you out a blessing, **Mal.** 3:10 (**3 Ne.** 24:10).

The Beatitudes promise blessings, **Matt.** 5:1–12 (**3 Ne.** 12:1–12). Blessed are they who are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb, **Rev.** 19:9.

He that is righteous is favored of God, **1 Ne.** 17:35 (**Mosiah** 10:13). If ye

will hearken, I leave unto you a blessing, **2 Ne.** 1:28. I leave unto you the same blessing, **2 Ne.** 4:9. He immediately blesses you, **Mosiah** 2:24. The Lord blesses and prospers those who put their trust in him, **Hel.** 12:1.

Assist to bring forth my work, and you shall be blessed, **D&C** 6:9. Pray always, and great shall be your blessing, **D&C** 19:38. Be baptized, and you shall receive my Spirit and a blessing so great as you have never known, **D&C** 39:10. After much tribulation come the blessings, **D&C** 58:4. Men obey not; I revoke and they receive not the blessing, **D&C** 58:32. Ye have not understood how great blessings the Father has prepared for you, **D&C** 78:17. From the high priesthood comes the administering of ordinances and blessings upon the church, **D&C** 107:65–67. There is a law upon which all blessings are predicated, **D&C** 130:20. All who will have a blessing at my hands shall abide the law, **D&C** 132:5. Blessings are held in reserve for them that love the Lord, **D&C** 138:52.

Abraham sought for the blessings of the fathers and the right to administer the same, **Abr.** 1:2.

Blessing of children: He took them up in his arms and blessed them, **Mark** 10:16.

He took their little children, one by one, and blessed them, **3 Ne.** 17:21.

Elders are to bless children in the name of Jesus Christ, **D&C** 20:70.

Blood. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Jesus Christ; Sacrifice

Regarded by the ancient Israelites and many cultures today as the seat of life or vital energy of all flesh. In Old Testament times the Lord forbade Israel to eat blood as food (Lev. 3:17; 7:26–27; 17:10–14).

The atoning power of a sacrifice was in the blood because the blood was regarded as essential to life. Animal sacrifice in the Old Testament was a symbol of the great sacrifice later

performed by Jesus Christ (Lev. 17:11; Moses 5:5–7). Jesus Christ's atoning blood cleanses the repentant from sin (1 Jn. 1:7).

His sweat was as it were great drops of blood, **Luke** 22:44. We are sanctified by the shedding of the blood of Christ, **Heb.** 10:1–22.

Blood came from every pore, **Mosiah** 3:7 (**D&C** 19:18).

The Lord's blood was shed for the remission of sins, **D&C** 27:2. Jesus wrought a perfect atonement through shedding his blood, **D&C** 76:69.

By the blood ye are sanctified, **Moses** 6:60.

Boasting. *See* Pride

Boaz. *See also* Ruth

Husband of Ruth (Ruth 4:9–10); great-grandfather of David, the king of Israel (Ruth 4:13–17); and progenitor of Christ, the King of Kings (Luke 3:32).

Body. *See also* Death, Physical; Mortal, Mortality; Resurrection; Soul

The mortal, physical structure of flesh and bones created in God's image that is combined with a spirit to make up a living person. The physical bodies of all men and women will be reunited eternally with their spirits in the Resurrection. The scriptures sometimes refer to a body and spirit joined together as a soul (Gen. 2:7; **D&C** 88:15; **Moses** 3:7, 9, 19; **Abr.** 5:7).

The Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, **Gen.** 2:7 (**Moses** 3:7).

Handle me and see, for a spirit has not flesh and bones, **Luke** 24:39. I discipline my body and bring it into subjection, **1 Cor.** 9:27. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body, **1 Cor.** 15:44. The body without the spirit is dead, **James** 2:26.

The mortal body will be raised as an immortal body, **Alma** 11:43–45. Every part of the body shall be restored, **Alma** 41:2. Jesus showed his resurrected body to the Nephites, **3 Ne.** 10:18–19; 11:13–15.

Book of Commandments

The Father has a body of flesh and bones as tangible as man's; the Son also, **D&C 130:22**.

God created male and female in the image of his own body, **Moses 6:9** (Gen. 9:6).

Book of Commandments. *See also* Doctrine and Covenants; Revelation

In 1833, a number of the revelations received by the Prophet Joseph Smith were prepared for publication under the title *A Book of Commandments for the Government of the Church of Christ*. The Lord continued to communicate with His servants, and an enlarged compilation of revelations was published two years later as the *Doctrine and Covenants*.

D&C 1 is the Lord's preface to the book of his commandments, **D&C 1:6**. The Lord challenged the wisest person to duplicate the least of his revelations in the *Book of Commandments*, **D&C 67:4–9**. Stewards were appointed to publish the revelations, **D&C 70:1–5**.

Book of Life. *See also* Book of Remembrance

In one sense the *Book of Life* is the total of a person's thoughts and actions—the record of his life. However, the scriptures also indicate that a heavenly record is kept of the faithful, including their names and accounts of their righteous deeds.

The Lord will blot sinners out of his book, **Ex. 32:33**.

He that overcomes will not be blotted out of the book of life, **Rev. 3:5**. Another book was opened, which is the book of life, **Rev. 20:12** (**D&C 128:6–7**).

The names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, **Alma 5:58**.

Your prayers are recorded in the book of the names of the sanctified, **D&C 88:2**.

Book of Mormon. *See also* Canon; Ephraim—The stick of Ephraim or Joseph; Gold Plates; Mormon,

Nephite Prophet; Plates; Scriptures; Smith, Joseph, Jr.; Witnesses of the Book of Mormon

One of the four volumes of scripture accepted by The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. It is an abridgment by an ancient prophet named Mormon of the records of ancient inhabitants of the Americas. It was written to testify that Jesus is the Christ. Concerning this record, the Prophet Joseph Smith, who translated it by the gift and power of God, said, "I told the brethren that the Book of Mormon was the most correct of any book on earth, and the keystone of our religion, and a man would get nearer to God by abiding by its precepts, than by any other book" (see the introduction at the front of the *Book of Mormon*).

The *Book of Mormon* is a religious record of three groups of people who migrated from the Old World to the American continents. These groups were led by prophets who recorded their religious and secular histories on metal plates. The *Book of Mormon* records the visit of Jesus Christ to people in the Americas following His Resurrection. A two-hundred-year era of peace followed that visit of Christ.

Moroni, the last of the Nephite prophet-historians, sealed up the abridged records of these people and hid them in about A.D. 421. In 1823, the resurrected Moroni visited Joseph Smith and later delivered to him these ancient and sacred records to be translated and brought forth to the world as another testament of Jesus Christ.

Joseph is a fruitful bough whose branches run over the wall, **Gen. 49:22–26**. Truth shall spring out of the earth, **Ps. 85:11** (**Morm. 8:16**; **Moses 7:62**). The Lord will lift up an ensign to the nations and will hiss unto them, **Isa. 5:26**. A voice shall speak out of the ground, **Isa. 29:4** (**2 Ne. 26:14–17**). The vision of all has become as the words of a book that is sealed, **Isa. 29:11** (**Isa. 29:9–18**; **2 Ne.**

27:6–26). The sticks of Joseph and of Judah shall be one in the Lord's hand, **Ezek.** 37:15–20.

Other sheep I have, which are not of this fold, **John** 10:16 (3 Ne. 15:16–24).

The Book of Mormon and the Bible will grow together, **2 Ne.** 3:12–21. The Lord's words will hiss forth unto the ends of the earth, **2 Ne.** 29:2. The Lord covenanted with Enos to bring forth the Book of Mormon to the Lamanites, **Enos** 1:15–16. The Book of Mormon was written for the intent that we may believe the Bible, **Morm.** 7:9. The Book of Mormon shall stand as a testimony against the world, **Ether** 5:4. Ask God if these things are not true, **Moro.** 10:4.

Christ bore testimony that the Book of Mormon is true, **D&C** 17:6. The Book of Mormon contains the fulness of the gospel of Jesus Christ, **D&C** 20:9 (**D&C** 20:8–12; 42:12).

We believe the Book of Mormon to be the word of God, **A of F** 1:8.

Book of Remembrance. *See also* Book of Life; Genealogy

A book begun by Adam in which were recorded the works of his descendants; also any similar records kept by prophets and faithful members since that time. Adam and his children kept a book of remembrance, in which they wrote by the spirit of inspiration, and a book of the generations, which contained a genealogy (Moses 6:5, 8). Such records may well have a part in determining our final judgment.

A book of remembrance was written, **Mal.** 3:16–18 (3 Ne. 24:16–18).

All they who are not found written in the book of remembrance shall find no inheritance in that day, **D&C** 85:9. The dead were judged by the books that contained the record of their works, **D&C** 128:7. Let us present a book containing the records of our dead, **D&C** 128:24.

A book of remembrance was kept, **Moses** 6:5–8. We have a book of remembrance, **Moses** 6:46. Abraham

endeavored to write a record for his posterity, **Abr.** 1:31.

Born Again, Born of God. *See also* Baptism, Baptize; Begotten; Children of Christ; Conversion, Convert; Natural Man; Sons and Daughters of God

To have the Spirit of the Lord cause a mighty change in a person's heart so that he has no more desire to do evil, but rather desires to seek the things of God.

I will put a new spirit within you, **Ezek.** 11:19 (**Ezek.** 18:31; 36:26).

Those who believed on Christ's name were born, not of blood, but of God, **John** 1:12–13. Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God, **John** 3:3–7. We can be born again by the word of God, **1 Pet.** 1:3–23. Whosoever is born of God does not continue in sin, **JST**, **1 Jn.** 3:9. For whatsoever is born of God overcomes the world, **1 Jn.** 5:4.

Those who are born of Christ covenant with God, **Mosiah** 3:19; 5:2–7. All people must be born again; yea, born of God, **Mosiah** 27:25–26 (**Alma** 5:49). Have ye spiritually been born of God, **Alma** 5:12–19. If ye are not born again, ye cannot inherit the kingdom of heaven, **Alma** 7:14.

Whosoever believes on my words shall be born of me, even of water and of the Spirit, **D&C** 5:16.

Ye must be born again into the kingdom of heaven, **Moses** 6:59.

Brass Plates. *See also* Plates

A record of the Jews from the beginning to 600 B.C., containing many writings of the prophets (1 Ne. 5:10–16). This record was kept by Laban, one of the Jewish elders in Jerusalem. While Lehi and his family were in the wilderness, Lehi sent his sons back to Jerusalem to obtain this record (1 Ne. 3–4). (For further information, see "A Brief Explanation about the Book of Mormon," which is in the Book of Mormon.)

Bread of Life

Bread of Life. *See also* Jesus Christ; Sacrament

Jesus Christ is the Bread of Life. The bread of the sacrament symbolically represents Christ's body.

I am the bread of life, **John** 6:33–58.

Eat and drink of the bread and water of life, **Alma** 5:34. Bread is in remembrance of Christ's body, **3 Ne.** 18:5–7.

Bread is an emblem of Christ's flesh, **D&C** 20:40, 77 (**Moro.** 4).

Breastplates. *See also* Urim and Thummim

The scriptures mention two types of breastplates: (1) The front part of a soldier's protective clothing or armor. In a symbolic sense, Saints should wear a breastplate of righteousness to protect themselves against evil (**Isa.** 59:17; **Eph.** 6:14). (2) An article of clothing worn by the high priest in the law of Moses (**Ex.** 28:13–30; 39:8–21). It was made of linen and bore twelve precious stones. It is sometimes referred to in connection with the Urim and Thummim (**D&C** 17:1; **JS—H** 1:35, 42, 52).

Brethren, Brother. *See also* Man, Men; Sister; Woman, Women

As children of our Heavenly Father, all men and women are spiritually brothers and sisters. In the Church, male members and friends of the Church are often addressed as brothers.

When thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren, **Luke** 22:32. He who loves not his brother abides in death, **1 Jn.** 3:10–17.

Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, **Jacob** 2:17.

Let every man esteem his brother as himself, **D&C** 38:24–25. Strengthen your brethren in all your conversations, **D&C** 108:7.

Bridegroom. *See also* Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ is symbolized in the scriptures as the Bridegroom. The Church is His symbolic bride.

Ten virgins went forth to meet the Bridegroom, **Matt.** 25:1–13. He that has the bride is the Bridegroom, **John** 3:27–30. Blessed are they who are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb, **Rev.** 19:5–10.

Be ready at the coming of the Bridegroom, **D&C** 33:17. Make ready for the Bridegroom, **D&C** 65:3.

Broken Heart. *See also* Heart; Humble, Humility; Meek, Meekness; Repent, Repentance; Sacrifice

To have a broken heart is to be humble, contrite, repentant, and meek—that is, receptive to the will of God.

I dwell with him that is of a contrite and humble spirit, **Isa.** 57:15.

Christ offered himself for those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit, **2 Ne.** 2:7. Offer for sacrifice unto the Lord a broken heart and contrite spirit, **3 Ne.** 9:20 (**D&C** 59:8). Only those with broken hearts and contrite spirits are received unto baptism, **Moro.** 6:2.

Jesus was crucified for the remission of sins unto the contrite heart, **D&C** 21:9. He whose spirit is contrite is accepted, **D&C** 52:15. The Holy Spirit is promised to those who are contrite, **D&C** 55:3. My Spirit is sent forth to enlighten the humble and contrite, **D&C** 136:33.

Caesar

In the New Testament, the title by which some Roman emperors were known. It is used in the scriptures as a symbol of worldly government or power.

Render unto Caesar the things which are Caesar's, **Matt.** 22:21 (**Mark** 12:17; **Luke** 20:25; **D&C** 63:26).

Caiaphas. *See also* Annas; Sadducees

In the New Testament, a high priest and son-in-law of Annas. Caiaphas took an active part in opposing Jesus and His disciples (**Matt.** 26:3–4; **John** 11:47–51; 18:13–14).

Cain. *See also* Abel; Adam; Murder; Secret Combinations

A son of Adam and Eve who slew his younger brother Abel (Gen. 4:1-16).

His offering was rejected by the Lord, **Gen.** 4:3-7 (Moses 5:5-8, 18-26). Killed his brother Abel, **Gen.** 4:8-14 (Moses 5:32-37). The Lord set a curse and a mark upon him, **Gen.** 4:15 (Moses 5:37-41).

Adam and Eve had many sons and daughters before he was born, **Moses** 5:1-3, 16-17. Loved Satan more than God, **Moses** 5:13, 18. Entered into an unholy covenant with Satan, **Moses** 5:29-31.

Caleb

One of those sent by Moses to search the land of Canaan in the second year after the Exodus. He and Joshua alone brought back a true report of the land (Num. 13:6, 30; 14:6-38). They alone of all who had left Egypt survived the forty years in the wilderness (Num. 26:65; 32:12; Deut. 1:36) and entered Canaan (Josh. 14:6-14; 15:13-19).

Call, Called of God, Calling. *See also* Authority; Choose, Chose, Chosen (verb); Chosen (adjective or noun); Ordain, Ordination; Steward, Stewardship

To be called of God is to receive an appointment or invitation from Him or His duly authorized Church leaders to serve Him in a particular way.

He laid his hands upon him and gave him a charge, **Num.** 27:23. I ordained thee a prophet, **Jer.** 1:5.

I have chosen you and ordained you, **John** 15:16. Paul was called to be an Apostle, **Rom.** 1:1. No man takes this honor unto himself, but he that is called of God, **Heb.** 5:4. Jesus was called of God after the order of Melchizedek, **Heb.** 5:10.

I have been called to preach the word of God according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy, **Alma** 8:24. Priests

were called and prepared from the foundation of the world, **Alma** 13:3.

If ye have desires to serve God, ye are called, **D&C** 4:3. Stand fast in the work to which I have called you, **D&C** 9:14. You need not suppose that you are called to preach until you are called, **D&C** 11:15. Elders are called to bring to pass the gathering of the elect, **D&C** 29:7. No one shall preach my gospel or build up my Church unless he is ordained, **D&C** 42:11. There are many called, but few are chosen, **D&C** 121:34.

Man must be called of God, **A of F** 1:5.

Calling and Election. *See also* Election

Righteous followers of Christ can become numbered among the elect who gain the assurance of exaltation. This calling and election begins with repentance and baptism. It becomes complete when they "press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end" (2 Ne. 31:19-20). The scriptures call this process making our calling and election sure (2 Pet. 1:4-11; **D&C** 131:5-6).

Ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, **Ex.** 19:5-6 (Rev. 1:6).

God hath from the beginning chosen the elect for salvation, **2 Thes.** 2:13. Give diligence to make your calling and election sure, **2 Pet.** 1:10.

The Lord may seal you his, **Mosiah** 5:15. I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life, **Mosiah** 26:20.

Faithful priesthood holders become the church and kingdom and the elect of God, **D&C** 84:33-34. The more sure word of prophecy means knowing that one is sealed up unto eternal life, **D&C** 131:5-6. I seal upon you your exaltation, **D&C** 132:49.

Calvary. *See* Golgotha

Canaan, Canaanite

In Old Testament times, the fourth son of Ham (Gen. 9:22; 10:1, 6) and grandson of Noah. *Canaanite* refers to

Canon

someone from the land where Canaan originally lived and also to his descendants. *Canaanite* was also a name for the people who inhabited the lowland along the Mediterranean coast of Palestine. This name was sometimes used to describe all the non-Israelite inhabitants of the country west of Jordan, whom the Greeks called Phoenicians.

Canon. *See also* Bible; Book of Mormon; Doctrine and Covenants; Pearl of Great Price; Scriptures

A recognized, authoritative collection of sacred books. In The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, the canonical books are called the standard works and include the Old and New Testaments, the Book of Mormon, the Doctrine and Covenants, and the Pearl of Great Price.

Capital Punishment. *See also* Murder

Punishment by death for a crime committed, especially associated with punishment for murder.

Whoso sheds man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed, **Gen.** 9:6 (JST, Gen. 9:12–13). The murderer shall surely be put to death, **Num.** 35:16.

Murderers who deliberately kill shall die, **2 Ne.** 9:35. Thou art condemned to die according to the law, **Alma** 1:13–14. He that murdered was punished unto death, **Alma** 1:18. The law requires the life of him who has murdered, **Alma** 34:12.

He that kills shall die, **D&C** 42:19.

Captivity. *See also* Free, Freedom

To be in physical or spiritual bondage.

The house of Israel went into captivity for their iniquity, **Ezek.** 39:23.

He that leads into captivity shall go into captivity, **Rev.** 13:10.

The wicked will be brought down into the captivity of the devil, **1 Ne.** 14:4, 7. Men are free to choose liberty and eternal life or captivity and death, **2 Ne.** 2:27. The will of the flesh gives

the spirit of the devil power to captivate, **2 Ne.** 2:29. Have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers, **Alma** 5:5–6. They who harden their hearts are taken captive by the devil, **Alma** 12:11. Watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him, **3 Ne.** 18:15.

Carnal. *See also* Fall of Adam and Eve; Natural Man; Sensual, Sensuality

Something that is not spiritual; specifically the word may be used to mean either mortal and temporal (**D&C** 67:10) or worldly, fleshly, and sensual (**Mosiah** 16:10–12).

To be carnally-minded is death, **2 Ne.** 9:39. The devil lulls men away into carnal security, **2 Ne.** 28:21. They had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, **Mosiah** 4:2. He that persists in his own carnal nature remains in his fallen state, **Mosiah** 16:5. All must be born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, **Mosiah** 27:25. Mankind had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, **Alma** 42:10.

Those who follow after their own will and carnal desires must fall, **D&C** 3:4. Man cannot see God with a carnal mind, **D&C** 67:10–12.

Men began to be carnal, sensual, and devilish, **Moses** 5:13; 6:49.

Carthage Jail (USA). *See also* Smith, Hyrum; Smith, Joseph, Jr.

Joseph and Hyrum Smith were murdered by a mob on June 27, 1844, at the jail in Carthage, Illinois, United States of America (**D&C** 135).

Celestial Glory. *See also* Degrees of Glory; Eternal Life; Exaltation

The highest of the three degrees of glory that a person can attain after this life. Here the righteous will dwell in the presence of God the Father and His Son Jesus Christ.

The glory of the celestial is one, **1 Cor.**

15:40 (D&C 76:96). Paul was caught up to the third heaven, **2 Cor.** 12:2.

Celestial glory was shown in vision, **D&C 76:50–70**. If Saints desire a place in the celestial world, they must prepare, **D&C 78:7**. He who is not able to abide the law of a celestial kingdom cannot abide a celestial glory, **D&C 88:15–22**. In the celestial glory there are three heavens; conditions are set forth for attaining the highest, **D&C 131:1–2**. Children who die before the age of accountability are saved in the celestial kingdom, **D&C 137:10**.

Celibacy. *See* Marriage, Marry

Centurion

An officer in the Roman army in command of a company of fifty to one hundred men. Such a company formed one-sixtieth part of a Roman legion. (See **Matt.** 8:5; **Luke** 23:47; **Acts** 10:1–8.)

Charity. *See also* Compassion; Love; Service; Welfare

The pure love of Christ (**Moro.** 7:47); the love that Christ has for the children of men and that the children of men should have for one another (**2 Ne.** 26:30; 33:7–9; **Ether** 12:33–34); the highest, noblest, strongest kind of love, not merely affection.

Knowledge puffs up, but charity edifies, **1 Cor.** 8:1. Charity, a pure love, excels and exceeds almost all else, **1 Cor.** 13. The end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, **1 Tim.** 1:5. Add to brotherly kindness charity, **2 Pet.** 1:7.

The Lord has commanded that all men should have charity, **2 Ne.** 26:30 (**Moro.** 7:44–47). See that ye have faith, hope, and charity, **Alma** 7:24. The love that the Lord has for men is charity, **Ether** 12:33–34. Without charity men cannot inherit that place prepared in the Father's mansions, **Ether** 12:34 (**Moro.** 10:20–21). Moroni wrote Mormon's words on faith, hope, and charity, **Moro.** 7.

Charity qualifies men for the Lord's work, **D&C 4:5–6** (**D&C** 12:8). Clothe yourselves with the bond of charity, **D&C 88:125**. Let thy bowels be full of charity, **D&C 121:45**.

Chasten, Chastening. *See also* Adversity

Correction or discipline given to individuals or groups in order to help them improve or become stronger.

Despise not the chastening hand of the Almighty, **Job** 5:17 (**Prov.** 3:11). Blessed is the man whom thou chastenest, O Lord, **Ps.** 94:12.

All scripture is given for reproof, for correction, **2 Tim.** 3:16. The Lord chastens those whom he loves, **Heb.** 12:5–11.

The Lord sees fit to chasten his people, **Mosiah** 23:21–22. Except the Lord chasten his people, they will not remember him, **Hel.** 12:3. The Lord did talk with the brother of Jared, and chastened him, **Ether** 2:14.

They were chastened that they might repent, **D&C** 1:27. Whom I love I also chasten that their sins may be forgiven, **D&C** 95:1. All those who will not endure chastening cannot be sanctified, **D&C** 101:2–5. My people must needs be chastened until they learn obedience, **D&C** 105:6. He that will not bear chastisement is not worthy of my kingdom, **D&C** 136:31.

Chastity. *See also* Adultery; Fornication; Sensual, Sensuality; Virtue

Sexual purity of men and women.

Joseph resisted the advances of Potiphar's wife, **Gen.** 39:7–21 (**D&C** 42:24; 59:6). Thou shalt not commit adultery, **Ex.** 20:14. A virtuous woman is a crown to her husband, **Prov.** 12:4 (**Prov.** 31:10).

Know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost, **1 Cor.** 6:18–19. Be thou an example in purity, **1 Tim.** 4:12.

No unclean thing can dwell with

Cherubim

God, **1 Ne.** 10:21. For I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women, **Jacob** 2:28. Sexual sin is an abomination, **Alma** 39:1–13. Chastity and virtue are most dear and precious above all things, **Moro.** 9:9.

We believe in being chaste, **A of F** 1:13.

Cherubim

Figures representing heavenly creatures, the exact form being unknown. Cherubim have been called to guard sacred places.

The Lord placed cherubim to keep the way of the tree of life, **Gen.** 3:24 (**Alma** 12:21–29; 42:2–3; **Moses** 4:31). Symbolic representations of cherubim were placed on the mercy seat, **Ex.** 25:18, 22 (1 **Kgs.** 6:23–28; **Heb.** 9:5). Cherubim are mentioned in the visions of **Ezekiel**, **Ezek.** 10; 11:22.

Child, Children. *See also* Account, Accountable, Accountability; Atone, Atonement; Bless, Blessed, Blessing—Blessing of children; Family; Infant Baptism; Salvation—Salvation of children

A young person, one who has not yet reached puberty. Fathers and mothers are to train their children to obey God's will. Children are without sin until they reach the age of accountability (**Moro.** 8:22; **D&C** 68:27).

Children are a heritage from the Lord, **Psa.** 127:3–5. Train up a child in the way he should go, **Prov.** 22:6.

Suffer little children, and forbid them not to come unto me, **Matt.** 19:14. Obey your parents, **Eph.** 6:1–3 (**Col.** 3:20).

Without the Fall, Adam and Eve would have had no children, **2 Ne.** 2:22–23. Teach children to walk in truth and soberness, **Mosiah** 4:14–15. Little children have eternal life, **Mosiah** 15:25. Jesus took the little children and blessed them, **3 Ne.** 17:21. All thy children shall be taught of the Lord, and great shall be the peace

of thy children, **3 Ne.** 22:13 (**Isa.** 54:13). Little children do not need repentance or baptism, **Moro.** 8:8–24.

Little children are redeemed from the foundation of the world through mine Only Begotten, **D&C** 29:46–47. Parents should teach children gospel principles and practices, **D&C** 68:25, 27–28. Children are holy through the atonement of Christ, **D&C** 74:7. Parents are commanded to bring up their children in light and truth, **D&C** 93:40. Children who die before the age of accountability are saved in the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 137:10.

Children of Christ. *See also* Begotten; Born Again, Born of God; Jesus Christ; Sons and Daughters of God

Those who have accepted the gospel of Jesus Christ.

Whosoever shall humble himself as this little child is greatest, **Matt.** 18:1–4. Believe in the light that ye may be the children of light, **John** 12:36.

Put off the natural man and become as a child, **Mosiah** 3:19; 27:25–26. Because of the covenant ye shall be called the children of Christ, **Mosiah** 5:7. If ye will lay hold upon every good thing, ye certainly will be a child of Christ, **Moro.** 7:19.

As many as received me, gave I power to become my sons, **D&C** 39:4. Fear not, little children, for you are mine, **D&C** 50:40–41.

Thou art one in me, a son of God, **Moses** 6:68.

Children of God. *See* Man, Men; Sons and Daughters of God

Children of Israel. *See* Israel

Choice. *See* Agency; Choose, Chose, Chosen (verb)

Choose, Chose, Chosen (verb). *See also* Agency; Call, Called of God, Calling; Free, Freedom

When the Lord selects, or chooses,

an individual or group, He usually also calls them to serve.

Choose you this day whom ye will serve, **Josh.** 24:15 (Alma 30:8; Moses 6:33). I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction, **Isa.** 48:10 (1 Ne. 20:10).

Many are called, but few are chosen, **Matt.** 22:14 (Matt. 20:16; D&C 95:5; 121:34, 40). Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, **John** 15:16. God has chosen the foolish things of the world to confound the wise, **1 Cor.** 1:27. He has chosen us before the foundation of the world, **Eph.** 1:4.

We are free to choose liberty and eternal life or captivity and death, **2 Ne.** 2:27.

Noble and great ones were chosen in the beginning, **D&C** 138:55–56.

Israel was chosen by God, **Moses** 1:26. Abraham was chosen before he was born, **Abr.** 3:23.

Chosen (adjective or noun). *See also* Call, Called of God, Calling

Those selected by God for special responsibilities.

I have made a covenant with my chosen, **Ps.** 89:3.

The Saints are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, **1 Pet.** 2:9.

Christ was God's Beloved and Chosen from the beginning, **Moses** 4:2.

Christ. *See* Jesus Christ

Christians. *See also* Disciple; Saint

A name given to believers in Jesus Christ. Although this term is commonly used throughout the world, the Lord has designated true followers of Christ as Saints (Acts 9:13, 32, 41; 1 Cor. 1:2; D&C 115:4).

The disciples were called Christians, **Acts** 11:26. If any man suffer as a Christian, let him not be ashamed, **1 Pet.** 4:16.

Because of the covenant ye shall be called the children of Christ, **Mosiah** 5:7. True believers were called Christians

by those who were not members of the Church, **Alma** 46:13–16.

Chronicles

Two books in the Old Testament. They give a short history of events from the Creation to the proclamation of Cyrus allowing the Jews to return to Jerusalem.

First Chronicles: Chapters 1–9 list genealogies from Adam to Saul. Chapter 10 chronicles the death of Saul. Chapters 11–22 trace the events associated with the reign of David. Chapters 23–27 explain that Solomon was made king and the Levites were set in order. Chapter 28 explains that David commanded Solomon to build a temple. Chapter 29 records David's death.

Second Chronicles: Chapters 1–9 trace the events associated with the reign of Solomon. Chapters 10–12 tell of the reign of Solomon's son Rehoboam, during which the united kingdom of Israel was divided into the northern and southern kingdoms. Chapters 13–36 describe the reigns of various kings until the capture of the kingdom of Judah by Nebuchadnezzar. The book ends with Cyrus's decree that the captive children of Judah could return to Jerusalem.

Chronology

See Chronology in the appendix.

Church, Great and Abominable. *See* Devil—The church of the devil

Church, Name of. *See also* Church of Jesus Christ; Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, The; Mormon(s)

In the Book of Mormon, when Jesus Christ visited the righteous Nephites shortly after His Resurrection, He said that His Church should bear His name (3 Ne. 27:3–8). In modern times the Lord revealed the name of the Church to be "The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints" (D&C 115:4).

Church, Signs of the True. *See also* Church of Jesus Christ; Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, The; Sign

Doctrines and works of a church that show it is approved by God and is the means the Lord has established for His children to gain the fulness of His blessings. Some of the signs of the true Church are as follows:

Correct understanding of the Godhead: God created man in his own image, **Gen.** 1:26–27. The Lord spoke unto Moses face to face, **Ex.** 33:11.

Eternal life is to know God the Father and Jesus Christ, **John** 17:3.

The Father and Son have bodies of flesh and bones, **D&C** 130:22–23.

The Father and the Son appeared to Joseph Smith, **JS—H** 1:15–20. We believe in God, the Eternal Father, **A of F** 1:1.

First principles and ordinances: Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, **John** 3:3–5. Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ, **Acts** 2:38. Then they laid their hands on them, and they received the Holy Ghost, **Acts** 8:14–17. Become children of God by faith in Jesus Christ, **Gal.** 3:26–27.

Repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son, **2 Ne.** 31:11–21.

They who believed were baptized and received the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands, **D&C** 76:50–53.

Proper priesthood is needed to baptize and to give the gift of the Holy Ghost, **JS—H** 1:70–72. The first principles and ordinances of the gospel are described, **A of F** 1:4.

Revelation: Where there is no vision, the people perish, **Prov.** 29:18. The Lord reveals his secrets to his prophets, **Amos** 3:7.

The Church is built upon the rock of revelation, **Matt.** 16:17–18 (**D&C** 33:13).

Woe unto him who shall say the

Lord no longer worketh by revelation, **3 Ne.** 29:6.

Revelations and commandments come only through the one appointed, **D&C** 43:2–7.

We believe all that God has revealed, **A of F** 1:9.

Prophets: The Church is built upon the foundation of Apostles and prophets, **Eph.** 2:19–20. Apostles and prophets are essential to the Church, **Eph.** 4:11–16.

Joseph Smith was called to be a seer, prophet, and Apostle, **D&C** 21:1–3.

We believe in prophets, **A of F** 1:6.

Authority: Jesus gave his disciples power and authority, **Luke** 9:1–2 (**John** 15:16).

Nephi, the son of Helaman, had great authority from God, **Hel.** 11:18 (**3 Ne.** 7:17).

The prophet is to receive commandments for the Church, **D&C** 21:4–5. No one may preach the gospel or build up the Church unless he is ordained by someone who has authority, **D&C** 42:11. The elders are to preach the gospel, acting in authority, **D&C** 68:8.

Any who preach or administer for God must be called of God by those in authority, **A of F** 1:5.

Additional scriptures to come forth: The stick of Judah will be joined with the stick of Joseph, **Ezek.** 37:15–20.

The coming forth of latter-day scripture was foretold, **1 Ne.** 13:38–41.

We believe that God will yet reveal many great and important things, **A of F** 1:9.

Church organization: The Church is built upon the foundation of Apostles and prophets, **Eph.** 2:19–20. Apostles and prophets are essential to the Church, **Eph.** 4:11–16. Christ is the head of the Church, **Eph.** 5:23.

Christ's Church must be called in his name, **3 Ne.** 27:8.

We believe in the same organization that existed in the Primitive Church, **A of F** 1:6.

Missionary work: Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, **Matt.** 28:19–20. Seventy were called to preach the gospel, **Luke** 10:1.

They were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, **Mosiah** 28:3.

Elders are to go forth, preaching my gospel, two by two, **D&C** 42:6. The gospel must be preached unto every creature, **D&C** 58:64.

Spiritual gifts: They began to speak with other tongues, **Acts** 2:4. The elders are to heal the sick, **James** 5:14.

Deny not the gifts of God, **Moro.** 10:8.

Spiritual gifts are listed, **D&C** 46:13–26 (1 Cor. 12:1–11; Moro. 10:9–18).

Temples: I will make a covenant and will set my sanctuary in the midst of them forevermore, **Ezek.** 37:26–27. The Lord shall suddenly come to his temple, **Mal.** 3:1.

Nephi built a temple, **2 Ne.** 5:16.

The Saints were chastened for failing to build the house of the Lord, **D&C** 95 (D&C 88:119). The Lord's people always build temples for the performance of holy ordinances, **D&C** 124:37–44. Building temples and performing ordinances are parts of the great latter-day work, **D&C** 138:53–54.

Church of Jesus Christ. *See also* Church, Name of; Church, Signs of the True; Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, The; Kingdom of God or Kingdom of Heaven; Restoration of the Gospel; Saint

An organized body of believers who have taken upon themselves the name of Jesus Christ by baptism and confirmation. To be the true Church it must be the Lord's Church; must have His authority, teachings, laws, ordinances, and name; and must be governed by Him through representatives whom He has appointed.

The Lord added to the Church daily, **Acts** 2:47. We, being many, are one body in Christ, **Rom.** 12:5. By one Spirit we

are all baptized into one body, **1 Cor.** 12:13. The Church is built upon the foundation of Apostles and prophets, **Eph.** 2:19–20. Apostles and prophets are essential to the Church, **Eph.** 4:11–16. Christ is the head of the Church, **Eph.** 5:23.

Notwithstanding there were many churches, they were all one Church, **Mosiah** 25:19–22. The Church was cleansed and set in order, **Alma** 6:1–6. Christ's Church must be called in his name, **3 Ne.** 27:8. The Church did meet together oft to fast and to pray and to speak, **Moro.** 6:5.

This is the only true and living Church, **D&C** 1:30. The Church of Christ rose in these last days, **D&C** 20:1. The Lord calls his servants to build up his Church, **D&C** 39:13. For thus shall my Church be called in the last days, **D&C** 115:4.

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, The. *See also* Church, Name of; Church, Signs of the True; Church of Jesus Christ; Restoration of the Gospel

The name given to the Church of Christ in the latter days to distinguish it from the Church in other dispensations (D&C 115:3–4).

The Lord will pour down knowledge upon the Latter-day Saints, **D&C** 121:33. Joseph Smith is the prophet and seer of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, **D&C** 127:12. The great day of the Lord is at hand for the Latter-day Saints, **D&C** 128:21, 24. Joseph Smith has helped gather the Latter-day Saints, **D&C** 135:3. Companies of Latter-day Saints are to be organized for the trip to the western territory of the United States, **D&C** 136:2. Laws of marriage clarified for the Latter-day Saints, **OD** 1. The priesthood is given to all worthy male members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, **OD** 2.

Circumcision

The account of the First Vision to all Latter-day Saints, **JS—H** 1:1.

Circumcision. *See also* Abrahamic Covenant

The token of the Abrahamic covenant for male Israelites during Old Testament dispensations (Gen. 17:10–11, 23–27; JST, Gen. 17:11 [Appendix]). Circumcision was performed by cutting off the “flesh of the foreskin” of male infants and adults alike. Those who received it enjoyed the privileges and accepted the responsibilities of the covenant. Circumcision as a token of the covenant was done away with by Christ’s mission (Moro. 8:8; D&C 74:3–7).

Clean and Unclean. *See also* Filth, Filthiness; Law of Moses; Pure, Purity

In the Old Testament, the Lord revealed to Moses and the ancient Israelites that only certain foods were considered clean or, in other words, fit to be eaten. The distinction that the Israelites drew between clean and unclean foods had a great effect upon their religious and social life. Certain animals, birds, and fish were regarded as clean and acceptable to eat, while others were unclean and were forbidden (Lev. 11; Deut. 14:3–20). Some diseased persons were also considered unclean.

In a spiritual sense, to be clean is to be free from sin and sinful desires. In this sense the word is used to describe a person who is virtuous and has a pure heart (Ps. 24:4). God’s covenant people have always had special instructions to be clean (3 Ne. 20:41; D&C 38:42; 133:5).

He that hath clean hands and a pure heart shall ascend unto the hill of the Lord, **Ps.** 24:3–5.

Do not call any man common or unclean, **Acts** 10:11–28.

Can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands, **Alma** 5:19.

The Lord will chasten Zion until she is clean, **D&C** 90:36. Be ye clean

that bear the vessels of the Lord, **D&C** 133:4–5, 14 (Isa. 52:11).

Colossians, Epistle to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles

A book in the New Testament. It was originally a letter that the Apostle Paul wrote to the Colossians after he was visited by Epaphras, the evangelist of the Church in Colosse (Col. 1:7–8). Epaphras told Paul that the Colossians were falling into serious error—they thought they were better than other people because they carefully observed certain external ordinances (Col. 2:16), denied themselves certain physical wants, and worshiped angels (Col. 2:18). These practices made the Colossians feel they were being sanctified. They also felt they understood the mysteries of the universe better than other Church members. In his letter, Paul corrected them by teaching that redemption comes only through Christ and that we are to be wise and serve Him.

Chapter 1 is Paul’s greeting to the Colossians. Chapters 2–3 are doctrinal and contain statements on Christ as the Redeemer, the danger of false worship, and the importance of the Resurrection. Chapter 4 teaches that Saints are to be wise in all things.

Combinations. *See* Secret Combinations

Come. *See also* Disciple; Obedience, Obedient, Obey

In the scriptures, often means to draw near to someone by following or obeying, such as in the phrase “come unto Christ, and be perfected in him” (Moro. 10:32).

Incline your ear, and come unto me, **Isa.** 55:3.

Come unto me, all ye that labor, **Matt.** 11:28. Suffer little children to come unto me, **Matt.** 19:14. If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, **Luke** 9:23. He that cometh to me shall never hunger, **John** 6:35.

Christ invites all to come unto him, **2 Ne.** 26:33. Come unto me and be saved, **3 Ne.** 12:20. Come unto Christ, **Moro.** 10:32.

Invite all to come unto Christ, **D&C** 20:59. Come unto me, and your souls shall live, **D&C** 45:46.

Comforter. *See also* Holy Ghost; Jesus Christ

The scriptures speak of two Comforters. The first is the Holy Ghost (John 14:26–27; Moro. 8:26; **D&C** 21:9; 42:17; 90:11). The Second Comforter is the Lord Jesus Christ (John 14:18, 21, 23). When someone obtains the Second Comforter, Jesus Christ will appear to him from time to time, will reveal the Father, and will teach him face to face (**D&C** 130:3).

Commandments, the Ten. *See also* Commandments of God; Moses

Ten laws given by God through the prophet Moses to govern moral behavior.

The Hebrew name for these is the “Ten Words.” They are also called the Covenant (Deut. 9:9) or the Testimony (Ex. 25:21; 32:15). God’s giving of the Ten Commandments to Moses, and through him to Israel, is described in Ex. 19:9–20:23; 32:15–19; 34:1. The commandments were engraved on two tables of stone, which were placed in the Ark; hence the Ark was called the Ark of the Covenant (Num. 10:33). The Lord, quoting from Deut. 6:4–5 and Lev. 19:18, has summarized the Ten Commandments in “two great commandments” (Matt. 22:37–39).

The Ten Commandments have been repeated in latter-day revelation (JST, Ex. 34:1–2, 14 [Appendix]; Mosiah 12:32–37; 13:12–24; **D&C** 42:18–28; 59:5–13).

Commandments of God. *See also* Commandments, the Ten; Law; Obedience, Obedient, Obey; Sin; Word of God

The laws and requirements that God

gives to mankind, either individually or collectively. Keeping the commandments will bring blessings of the Lord to the obedient (**D&C** 130:21).

Noah did according to all that God commanded him, **Gen.** 6:22. Walk in my statutes, and keep my commandments, **Lev.** 26:3. Keep my commandments, and live, **Prov.** 4:4 (Prov. 7:2).

If ye love me, keep my commandments, **John** 14:15 (**D&C** 42:29). Whatsoever we ask, we receive of him, because we keep his commandments, **1 Jn.** 3:22. His commandments are not grievous, **1 Jn.** 5:3.

Be immovable in keeping the commandments, **1 Ne.** 2:10. The Lord gives no commandments save he shall prepare a way, **1 Ne.** 3:7. I must do according to the strict commands of God, **Jacob** 2:10. Inasmuch as ye keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land, **Jarom** 1:9 (Alma 9:13; 50:20). Learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God, **Alma** 37:35.

These commandments are of me, **D&C** 1:24. Search these commandments, **D&C** 1:37. Those who do not keep the commandments cannot be saved, **D&C** 18:46 (**D&C** 25:15; 56:2). My commandments are spiritual; they are not natural or temporal, **D&C** 29:35. Commandments are given so that we may understand the Lord’s will, **D&C** 82:8.

I know not, save the Lord commanded me, **Moses** 5:6. The Lord will prove men to see if they will do all that he commands them, **Abr.** 3:25.

Common Consent. *See also* Church of Jesus Christ; Sustaining Church Leaders

The principle whereby Church members sustain those called to serve in the Church, as well as other Church decisions requiring their support, usually shown by raising the right hand.

Jesus Christ stands at the head of His Church. Through the inspiration of the

Holy Ghost, He directs Church leaders in important actions and decisions. However, all Church members have the right and privilege of sustaining or not sustaining the actions and decisions of their leaders.

All the people answered with one voice, **Ex.** 24:3 (Num. 27:18–19).

The Apostles and elders assembled with one accord, **Acts** 15:25.

No person is to be ordained without the vote of the Church, **D&C** 20:65–66. All things are to be done by common consent, **D&C** 26:2 (D&C 28:13). Let all things be done by united consent, **D&C** 104:21.

Communion. *See* Sacrament

Compassion. *See also* Charity; Love; Merciful, Mercy

In the scriptures, compassion means literally “to suffer with.” It also means to show sympathy, pity, and mercy for another.

The Lord called upon his people to show compassion, **Zech.** 7:8–10.

Jesus was moved with compassion, **Matt.** 9:36 (Matt. 20:34; Mark 1:41; Luke 7:13). A certain Samaritan had compassion on him, **Luke** 10:33. Have compassion for one another, **1 Pet.** 3:8.

Christ is filled with compassion toward the children of men, **Mosiah** 15:9. My bowels are filled with compassion toward you, **3 Ne.** 17:6.

Joseph Smith prayed for the Lord’s compassion, **D&C** 121:3–5.

Condemn, Condemnation. *See also* Judge, Judgment; Judgment, the Last

To judge or be judged guilty by God.

God will condemn a man of wicked devices, **Prov.** 12:2.

We are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with the world, **1 Cor.** 11:32.

Our words, works, and thoughts will condemn us, **Alma** 12:14. By knowing things and not doing them, men

come under condemnation, **Hel.** 14:19. If we should cease to labor, we should be brought under condemnation, **Moro.** 9:6.

He that forgives not his brother stands condemned before the Lord, **D&C** 64:9. He who sins against the greater light shall receive the greater condemnation, **D&C** 82:3. The whole Church is under condemnation until they repent and remember the Book of Mormon, **D&C** 84:54–57.

Confess, Confession. *See also* Forgive; Repent, Repentance

The scriptures use *confession* in at least two ways. In one sense, to confess is to state one’s faith in something, such as to confess that Jesus is the Christ (Matt. 10:32; Rom. 10:9; 1 Jn. 4:1–3; D&C 88:104).

In another sense, to confess is to admit one’s guilt, such as in a confession of sins. It is a duty of all persons to confess all their sins to the Lord and obtain His forgiveness (D&C 58:42–43). When necessary, sins should be confessed to the person or persons sinned against. Serious sins should be confessed to a Church official (in most cases the bishop).

He shall confess that he has sinned, **Lev.** 5:5. They shall confess their iniquity, **Lev.** 26:40–42. Give glory to the Lord God of Israel, and make confession unto him, **Josh.** 7:19.

People were baptized of him in Jordan, confessing their sins, **Matt.** 3:5–6.

The transgressor who confesses his sins shall be forgiven, **Mosiah** 26:29.

Confess your sins, lest you suffer punishments, **D&C** 19:20. The repentant will confess and forsake their sins, **D&C** 58:43. The Lord is merciful to those who confess sins with humble hearts, **D&C** 61:2. The Lord forgives the sins of those who confess and ask forgiveness, **D&C** 64:7.

Confidence. *See also* Belief, Believe; Faith; Trust

Having an assurance, belief, trust, or faith in something, especially God and Jesus Christ.

It is better to trust in the Lord than to put confidence in man, **Ps.** 118:8. The Lord shall be thy confidence, **Prov.** 3:26.

When Christ shall appear, we may have confidence, **1 Jn.** 2:28.

The wicked Nephites lost the confidence of their children, **Jacob** 2:35.

Then shall thy confidence wax strong in the presence of God, **D&C** 121:45.

Confirmation. *See* Hands, Laying on of

Conscience. *See also* Light, Light of Christ

The inner sense of right and wrong, coming from the Light of Christ in all men (**Moro.** 7:16). We are born with a natural capacity to distinguish between right and wrong because of the Light of Christ that is given to every person (**D&C** 84:46). This faculty is called conscience. The possession of it makes us responsible beings. Like other faculties, our consciences may be deadened through sin or misuse.

The scribes and Pharisees were convicted by their own conscience, **John** 8:9. Their conscience also bears witness, **Rom.** 2:14–15. Apostates have their conscience seared with a hot iron, **1 Tim.** 4:2.

Men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil, **2 Ne.** 2:5. King Benjamin had a clear conscience before God, **Mosiah** 2:15. The Nephites were filled with joy, having peace of conscience, **Mosiah** 4:3. Zeezrom was harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt, **Alma** 14:6. We are given joy or remorse of conscience according to our desires, **Alma** 29:5. A punishment and a just law bring remorse of conscience, **Alma** 42:18. The Spirit of

Christ is given to every man that he may know good from evil, **Moro.** 7:16.

Each individual should have the free exercise of conscience, **D&C** 134:2. I have a conscience void of offense, **D&C** 135:4.

We claim the privilege of worshipping God according to the dictates of our own conscience, **A of F** 1:11.

Consecrate, Law of Consecration. *See also* Kingdom of God or Kingdom of Heaven; United Order

To dedicate, to make holy, or to become righteous. The law of consecration is a divine principle whereby men and women voluntarily dedicate their time, talents, and material wealth to the establishment and building up of God's kingdom.

Consecrate yourselves to day to the Lord, **Ex.** 32:29.

All that believed had all things common, **Acts** 2:44–45.

They had all things common among them; therefore there were not rich and poor, **4 Ne.** 1:3.

The Lord explained the principles of consecration, **D&C** 42:30–39 (**D&C** 51:2–19; 58:35–36). One man should not possess more than another, **D&C** 49:20. Every man was given an equal portion according to his family, **D&C** 51:3. An order was established so that the Saints could be equal in bonds of heavenly and earthly things, **D&C** 78:4–5. Every man was to have equal claim according to his wants and needs, **D&C** 82:17–19. Zion can only be built up by the principles of celestial law, **D&C** 105:5.

The people of Enoch were of one heart and one mind and dwelt in righteousness, and there were no poor among them, **Moses** 7:18.

Constitution. *See also* Government; Law

In the Doctrine and Covenants, “the Constitution” refers to the Constitution of the United States of America, which was divinely inspired in order

to prepare the way for the Restoration of the gospel.

Constitutional law should be befriended, **D&C** 98:5–6. The Lord caused the Constitution to be established, **D&C** 101:77, 80.

Constrain, Constraint. *See also* Holy Ghost

To be urged strongly to do or not to do something, especially by the influence and power of the Holy Ghost.

The spirit within me constrains me, **Job** 32:18.

The love of Christ constraineth us, **2 Cor.** 5:14.

I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill Laban, **1 Ne.** 4:10. The Spirit constrains me, **Alma** 14:11. I am constrained according to the covenant, **Alma** 60:34. Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records, **4 Ne.** 1:48.

That which comes from above must be spoken by constraint of the Spirit, **D&C** 63:64.

Contention. *See also* Rebellion

Strife, arguing, and disputations. Contention, especially between members of the Lord's Church or between family members, is not pleasing to the Lord.

Let there be no strife between me and thee, **Gen.** 13:8. Pride causes contention, **Prov.** 13:10.

If any man have a quarrel against any, forgive as Christ forgave, **Col.** 3:13. Avoid foolish questions and contention, **Titus** 3:9.

The Lord commands men not to contend with one another, **2 Ne.** 26:32. Ye will not suffer your children to fight and quarrel with one another, **Mosiah** 4:14. Alma commanded that there be no contention among Church members, **Mosiah** 18:21. Satan spreads rumors and contention, **Hel.** 16:22. The devil is the father of contention and stirs up

men to contend with one another, **3 Ne.** 11:29 (**Mosiah** 23:15).

Establish my gospel, that there may not be so much contention, **D&C** 10:62–64. Cease to contend with one another, **D&C** 136:23.

Contrite Spirit. *See* Broken Heart

Conversion, Convert. *See also* Born Again, Born of God; Disciple

Changing one's beliefs, heart, and life to accept and conform to the will of God (**Acts** 3:19).

Conversion includes a conscious decision to give up one's former ways and change to become a disciple of Christ. Repentance, baptism for the remission of sins, the reception of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands, and continued faith in the Lord Jesus Christ make conversion complete. A natural man will be changed into a new person who is sanctified and pure, born again in Christ Jesus (**2 Cor.** 5:17; **Mosiah** 3:19).

People must be converted and become as little children, **Matt.** 18:3 (**Mosiah** 3:19). When thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren, **Luke** 22:32. They that gladly received his word were baptized, **Acts** 2:37–41. Convert the sinner from the error of his way, **James** 5:20.

Enos was converted, **Enos** 1:2–5. King Benjamin's words wrought a mighty change in the people, **Mosiah** 5:2 (**Alma** 5:12–14). All mankind must be born again, yea, born of God, **Mosiah** 27:25. Alma and the sons of Mosiah were converted, **Mosiah** 27:33–35. Lamoni's father was converted, **Alma** 22:15–18. By the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord, **Alma** 53:10. Repentance brings a change of heart, **Hel.** 15:7. As many as were converted did truly show that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, **3 Ne.** 7:21. Because of their faith in Christ at the time of their conversion,

they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, **3 Ne.** 9:20.

They shall go forth and preach repentance, and many shall be converted, **D&C** 44:3–4.

Corianton. *See also* Alma, Son of Alma

In the Book of Mormon, a son of Alma, the son of Alma.

Went to the Zoramites, **Alma** 31:7. Forsook the ministry to go after a harlot, **Alma** 39:3. Alma instructed him on the state of existence after death, resurrection, and atonement, **Alma** 39–42. Was called to preach again, **Alma** 42:31. Went to the land northward in a ship, **Alma** 63:10.

Coriantumr. *See also* Jaredites

In the Book of Mormon, a king of the Jaredites and the last survivor of the Jaredite nation.

Was discovered by the people of Zarahemla, **Omni** 1:21. Was king over all the land, **Ether** 12:1–2. Was captured by Shered and liberated by his sons, **Ether** 13:23–24. Battled various enemies, **Ether** 13:28–14:31. Repented, **Ether** 15:3. Fought his final battle with Shiz, **Ether** 15:15–32.

Corinthians, Epistles to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles

Two books in the New Testament. They were originally letters that Paul wrote to the Saints in Corinth to correct disorder among them. The Corinthians lived in a society that was morally wicked.

First Corinthians: Chapter 1 contains Paul's greetings and his admonishment for the Saints to be united. Chapters 2–6 are Paul's corrections of faults of the Corinthian Saints. Chapters 7–12 contain Paul's replies to certain inquiries. Chapters 13–15 are concerned with charity, spiritual gifts, and the Resurrection. Chapter 16 contains Paul's counsel to stand strong in the faith.

Second Corinthians: Chapter 1 contains Paul's greetings and a message of comfort. Chapter 2 contains personal advice for Titus. Chapters 3–7 deal with the power of the gospel in the lives of the Saints and their leaders. Chapters 8–9 counsel the Saints to be cheerful givers to the poor. Chapters 10–12 are an assertion of Paul's own position as an Apostle. Chapter 13 is an admonition to be perfect.

Cornelius. *See also* Centurion; Gentiles; Peter

A centurion at Caesarea, baptized by Peter (Acts 10). He was probably the first Gentile to join the Church without first having been converted to Judaism. The baptism of Cornelius and his family marked the opening of the way for the gospel to be preached to the Gentiles. Peter, the chief Apostle, who held the keys of the kingdom of God on the earth at that time, directed this preaching.

Cornerstone. *See also* Jesus Christ

The main stone forming the corner of the foundation of a building. Jesus Christ is called the chief cornerstone (Eph. 2:20).

The stone that the builders refused has become the head stone of the corner, **Ps.** 118:22 (Matt. 21:42–44; Mark 12:10; Luke 20:17; Acts 4:10–12).

The Jews rejected the cornerstone, **Jacob** 4:15–17.

Council in Heaven. *See also* Plan of Redemption; Premortal Life; War in Heaven

The occasion in premortal life when the Father presented His plan to His spirit children who would come to this earth.

The sons of God shouted for joy, **Job** 38:4–7. Exalt my throne above the stars of God, **Isa.** 14:12–13.

There was a war in heaven, **Rev.** 12:7–11.

Before they were born, they received

their first lessons in the world of spirits, **D&C 138:56**.

Satan rebelled in the premortal life, **Moses 4:1–4**. Intelligences were organized before the world was created, **Abr. 3:22**. The Gods took counsel among themselves, **Abr. 4:26**. The Gods ended the work that they counseled to do, **Abr. 5:2**.

Council of the Twelve. *See* Apostle

Counsel (noun). *See also* Prophet

Admonitions, warnings, advice, and instruction from the Lord and His ordained leaders.

I will give thee counsel, **Ex. 18:19**. God will guide me with his counsel, **Ps. 73:24**. When no counsel is given, the people fall, **Prov. 11:14**.

The Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God, **Luke 7:30**.

To be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsel of God, **2 Ne. 9:29**.

Listen to the counsel of him who has ordained you, **D&C 78:2**. Receive counsel of him whom I have appointed, **D&C 108:1**. He aspired to establish his counsel instead of the counsel which I have ordained, **D&C 124:84**. Hearken to the counsel of my servant Joseph, **D&C 124:89**. If any man seeks not my counsel, he shall have no power, **D&C 136:19**.

Counsel (verb)

As used in the scriptures, counsel means to advise or instruct.

I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, **Rev. 3:18**.

Seek not to counsel the Lord, **Jacob 4:10**. He doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, **Alma 37:12**.

Your sins have come up unto me because you seek to counsel in your own ways, **D&C 56:14**.

Countenance

The general appearance of a person's face, which often reflects spiritual attitude and state of mind.

Their countenance witnessed against them, **Isa. 3:9**. The king's countenance was changed, and his thoughts troubled him, **Dan. 5:6**.

His countenance was like lightning, **Matt. 28:3**. His countenance was as the sun, **Rev. 1:16**.

Have ye received God's image in your countenance, **Alma 5:14, 19**. Ammon saw that the countenance of the king was changed, **Alma 18:12**.

Fast and pray with a glad heart and a cheerful countenance, **D&C 59:14–15**. His countenance shone above the brightness of the sun, **D&C 110:3**.

Courage, Courageous. *See also* Faith; Fear

To not be afraid, especially of doing what is right.

Be strong and of a good courage, **Deut. 31:6** (Josh. 1:6–7). Be very courageous to keep and to do all that is written, **Josh. 23:6**.

God has not given us the spirit of fear, **2 Tim. 1:7**.

His heart took courage when he heard, **Alma 15:4** (Alma 62:1). The sons of Helaman were exceedingly valiant for courage, **Alma 53:20–21**. Never had I seen such great courage, **Alma 56:45**.

Courage, brethren, and on, on to the victory, **D&C 128:22**.

Covenant. *See also* Abrahamic Covenant; New and Everlasting Covenant; Oath; Oath and Covenant of the Priesthood

An agreement between God and man, but they do not act as equals in the agreement. God gives the conditions for the covenant, and men agree to do what He asks them to do. God then promises men certain blessings for their obedience.

Principles and ordinances are received by covenant. Members of the Church who make such covenants promise to honor them. For example, members covenant with the Lord at baptism and renew that covenant by

partaking of the sacrament. They make further covenants in the temple. The Lord's people are a covenant people and are greatly blessed as they keep their covenants with the Lord.

With thee will I establish my covenant, **Gen.** 6:18. Keep my covenant; then ye shall be a peculiar treasure, **Ex.** 19:5. Make no covenant with them nor their gods, **Ex.** 23:32. Keep the sabbath for a perpetual covenant, **Ex.** 31:16. I will never break my covenant with you, **Judg.** 2:1. My Saints have made a covenant with me by sacrifice, **Ps.** 50:5 (**D&C** 97:8).

Remember his holy covenant, **Luke** 1:72 (**D&C** 90:24).

The power of God descended upon the covenant people of the Lord, **1 Ne.** 14:14. The covenant made to Abraham will be fulfilled in latter days, **1 Ne.** 15:18 (3 **Ne.** 16:5, 11–12; 21:7; **Morm.** 9:37). Benjamin's people were willing to enter into a covenant with God to do his will, **Mosiah** 5:5. Baptism is a testimony that man has entered into a covenant with God to serve Him, **Mosiah** 18:13. Ye are children of the covenant, **3 Ne.** 20:25–26. Angels fulfill and do the work of the covenants of the Father, **Moro.** 7:29–31. The shedding of the blood of Christ is the covenant, **Moro.** 10:33.

Every person who belongs to this Church of Christ shall observe to keep all the covenants, **D&C** 42:78. Blessed are they who have kept the covenant, **D&C** 54:6. He who breaks this covenant shall lose his office and standing in the Church, **D&C** 78:11–12. All those who receive the priesthood receive this oath and covenant, **D&C** 84:39–40. They are willing to observe their covenants by sacrifice, **D&C** 97:8. The marriage covenant can be eternal, **D&C** 132. This shall be our covenant, that we will walk in all the ordinances, **D&C** 136:4.

Covet. *See also* Envy

As used in the scriptures, to covet is

to envy someone or to have an excessive desire for something.

Thou shalt not covet, **Ex.** 20:17 (**Deut.** 5:21; **Mosiah** 13:24; **D&C** 19:25). He that hates covetousness shall prolong his days, **Prov.** 28:16. They coveted fields and took them, **Micah** 2:2.

Beware of covetousness, **Luke** 12:15. The law said, Thou shalt not covet, **Rom.** 7:7. In the last days, men shall be covetous, **2 Tim.** 3:1–2.

When Laban saw our property, he lusted after it, **1 Ne.** 3:25.

Thou shalt not covet thine own property, **D&C** 19:26. Cease to be covetous, **D&C** 88:123. Do not covet that which is thy brother's, **D&C** 136:20.

Cowdery, Oliver

The second elder of the restored Church and one of the Three Witnesses to the divine origin and truthfulness of the Book of Mormon. He acted as scribe while Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon from the gold plates (**JS—H** 1:66–68).

Received a witness of the truth of the translation of the Book of Mormon, **D&C** 6:17, 22–24. Was ordained by John the Baptist, **D&C** 13 (**D&C** 27:8; **JS—H** 1:68–73, see note to verse 71). After you have obtained faith and have seen them with your eyes, ye shall testify that you have seen them, **D&C** 17:3, 5. I have manifested unto you, by my Spirit, that the things which you have written are true, **D&C** 18:2. Was appointed and ordained one of the stewards over the revelations, **D&C** 70:3. Received the keys of the priesthood with Joseph Smith, **D&C** 110.

Create, Creation. *See also* Beginning; Earth; Jesus Christ; Sabbath Day; Spirit Creation

To organize. God, working through His Son, Jesus Christ, organized the elements in nature to form the heavens and the earth. Heavenly Father

Creator

and Jesus created man in Their image (Moses 2:26–27).

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth, **Gen.** 1:1. Let us make man in our image, **Gen.** 1:26 (Moses 2:26–27; Abr. 4:26).

All things were made by him, **John** 1:3, 10. By him were all things created that are in heaven, **Col.** 1:16 (Mosiah 3:8; Hel. 14:12). God made the worlds by his Son, **Heb.** 1:2.

Man was created in the beginning, **Mosiah** 7:27. I created the heavens and the earth and all things, **3 Ne.** 9:15 (Morm. 9:11, 17). All men were created in the beginning after mine own image, **Ether** 3:15.

Jesus Christ created the heavens and the earth, **D&C** 14:9. He created man, male and female, after his own image, **D&C** 20:18.

Worlds without number have I created, **Moses** 1:33. By mine Only Begotten I created heaven, **Moses** 2:1. I, the Lord God, created all things spiritually before they were naturally upon the face of the earth, **Moses** 3:5. Millions of earths like this would not be a beginning to the number of thy creations, **Moses** 7:30. The Gods organized and formed the heavens, **Abr.** 4:1.

Creator. *See* Create, Creation; Jesus Christ

Cross. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Crucifixion; Golgotha; Jesus Christ; Sacrament

The wooden structure upon which Jesus Christ was crucified (Mark 15:20–26). Many in the world now think of it as a symbol of Christ's Crucifixion and atoning sacrifice; however, the Lord has established His own symbols for His Crucifixion and sacrifice—the bread and the water of the sacrament (Matt. 26:26–28; D&C 20:40, 75–79). In the scriptures, those who take up their cross are those who love Jesus Christ so much that they deny themselves ungodliness and every worldly lust and

keep His commandments (JST, Matt. 16:25–26 [Appendix]).

Take up the cross, and follow me, **Mark** 10:21 (3 Ne. 12:30; D&C 23:6). Jesus endured the cross and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God, **Heb.** 12:2.

He was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world, **1 Ne.** 11:33. They who have endured the crosses of the world shall inherit the kingdom of God, **2 Ne.** 9:18. My Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross, **3 Ne.** 27:14–15.

He that will not take up his cross and follow me and keep my commandments, the same shall not be saved, **D&C** 56:2.

Behold the Son of Man lifted up on the cross, **Moses** 7:55.

Crown. *See also* Eternal Life

A circular ornament worn on the head by rulers. It can be a symbol of celestial power, dominion, and godhood. Those who endure to the end by keeping all of God's commandments will receive a crown of eternal life. (See D&C 20:14; Moses 7:56; JS—M 1:1.)

There is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, **2 Tim.** 4:8. Ye shall receive a crown of glory that fades not, **1 Pet.** 5:4.

The dead who die in the Lord will receive a crown of righteousness, **D&C** 29:13. They shall receive a crown in the mansions of my Father, **D&C** 59:2. The Lord prepares Saints to come up unto the crown prepared for them, **D&C** 78:15. The Lord has promised his Saints a crown of glory at his right hand, **D&C** 104:7.

Crucifixion. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Cross; Golgotha; Jesus Christ

A Roman form of execution, common during New Testament times, in which the person was put to death by tying or nailing his hands and feet to a cross.

It was usually done only to slaves and the lowest criminals. Crucifixion was often preceded by scourging or whipping (Mark 15:15). The person being crucified was usually made to carry his own cross to the place of execution (John 19:16–17). His clothing was usually taken by the soldiers who carried out the sentence (Matt. 27:35). The cross was driven into the ground so that the feet of the person were only a foot or two above the ground. The cross was watched by soldiers until the person on the cross died, which sometimes took up to three days (John 19:31–37).

Jesus Christ was crucified because a group of unbelievers falsely charged Him with sedition against Caesar and blasphemy because He said He was the Son of God. A purple robe (John 19:2), a crown of thorns, and other insults were given to Jesus (Matt. 26:67; Mark 14:65).

The wicked will pierce the hands and feet of the Messiah, **Ps.** 22:11–18. Christ will go as a lamb to the slaughter, **Isa.** 53:7.

Jesus foretold his crucifixion, **Matt.** 20:18–19. Christ's crucifixion is described, **Matt.** 27:22–50 (Mark 15:22–37; Luke 23:26–46; John 19:17–30).

Nephi saw in vision the crucifixion of the Lamb of God, **1 Ne.** 11:33. Nephi told of Christ's sufferings and crucifixion, **1 Ne.** 19:9–14. Jacob told of the ministry and crucifixion of the Holy One of Israel, **2 Ne.** 6:9. Tempests, earthquakes, fires, and whirlwinds in America attested the crucifixion of Christ in Jerusalem, **3 Ne.** 8.

I am Jesus who was crucified, **D&C** 45:51–52. The ministry of Christ among the spirits in prison was limited to the time between his death and resurrection, **D&C** 138:27.

Cubit

The ordinary unit of length among the Hebrews—originally the distance from the elbow to the tip of the fingers.

Cumorah, Hill. *See also* Book of Mormon; Moroni, Son of Mormon; Smith, Joseph, Jr.

A small hill located in western New York, United States of America. Here an ancient prophet named Moroni hid the gold plates containing some of the records of the Nephite and Jaredite nations. Joseph Smith was directed to this hill in 1827 by the resurrected Moroni to get these plates and translate a portion of them. This translation is the Book of Mormon.

Nephites gathered at Cumorah, **Morm.** 6:2–4. Cumorah was in a land of many waters, **Morm.** 6:4. Mormon hid the records in the Hill Cumorah, **Morm.** 6:6. All but twenty and four Nephites were slain at Cumorah, **Morm.** 6:11.

We hear glad tidings from Cumorah, **D&C** 128:20.

Joseph Smith took plates from the Hill Cumorah, **JS—H** 1:42, 50–54, 59.

Curse, Curses. *See also* Damnation; Profanity

In the scriptures, a curse is the application of divine law that allows or brings judgments and their consequences upon a thing, person, or people primarily because of unrighteousness. Curses are a manifestation of God's divine love and justice. They may be invoked directly by God or pronounced by His authorized servants. Sometimes, the full reasons for curses are known only to God. In addition, a cursed state is experienced by those who willfully disobey God and thereby withdraw themselves from the Spirit of the Lord.

The Lord may remove curses because of the individual's or people's faith in Jesus Christ and obedience to the laws and ordinances of the gospel (Alma 23:16–18; 3 Ne. 2:14–16; A of F 1:3).

God cursed the serpent for beguiling Adam and Eve, **Gen.** 3:13–15 (Moses 4:19–21). The ground was cursed for the sake of Adam and Eve, **Gen.** 3:17–19 (Moses 4:23–25). The Lord cursed Cain

Cyrus

for killing Abel, **Gen.** 4:11–16 (Moses 5:22–41). The Lord cursed Canaan and his descendants, **Gen.** 9:25–27 (Moses 7:6–8; Abr. 1:21–27). Israel will be blessed if obedient to God, and cursed if disobedient, **Deut.** 28 (Deut. 29:18–28). Gehazi and his descendants were cursed with the leprosy of Naaman, **2 Kgs.** 5:20–27. The Lord cursed the ancient nation of Israel for not paying tithes and offerings, **Mal.** 3:6–10.

Jesus cursed a fig tree and it died, **Mark** 11:11–14, 20–21. Jesus cursed the cities of Chorazin, Bethsaida, and Capernaum, **Luke** 10:10–15.

Because the Lamanites would not listen to the Lord, they were separated from the presence of the Lord and cursed, **2 Ne.** 5:20–24. All are invited to come unto God, **2 Ne.** 26:33. The Lord shall curse those who commit whoredoms, **Jacob** 2:31–33. The Nephites to receive a greater curse than the Lamanites unless they repent, **Jacob** 3:3–5. Rebellious people bring curses upon themselves, **Alma** 3:18–19 (Deut. 11:26–28). Korihor was cursed for leading people away from God, **Alma** 30:43–60. The Lord cursed Nephite lands and riches because of the people's iniquities, **Hel.** 13:22–23 (2 Ne. 1:7; Alma 37:31). The Lord cursed the wicked Jaredites, **Ether** 9:28–35. Christ's Atonement removes the curse of Adam from little children, **Moro.** 8:8–12.

Those who turn away from the Lord are cursed, **D&C** 41:1. The earth will be smitten with a curse unless there is a welding link between fathers and children, **D&C** 128:18 (Mal. 4:5–6).

Profanity: To curse is also to use language that is profane, blasphemous, or contemptuous.

People are not to curse their fathers or mothers, **Ex.** 21:17 (Matt. 15:4). Do not curse those who rule over you, **Ex.** 22:28 (Eccl. 10:20). Men and women are not to curse God, **Lev.** 24:13–16.

Peter cursed when he denied knowing Jesus, **Matt.** 26:69–74.

Wicked Nephites cursed God and wanted to die, **Morm.** 2:14.

Cyrus

In the Old Testament, the king of Persia who fulfilled Isaiah's prophecy (2 Chr. 36:22–23; Isa. 44:28; 45:1) by allowing the Jews to return to Jerusalem to rebuild the temple, thus partially ending the Babylonian captivity. Isaiah's prophecy was made about 180 years before the king's action.

Damascus

An ancient city of Syria.

Damascus stands on a rich plain on the edge of the desert and is well watered by the river Barada. It is mentioned frequently in the scriptures (beginning with Gen. 14:15). Paul was on his way to Damascus when the resurrected Lord appeared to him (Acts 9:1–27; 22:5–16; 26:12–20).

Damnation. *See also* Death, Spiritual; Devil; Hell; Sons of Perdition

The state of being stopped in one's progress and denied access to the presence of God and His glory. Damnation exists in varying degrees. All who do not obtain the fulness of celestial exaltation will to some degree be limited in their progress and privileges, and they will be damned to that extent.

Woe unto you hypocrites! ye shall receive the greater damnation, **Matt.** 23:14. He that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost is in danger of eternal damnation, **Mark** 3:29. They that have done evil will come forth unto the resurrection of damnation, **John** 5:29 (3 Ne. 26:5). He that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, **1 Cor.** 11:29 (3 Ne. 18:28–29).

He that will not repent, be baptized, and endure to the end must be damned, **2 Ne.** 9:24 (Mark 16:16; Ether 4:18; D&C 68:9; 84:74). The wicked would

be more miserable to dwell with God than with the damned souls in hell, **Morm.** 9:4.

He that doeth not anything until he is commanded, the same is damned, **D&C** 58:29. He that receives a fulness of the new and everlasting covenant must abide the law, or he shall be damned, **D&C** 132:6.

Dan. See also Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, a son of Jacob and Bilhah, Rachel's maid (Gen. 30:5–6).

The tribe of Dan: For Jacob's blessing on Dan, see Genesis 49:16–18. For Moses' blessing on the tribe of Dan, see Deuteronomy 33:22. After they settled in Canaan, the tribe of Dan received a small but extremely fertile piece of land (Josh. 19:40–48). They had a good deal of difficulty protecting it against the Amorites (Judg. 1:34) and against the Philistines (Judg. 13:2, 25; 18:1). As a result, the Danites moved north of Palestine (Judg. 18), around Laish, and renamed that city Dan. This town is well known as the northern limit of Palestine, which extended "from Dan even to Beer-sheba."

Daniel

The main character of the book of Daniel in the Old Testament; a prophet of God and a man of great faith.

Nothing is known about his parents, although he appears to have been of royal descent (Dan. 1:3). He was taken captive to Babylon, where he received the name Belteshazzar (Dan. 1:6–7). Daniel and three other captives refused the king's food for religious reasons (Dan. 1:8–16).

Daniel won the favor of Nebuchadnezzar and Darius by his power to interpret dreams (Dan. 2; 4; 6). He also read and interpreted the handwriting on the wall (Dan. 5). His enemies plotted against him, and he was thrown into a den of lions, but the Lord preserved his life (Dan. 6).

The book of Daniel: The book has two divisions: chapters 1–6 are stories about Daniel and his three companions; chapters 7–12 are prophetic visions that Daniel saw. The book teaches the importance of being true to God and illustrates that the Lord blesses the faithful.

A major contribution of the book is the interpretation of King Nebuchadnezzar's dream. In the dream, the kingdom of God in the last days is depicted as a stone that is cut out of a mountain. The stone will roll forth until it fills the whole earth (Dan. 2; see also **D&C** 65:2).

Darius. See also Babel, Babylon

In the Old Testament, king of the Medes who reigned in Babylon after the death of Belshazzar (Dan. 5:31; 6:9, 25–28; 9:1; 11:1).

Darkness, Outer. See Death, Spiritual; Devil; Hell; Sons of Perdition

Darkness, Spiritual. See also Wicked, Wickedness

Wickedness or ignorance of spiritual things.

Woe unto them who put darkness for light, **Isa.** 5:20 (2 Ne. 15:20). Darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people, **Isa.** 60:2.

Jesus will give light to those that sit in darkness, **Luke** 1:79. The light shines in darkness, and the darkness comprehends it not, **John** 1:5 (**D&C** 45:7). Cast off the works of darkness and put on the armor of light, **Rom.** 13:12. Have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, **Eph.** 5:8–11.

Because ye ask not, ye are not brought into the light but must perish in the dark, **2 Ne.** 32:4. Satan spreads the works of darkness, **Hel.** 6:28–31.

The powers of darkness prevail upon the earth, **D&C** 38:8, 11–12. The whole world groans under darkness and sin, **D&C** 84:49–54. If your eye be single to my glory, there shall be no darkness in you, **D&C** 88:67.

The works of darkness began to prevail among all the sons of men, **Moses 5:55.**

David. *See also* Bathsheba; Psalm

A king of ancient Israel in the Old Testament.

David was a son of Jesse of the tribe of Judah. He was a courageous youth who slew a lion, a bear, and the Philistine giant Goliath (1 Sam. 17). David was chosen and anointed to be king of Israel. Like Saul, in his adult life he was guilty of grave crimes, but, unlike Saul, he was capable of true contrition. He was therefore able to find forgiveness, except in the murder of Uriah (D&C 132:39). His life can be divided into four parts: (1) at Bethlehem, where he was a shepherd (1 Sam. 16–17); (2) in the court of King Saul (1 Sam. 18:1–19:18); (3) as a fugitive (1 Sam. 19:18–31:13; 2 Sam. 1); (4) as king over Judah at Hebron (2 Sam. 2–4), and later as king over all Israel (2 Sam. 5–24; 1 Kgs. 1:1–2:11).

David's sin of adultery with Bathsheba was followed by a series of misfortunes that marred the last twenty years of his life. The nation as a whole was prosperous during his reign, but David himself suffered from the consequences of his sins. There were constant family feuds, which, in the case of Absalom and Adonijah, ended in open rebellion. These incidents are a fulfillment of the pronouncement of Nathan the prophet upon David because of his sin (2 Sam. 12:7–13).

In spite of these disasters, David's reign was the most brilliant of Israelite history, for (1) he united the tribes into one nation, (2) he secured undisputed possession of the country, (3) he based the government on the true religion so that the will of God was the law of Israel. For these reasons, David's reign was later regarded as the nation's golden age and the type of the more glorious age when the Messiah would come (Isa. 16:5; Jer. 23:5; Ezek. 37:24–28).

David's life illustrates the need for

all persons to endure in righteousness to the end. As a youth, he was said to be a man after the Lord's "own heart" (1 Sam. 13:14); as a man, he spoke by the Spirit and had many revelations. But he paid a heavy price for his disobedience to the commandments of God (D&C 132:39).

Day of the Lord. *See* Judgment, the Last; Sabbath Day; Second Coming of Jesus Christ

Deacon. *See also* Aaronic Priesthood

A calling in Church service at the time of the Apostle Paul (Philip. 1:1; 1 Tim. 3:8–13) and an office in the Aaronic Priesthood (D&C 20:38, 57–59; 84:30, 111; 107:85).

Dead, Salvation for the. *See* Salvation for the Dead

Dead Sea

The salt sea at the southern end of the Jordan Valley. It was also known as the Salt Sea. Its surface is approximately 1300 feet (395 meters) below the Mediterranean Sea. The cities of Sodom, Gomorrah, and Zoar or Bela were near its shores (Gen. 14:2–3).

In fulfillment of prophecy and as one of the signs of the Second Coming of the Savior, the waters of the Dead Sea will be healed, and life will flourish there (Ezek. 47:8–9).

Death, Physical. *See also* Fall of Adam and Eve; Mortal, Mortality; Resurrection; Salvation

The separation of the body and the spirit. The Fall brought mortality and death to the earth (2 Ne. 2:22; Moses 6:48). The Atonement of Jesus Christ conquered death so that everyone will be resurrected (1 Cor. 15:21–23). Resurrection is a free gift to all people regardless of whether they have done good or evil in this life (Alma 11:42–44). Each person suffers only one physical death

since once we are resurrected, our bodies can die no more (Alma 11:45).

All flesh shall perish, and man shall turn again unto dust, **Job** 34:15. Precious in the sight of the Lord is the death of his Saints, **Ps.** 116:15. The dust will return to the earth, and the spirit will return to God, **Eccl.** 12:7.

By man came death, **1 Cor.** 15:21. The Savior holds the keys of hell and of death, **Rev.** 1:18. There shall be no more death, neither sorrow, **Rev.** 21:4.

Death hath passed upon all men, **2 Ne.** 9:6, 11 (Alma 12:24). They never did look upon death with terror, **Alma** 27:28. Alma explained the state of the soul between death and the resurrection, **Alma** 40:11.

Those who die in me shall not taste of death, **D&C** 42:46. Those who are not appointed unto death shall be healed, **D&C** 42:48. I will prove you in all things even unto death, **D&C** 98:14.

Unto dust shalt thou return, **Moses** 4:25. Adam fell, and by his fall came death, **Moses** 6:48.

Death, Second. *See* Death, Spiritual

Death, Spiritual. *See also* Damnation; Devil; Fall of Adam and Eve; Hell; Salvation; Sons of Perdition

Separation from God and His influences; to die as to things pertaining to righteousness. Lucifer and a third part of the hosts of heaven suffered a spiritual death when they were cast out of heaven (**D&C** 29:36–37).

Spiritual death was introduced into the world by the Fall of Adam (**Moses** 6:48). Mortals with evil thoughts, words, and works are spiritually dead while still alive on earth (**1 Tim.** 5:6). Through the Atonement of Jesus Christ and by obedience to the principles and ordinances of the gospel, men and women can become clean from sin and overcome spiritual death.

Spiritual death also occurs following the death of the mortal body. Both resurrected beings and the devil and his

angels will be judged. Those who have willfully rebelled against the light and truth of the gospel will suffer spiritual death. This death is often called the second death (**Alma** 12:16; **Hel.** 14:16–19; **D&C** 76:36–38).

Evildoers shall be cut off, **Ps.** 37:9.

To be carnally minded is death, **Rom.** 8:6 (2 **Ne.** 9:39). Lusters drown men in destruction and perdition, **1 Tim.** 6:9. Sin brings forth death, **James** 1:15. He that overcomes shall not be hurt of the second death, **Rev.** 2:11. On such the second death has no power, **Rev.** 20:6, 12–14. The wicked shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death, **Rev.** 21:8 (**D&C** 63:17–18).

Men are free to choose liberty and eternal life or to choose captivity and death, **2 Ne.** 2:27 (2 **Ne.** 10:23; **Alma** 29:5; **Hel.** 14:30–31). God has prepared a way for our escape from death and hell, **2 Ne.** 9:10. Loose yourselves from the pains of hell that you may not suffer the second death, **Jacob** 3:11. The natural man is an enemy to God, **Mosiah** 3:19. May the Lord grant unto you repentance so that you may not suffer the second death, **Alma** 13:30. Alma was encircled about by the everlasting chains of death, **Alma** 36:18. The wicked die as to things pertaining to righteousness, **Alma** 40:26 (**Alma** 12:16). The Fall brought upon all mankind a spiritual death, **Alma** 42:9 (**Hel.** 14:16–18).

When Adam fell, he became spiritually dead, **D&C** 29:40–41, 44.

Deborah

In the Old Testament, a prophetess who judged Israel and encouraged Barak against the Canaanites (**Judg.** 4). The song of Deborah and Barak celebrated Israel's deliverance from bondage (**Judg.** 5).

Debt. *See also* Forgive

As used in the scriptures, money or property owed to another causes the borrower to be in a form of bondage.

In another sense, Jesus taught that we should ask the Father to forgive us our debts, or release us from paying the price for our sins—through the Atonement of Jesus Christ—after we have forgiven others for their offences against us (Matt. 6:12; 3 Ne. 13:11).

The wicked borrow and pay not again, **Ps.** 37:21. The borrower is servant to the lender, **Prov.** 22:7.

I forgave thee all that debt: Shouldst not thou also have had compassion, **Matt.** 18:23–35. Owe no man any thing, but love one another, **Rom.** 13:8.

Ye are eternally indebted to your Heavenly Father, **Mosiah** 2:21–24, 34. Whosoever borrows from his neighbor should return the thing that he borrows, **Mosiah** 4:28.

Pay the debt, and release thyself from bondage, **D&C** 19:35. It is forbidden to get in debt to thine enemies, **D&C** 64:27. Pay all your debts, **D&C** 104:78. Do not get in debt to build the house of the Lord, **D&C** 115:13.

Deceit, Deceive, Deception. *See also* Guile; Lying

In the scriptures, to deceive is to cause someone to believe something that is not true.

He who has not sworn deceitfully shall ascend into the hill of the Lord, **Ps.** 24:3–4. Deliver me from the deceitful, **Ps.** 43:1. Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil, **Isa.** 5:20 (2 Ne. 15:20).

Let no man deceive himself, **1 Cor.** 3:18. Let no man deceive you with vain words, **Eph.** 5:6. Evil men shall deceive and be deceived, **2 Tim.** 3:13. Satan, who deceived the whole world, was cast out, **Rev.** 12:9. Satan was bound that he should deceive the nations no more, **Rev.** 20:1–3.

The Lord cannot be deceived, **2 Ne.** 9:41. If ye follow the Son, acting no deception before God, ye shall receive the Holy Ghost, **2 Ne.** 31:13. Sherem confessed that he was deceived by the power of the devil, **Jacob** 7:18. The

people of King Noah were deceived by flattering words, **Mosiah** 11:7.

The wise have taken the Holy Spirit for their guide, and have not been deceived, **D&C** 45:57. Wo unto them that are deceivers, **D&C** 50:6.

He became Satan, the father of all lies, to deceive and to blind men, **Moses** 4:4.

Degrees of Glory. *See also* Celestial Glory; Telesstial Glory; Terrestrial Glory

Differing kingdoms in heaven. At the Final Judgment, each person will inherit an eternal dwelling place in a specific kingdom of glory, except those who are sons of Perdition.

Jesus said, In my Father's house are many mansions, **John** 14:2 (Ether 12:32). There is one glory of the sun, and another of the moon, and another of the stars, **1 Cor.** 15:40–41. Paul was caught up to the third heaven, **2 Cor.** 12:2.

There is a place of no glory and everlasting punishment, **D&C** 76:30–38, 43–45. There are three degrees of glory, **D&C** 76:50–113; 88:20–32.

Deity. *See* God, Godhead

Delilah. *See also* Philistines

A Philistine woman in the Old Testament who deceived and betrayed Samson (Judg. 16).

Deliverer. *See also* Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ is the Deliverer of mankind because He rescues all from the bondage of death and the repentant from the penalties of sin.

The Lord is my rock and my deliverer, **2 Sam.** 22:2 (Ps. 18:2; 144:2). Thou art my help and my deliverer, **Ps.** 40:17 (Ps. 70:5).

The Deliverer shall come out of Zion, **Rom.** 11:26.

The Saints acknowledged the Son of God as their Redeemer and Deliverer, **D&C** 138:23.

Deseret. *See also* Jaredites

In the Book of Mormon, a Jaredite word meaning “honey bee” (Ether 2:3).

Despise. *See* Hate, Hatred

Destroyer. *See also* Devil

Satan is the destroyer.

The Lord will not suffer the destroyer to come in unto your houses, **Ex.** 12:23.

The destroyer rides upon the waters, **D&C** 61:19. The watchman could have saved my vineyard from the destroyer, **D&C** 101:51–54.

Deuteronomy. *See also* Pentateuch

The fifth book of the Old Testament.

Deuteronomy contains the three last discourses of Moses, which he delivered in the plains of Moab just before he was translated. The first discourse (chapters 1–4) is introductory. The second discourse (chapters 5–26) consists of two parts: (1) chapters 5–11—the Ten Commandments and a practical explanation of them; and (2) chapters 12–26—a code of laws, which forms the nucleus of the whole book. The third discourse (chapters 27–30) contains a solemn renewal of the covenant between Israel and God and an announcement of the blessings that follow obedience and the curses that follow disobedience. Chapters 31–34 describe the delivery of the law to the Levites, Moses’ song and last blessing, and the departure of Moses.

Devil. *See also* Antichrist; Destroyer; Hell; Lucifer; Sons of Perdition; Spirit—Evil spirits

Satan. The devil is the enemy of righteousness and of those who seek to do the will of God. He is literally a spirit son of God and was at one time an angel in authority in the presence of God (Isa. 14:12; 2 Ne. 2:17). However, he rebelled in the premortal life and persuaded a third part of the spirit children of the Father to rebel with him (**D&C** 29:36; Moses 4:1–4; Abr. 3:27–28). They were cast out of heaven, were denied the

opportunity of obtaining mortal bodies and experiencing mortal life, and will be eternally damned. Since the time the devil was cast out of heaven, he has sought constantly to deceive all men and women and lead them away from the work of God in order to make all mankind as miserable as he is (Rev. 12:9; 2 Ne. 2:27; 9:8–9).

Jesus rebuked the devil, **Matt.** 17:18. Everlasting fire is prepared for the devil and his angels, **Matt.** 25:41. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you, **James** 4:7.

The wicked will be brought down into the captivity of the devil, **1 Ne.** 14:7. The devil is the father of all lies, **2 Ne.** 2:18 (Moses 4:4). The devil seeks that all men might be miserable like unto himself, **2 Ne.** 2:27. If the flesh should rise no more, our spirits must become subject to the devil, **2 Ne.** 9:8–9. The devil will rage, pacify, and flatter, **2 Ne.** 28:20–23. That which is evil comes from the devil, **Omni** 1:25 (Alma 5:40; Moro. 7:12, 17). Beware lest contentions arise among you, and ye obey the evil spirit, **Mosiah** 2:32. If ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, the devil is your shepherd, **Alma** 5:38–39. The devil will not support his children, **Alma** 30:60. Pray continually that ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, **Alma** 34:39 (3 Ne. 18:15, 18). Build your foundation upon the Redeemer that the devil’s mighty storm shall have no power over you, **Hel.** 5:12. The devil is the author of all sin, **Hel.** 6:26–31.

The devil sought to lay a cunning plan, **D&C** 10:12. It must needs be that the devil tempt the children of men, or they could not be agents, **D&C** 29:39. Adam became subject to the will of the devil because he yielded unto temptation, **D&C** 29:40. The sons of perdition will reign with the devil and his angels in eternity, **D&C** 76:32–33, 44. The devil will be bound for a thousand years, **D&C** 88:110 (Rev. 20:2). The wicked one takes away light and truth, **D&C** 93:39.

Diligence

Satan kept not his first estate, **Abr.** 3:28.

The church of the devil: Every evil and worldly organization on earth that perverts the pure and perfect gospel and fights against the Lamb of God.

The devil founded the great and abominable church, **1 Ne.** 13:6 (1 Ne. 14:9). There are only two churches, one of the Lamb of God and one of the devil, **1 Ne.** 14:10 (Alma 5:39).

Contend against no church, save it be the church of the devil, **D&C** 18:20. The great and abominable church shall be cast down, **D&C** 29:21.

Diligence

Consistent, valiant effort, especially in serving the Lord and obeying His word.

Hearken diligently unto me, **Isa.** 55:2.

God is a rewarder of them that diligently seek him, **Heb.** 11:6. Giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue, **2 Pet.** 1:5.

Teach the word of God with all diligence, **Jacob** 1:19. They had searched the scriptures diligently, **Alma** 17:2. They were willing with all diligence to keep the commandments, **3 Ne.** 6:14. Let us labor diligently, **Moro.** 9:6.

Be anxiously engaged in a good cause, **D&C** 58:27. Neither be idle but labor with your might, **D&C** 75:3. Give diligent heed to the words of eternal life, **D&C** 84:43. Let every man learn his duty, and to act in all diligence, **D&C** 107:99.

Discernment, Gift of. *See also* Gifts of the Spirit

To understand or know something through the power of the Spirit. The gift of discernment is one of the gifts of the Spirit. It includes perceiving the true character of people and the source and meaning of spiritual manifestations.

Man looks on the outward appearance, but the Lord looks on the heart,

1 Sam. 16:7. Wo unto them that call evil good, **Isa.** 5:20 (2 Ne. 15:20).

The things of God are spiritually discerned, **1 Cor.** 2:14. To some people is given the gift of discerning of spirits, **1 Cor.** 12:10.

Ammon could discern his thoughts, **Alma** 18:18. The small voice did pierce them that did hear, **3 Ne.** 11:3.

That ye may not be deceived, seek the best gifts, **D&C** 46:8, 23. Church leaders are given power to discern the gifts of the Spirit, **D&C** 46:27. That body which is filled with light comprehendeth all things, **D&C** 88:67.

Moses beheld the earth, discerning it by the Spirit of God, **Moses** 1:27.

Disciple. *See also* Apostle; Christians; Conversion, Convert; Yoke

A follower of Jesus Christ who lives according to Christ's teachings (**D&C** 41:5). *Disciple* is used to describe the Twelve Apostles whom Christ called during His mortal ministry (Matt. 10:1–4). *Disciple* is also used to describe the twelve men whom Jesus chose to lead His Church among the Nephites and Lamanites (3 Ne. 19:4).

Seal the law among my disciples, **Isa.** 8:16.

If ye continue in my word, then are ye my disciples, **John** 8:31.

Mormon was a disciple of Jesus Christ, **3 Ne.** 5:12–13. Ye are my disciples, **3 Ne.** 15:12. Three disciples will not taste of death, **3 Ne.** 28:4–10.

The voice of warning shall be by the mouths of my disciples, **D&C** 1:4. My disciples shall stand in holy places, **D&C** 45:32. Those who do not remember the poor, the needy, the sick and the afflicted are not my disciples, **D&C** 52:40. Whoso is not willing to lay down his life is not my disciple, **D&C** 103:27–28.

Dispensation. *See also* Gospel; Keys of the Priesthood; Priesthood; Restoration of the Gospel

A gospel dispensation is a period of

time in which the Lord has at least one authorized servant on the earth who bears the keys of the holy priesthood.

Adam, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus Christ, Joseph Smith, and others have each started a new gospel dispensation. When the Lord organizes a dispensation, the gospel is revealed anew so that the people of that dispensation do not have to depend on past dispensations for knowledge of the plan of salvation. The dispensation begun by Joseph Smith is known as the “dispensation of the fulness of times.”

The God of heaven set up a kingdom, **Dan. 2:44** (D&C 65).

In the last days I will pour out my Spirit upon all flesh, **Acts 2:17** (Joel 2:28). The heaven must receive Christ until the times of restitution of all things, **Acts 3:21**. In the dispensation of the fulness of times, God will gather together all things in Christ, **Eph. 1:10**.

I will establish my church among them, **3 Ne. 21:22**.

The Lord committed the keys of his kingdom and a dispensation of the gospel for the last times, **D&C 27:13**. The keys of this dispensation are committed into your hands, **D&C 110:12–16**. All keys of past dispensations have been restored in the dispensation of the fulness of times, **D&C 128:18–21**.

Dispersion. *See* Israel—The scattering of Israel

Divorce. *See also* Marriage, Marry

The termination of a marriage through the power of civil or ecclesiastical law. According to the New Testament, God permitted divorce under some conditions because of the hardness of the people’s hearts; however, as Jesus explained, “from the beginning it was not so” (Matt. 19:3–12). The scriptures counsel against divorce generally and advise husbands and wives to love each other in righteousness (1 Cor. 7:10–12; D&C 42:22).

Do. *See* Obedience, Obedient, Obey

Doctrine and Covenants. *See also* Book of Commandments; Canon; Scriptures; Smith, Joseph, Jr.

A collection of latter-day divine revelations and inspired declarations. The Lord gave these to Joseph Smith and several of his successors for the establishment and regulation of the kingdom of God on the earth in the last days. The Doctrine and Covenants is one of the standard works of scripture in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, along with the Bible, the Book of Mormon, and the Pearl of Great Price. The Doctrine and Covenants is unique, however, because it is not a translation of ancient documents; the Lord gave these revelations to His chosen prophets in this modern day in order to restore His kingdom. In the revelations one hears the tender but firm voice of the Lord Jesus Christ (D&C 18:35–36).

Joseph Smith’s history says that the Doctrine and Covenants is the foundation of the Church in the last days and a benefit to the world (D&C 70 heading). The revelations in it initiate the work of preparing the way for the Lord’s Second Coming, in fulfillment of all the words spoken by the prophets since the world began.

Doctrine of Christ. *See also* Gospel; Plan of Redemption

The principles and teachings of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

My doctrine shall drop as the rain, **Deut. 32:2**. They that murmured shall learn doctrine, **Isa. 29:24**.

The people were astonished at his doctrine, **Matt. 7:28**. My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me, **John 7:16**. All scripture is profitable for doctrine, **2 Tim. 3:16**.

This is the doctrine of Christ, and the only and true doctrine of the Father, **2 Ne. 31:21** (2 Ne. 32:6). There shall be no disputations among you concerning

Dove, Sign of the

the points of my doctrine, **3 Ne.** 11:28, 32, 35, 39–40.

Satan stirs up the hearts of the people to contention concerning the points of my doctrine, **D&C** 10:62–63, 67. Teach children the doctrine of repentance, faith in Christ, baptism, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, **D&C** 68:25. Teach one another the doctrine of the kingdom, **D&C** 88:77–78. The doctrine of the priesthood shall distil upon thy soul, **D&C** 121:45.

Dove, Sign of the. *See also* Holy Ghost

A prearranged sign by which John the Baptist would recognize the Messiah (John 1:32–34). Joseph Smith taught that the sign of the dove was instituted before the creation of the world as a witness for the Holy Ghost; therefore, the devil cannot come in the sign of a dove.

The Spirit of God descended like a dove, **Matt.** 3:16.

After Jesus was baptized, the Holy Ghost came down in the form of a dove, **1 Ne.** 11:27.

I, John, bear record, and lo, the heavens were opened, and the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove, **D&C** 93:15.

Dream. *See also* Revelation

One way that God reveals His will to men and women on earth. Not all dreams are revelations, however. Inspired dreams are the fruit of faith.

He dreamed, and behold a ladder reached to heaven, **Gen.** 28:12. Joseph dreamed a dream, **Gen.** 37:5. The Lord will speak to him in a dream, **Num.** 12:6. Nebuchadnezzar dreamed dreams, **Dan.** 2:1–3. Old men shall dream dreams, **Joel** 2:28 (Acts 2:17).

The angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, **Matt.** 1:20 (Matt. 2:19).

Lehi wrote many things he had seen in dreams, **1 Ne.** 1:16. Lehi dreamed a dream, **1 Ne.** 8.

Drink, Drunk. *See* Word of Wisdom

Duty. *See also* Obedience, Obedient, Obey

In the scriptures, a task, assignment, or responsibility, often given by the Lord or His servants.

Keep his commandments: for this is the whole duty of man, **Eccl.** 12:13. What doth the Lord require of thee, but to do justly, **Micah** 6:8.

We ought to obey God rather than men, **Acts** 5:29.

They were smitten with afflictions to stir them up in remembrance of their duty, **Mosiah** 1:17.

The duties of the elders, priests, teachers, and deacons are described, **D&C** 20:38–67. Priesthood holders are to attend to all family duties, **D&C** 20:47, 51. The duties of members after baptism are described, **D&C** 20:68–69. My elders should wait for a little season that my people may know more perfectly concerning their duty, **D&C** 105:9–10. Let every man learn his duty, **D&C** 107:99–100.

Ear. *See also* Hearken

In the scriptures, the ear is often used as a symbol of a person's ability to hear and understand the things of God.

They have ears, but they hear not, **Ps.** 115:6. The Lord waketh mine ear to hear, **Isa.** 50:4–5 (2 Ne. 7:4–5).

He that hath ears to hear, let him hear, **Matt.** 11:15. Their ears are dull of hearing, **Matt.** 13:15 (Moses 6:27). Eye hath not seen nor ear heard the things which God hath prepared for them that love him, **1 Cor.** 2:9 (D&C 76:10).

The devil whispers in their ears, **2 Ne.** 28:22. Open your ears that ye may hear, **Mosiah** 2:9 (3 Ne. 11:5). I was called many times, and I would not hear, **Alma** 10:6. Give ear to my words, **Alma** 36:1 (Alma 38:1; D&C 58:1).

There is no ear that shall not hear, **D&C** 1:2. Ears are opened through humility and prayer, **D&C** 136:32.

Earth. *See also* Create, Creation; World

The planet on which we live, created by God through Jesus Christ to be used by man during his mortal probation. Its final destiny is to become glorified and exalted (D&C 77:1–2; 130:8–9). The earth will become an eternal inheritance of those who have lived worthy of a celestial glory (D&C 88:14–26). They will enjoy the presence of the Father and the Son (D&C 76:62).

Created for man: God gave man dominion over the earth, **Gen.** 1:28 (Moses 2:28). The earth is the Lord's, **Ex.** 9:29 (Ps. 24:1). The Lord has given the earth to the children of men, **Ps.** 115:16. I have made the earth and created man upon it, **Isa.** 45:12.

By the power of his word man came upon the earth, **Jacob** 4:9.

The earth shall be given to those who have taken the Holy Spirit for their guide, **D&C** 45:56–58 (D&C 103:7). Those who have obeyed the gospel are rewarded with the good things of the earth, **D&C** 59:3. The poor and the meek of the earth shall inherit it, **D&C** 88:17 (Matt. 5:5; 3 Ne. 12:5).

We will make an earth, and we will prove them, **Abr.** 3:24–25.

A living entity: The earth abideth forever, **Eccl.** 1:4.

The sea of glass is the earth in its sanctified, immortal, and eternal state, **D&C** 77:1. The earth must be sanctified and prepared for the celestial glory, **D&C** 88:18–19.

The earth mourned aloud, **Moses** 7:48.

Division of the earth: Let the waters be gathered together unto one place, **Gen.** 1:9. In the days of Peleg was the earth divided, **Gen.** 10:25.

After the waters had receded, it became a choice land, **Ether** 13:2.

The earth shall be like it was before it was divided, **D&C** 133:24.

Cleansing of the earth: Rain fell upon the earth for forty days, **Gen.** 7:4.

The earth is reserved unto fire against the day of judgment, **2 Pet.** 3:7.

After today cometh the burning, **D&C** 64:24.

The earth desires to be cleansed from filthiness, **Moses** 7:48.

Final state of the earth: The earth will be wrapt together as a scroll and pass away, **3 Ne.** 26:3 (D&C 29:23). There shall be a new heaven and a new earth, **Ether** 13:9 (D&C 29:23).

The sea of glass is the earth in its sanctified, immortal, and eternal state, **D&C** 77:1. The earth must be sanctified and prepared for the celestial glory, **D&C** 88:18–19. This earth will be made like unto crystal and will be a Urim and Thummim, **D&C** 130:8–9.

For a thousand years the earth shall rest, **Moses** 7:64. The earth will be renewed, **A of F** 1:10.

Easter. *See* Jesus Christ; Resurrection

Ecclesiastes

A book in the Old Testament containing reflections on some of the deepest problems of life.

The book's author, the Preacher, writes much of the book from the point of view of those who are without gospel understanding. He writes according to the feelings of the people of the world—that is, those “under the sun” (**Eccl.** 1:9). Much of the book seems negative and pessimistic (**Eccl.** 9:5, 10). This is not how the Lord would have us perceive life but rather how the Preacher has observed that things appear to unenlightened men on earth. The most spiritual part of the book is in chapters 11 and 12, where the writer concludes that the only thing of lasting value is obedience to God's commandments.

Eden. *See also* Adam; Eve

The home of our first parents, Adam and Eve (**Gen.** 2:8–3:24; 4:16; 2 Ne. 2:19–25; **Moses** 3–4; **Abr.** 5), designated as a garden, eastward in Eden. Adam and

Egypt

Eve were sent out of Eden after eating of the forbidden fruit and becoming mortal (Moses 4:29). Latter-day revelation confirms the biblical account of the Garden of Eden. It adds the important information that the garden was located on what is now the North American continent.

Egypt

A country in the northeastern corner of Africa. Much of Egypt is barren and desolate. Most of the inhabitants live in the Nile Valley, which stretches some 550 miles (890 kilometers).

Ancient Egypt was rich and prosperous. Great public works were built, including canals for irrigation; strong cities for defense; and royal monuments, especially pyramid tombs and temples, which are still among the wonders of the world. For a time, the Egyptian government was an imitation of the patriarchal order of the priesthood (Abr. 1:21–27).

Abraham and Joseph were led to Egypt to save their families from famine, **Gen.** 12:10 (Gen. 37:28). Joseph was sold into Egypt, **Gen.** 45:4–5 (1 Ne. 5:14–15). Jacob was led to Egypt, **Gen.** 46:1–7. Moses led the children of Israel out of Egypt, **Ex.** 3:7–10; 13:14 (Heb. 11:27; 1 Ne. 17:40; Moses 1:25–26). Egypt symbolized evil, **Ezek.** 29:14–15 (Hosea 9:3–7; Abr. 1:6, 8, 11–12, 23).

An angel told Joseph to flee with Mary and Jesus into Egypt, **Matt.** 2:13 (Hosea 11:1).

Egyptus

The name of both the wife and a daughter of Ham, the son of Noah. In Chaldean, the name signifies “Egypt,” or “that which is forbidden” (Abr. 1:23–25).

Elder. *See also* Melchizedek Priesthood; Priesthood

The term *elder* is used in various ways in the Bible. In the Old Testament it often refers to the older men

in a tribe, who were usually entrusted with governmental affairs (Gen. 50:7; Josh. 20:4; Ruth 4:2; Matt. 15:2). Their age and experience made their counsel valuable. Their position was not necessarily a priesthood calling.

There were also ordained elders in the Melchizedek Priesthood in Old Testament times (Ex. 24:9–11). In the New Testament, elders are mentioned as a priesthood office in the Church (James 5:14–15). Among the Nephites there were also ordained elders in the priesthood (Alma 4:7, 16; Moro. 3:1). In this dispensation, Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery were the first elders to be ordained (D&C 20:2–3).

Elder is now the title given to all holders of the Melchizedek Priesthood. For example, male missionaries are addressed as elders. Also, an Apostle is an elder, and it is proper to speak of members of the Quorum of the Twelve or Quorums of the Seventy by this title (D&C 20:38; 1 Pet. 5:1). The duties of ordained elders in the Church today have been given in latter-day revelation (D&C 20:38–45; 42:44; 46:2; 107:12).

Moses wrote unto all the elders of Israel, **Deut.** 31:9.

Barnabas sent relief to the elders of the church, **Acts** 11:30. Elders were ordained in every church, **Acts** 14:23 (Titus 1:5). Call for the elders to pray over the sick, **James** 5:14.

Elders were ordained by the laying on of hands, **Alma** 6:1.

Elders are to bless children, **D&C** 20:70. Elders are to conduct meetings by the Holy Spirit, **D&C** 46:2. Elders are to give an account of their stewardship, **D&C** 72:5. Elders are to preach the gospel to the nations, **D&C** 133:8.

Elect

The elect are those who love God with all their hearts and live lives that are pleasing to Him. Those who live such lives of discipleship will one day be

selected by the Lord to be among His chosen children.

If it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect, **Matt.** 24:24. John rejoiced because the children of the elect lady were true and faithful, **2 Jn.** 1.

Thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou art an elect lady, **D&C** 25:3. Mine elect hear my voice and harden not their hearts, **D&C** 29:7. Even so will I gather mine elect from the four quarters of the earth, **D&C** 33:6. Scriptures shall be given for the salvation of mine own elect, **D&C** 35:20–21. Those who magnify priesthood callings become the elect of God, **D&C** 84:33–34.

For the elect's sake, the days of tribulation shall be shortened, **JS—M** 1:20.

Election. *See also* Calling and Election

Based on premortal worthiness, God chose those who would be the seed of Abraham and the house of Israel and become the covenant people (Deut. 32:7–9; Abr. 2:9–11). These people are given special blessings and duties so that they can bless all the nations of the world (Rom. 11:5–7; 1 Pet. 1:2; Alma 13:1–5; **D&C** 84:99). However, even these chosen ones must be called and elected in this life in order to gain salvation.

Eli. *See also* Samuel, Old Testament Prophet

A high priest and judge in the Old Testament when the Lord called Samuel to be a prophet (1 Sam. 3). The Lord rebuked him for tolerating the wickedness of his sons (1 Sam. 2:22–36; 3:13).

Elias. *See also* Elijah

There are several uses of the name or title *Elias* in the scriptures:

Elijah: Elias is the New Testament (Greek) form of Elijah (Hebrew), as in **Matt.** 17:3–4, **Luke** 4:25–26, and **James** 5:17. In these instances, Elias was the ancient prophet Elijah whose ministry is recorded in 1 and 2 Kings.

Forerunner: Elias is also a title for one

who is a forerunner. For example, John the Baptist was an Elias because he was sent to prepare the way for Jesus (**Matt.** 17:12–13).

Restorer: The title Elias has also been applied to others who had specific missions to fulfill, such as John the Revelator (**D&C** 77:14) and Gabriel (**Luke** 1:11–20; **D&C** 27:6–7; 110:12).

A man in Abraham's dispensation: A prophet called Esaias or Elias who apparently lived in the days of Abraham (**D&C** 84:11–13; 110:12).

Elijah. *See also* Elias; Salvation; Seal, Sealing

An Old Testament prophet who returned in the latter days to confer the keys of the sealing power on Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery. In his day, Elijah ministered in the Northern Kingdom of Israel (1 Kgs. 17–22; 2 Kgs. 1–2). He had great faith in the Lord and is noted for many miracles. At his request, God prevented rain for 3½ years. He raised a boy from the dead and called down fire from heaven (1 Kgs. 17–18). The Jewish people still wait for Elijah to return, as Malachi prophesied he would (Mal. 4:5). He remains an invited guest at Jewish Passover Feasts, where an open door and a vacant seat always await him.

The Prophet Joseph Smith said that Elijah held the sealing power of the Melchizedek Priesthood and was the last prophet to do so before the time of Jesus Christ. He appeared on the Mount of Transfiguration with Moses and conferred the keys of the priesthood on Peter, James, and John (**Matt.** 17:3). He appeared again, with Moses and others, on April 3, 1836, in the Kirtland Ohio Temple and conferred the same keys upon Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery (**D&C** 110:13–16). All of this was in preparation for the Second Coming of the Lord, as spoken of in Malachi 4:5–6.

The power of Elijah is the sealing power of the priesthood by which

things that are bound or loosed on earth are bound or loosed in heaven (D&C 128:8–18). Chosen servants of the Lord on earth today have this sealing power and perform the saving ordinances of the gospel for the living and the dead (D&C 128:8).

Sealed the heavens and was fed by ravens, **1 Kgs.** 17:1–7. Commanded the widow's barrel of meal and cruse of oil not to fail, **1 Kgs.** 17:8–16. Raised the widow's son from death, **1 Kgs.** 17:17–24. Defeated the priests of Baal, **1 Kgs.** 18:21–39. The still small voice spoke to him, **1 Kgs.** 19:11–12. Ascended to heaven in a chariot of fire, **2 Kgs.** 2:11. Malachi prophesied of his return in the latter days, **Mal.** 4:5–6 (3 Ne. 25:5).

Appeared in the Kirtland Ohio Temple in 1836, **D&C** 110:13–16.

Elisabeth. *See also* John the Baptist

In the New Testament, the wife of Zacharias, the mother of John the Baptist, and a kinswoman of Mary (Luke 1:5–60).

Elisha

An Old Testament prophet of the Northern Kingdom of Israel and a trusted adviser of several of that country's kings.

Elisha had a gentle and affectionate disposition, without that fiery zeal by which his master, Elijah, was distinguished. His notable miracles (2 Kgs. 2–5; 8) testify that he truly received Elijah's power when he succeeded Elijah as prophet (2 Kgs. 2:9–12). For example, he healed the waters of a bitter spring, divided the waters of the Jordan River, multiplied a widow's oil, raised a boy from the dead, cured a man of leprosy, caused an iron ax to float, and struck the Syrians with blindness (2 Kgs. 2–6). His ministry lasted more than fifty years during the reigns of Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Joash.

Received the mantle of Elijah, **2 Kgs.** 2:13. Multiplied the widow's oil, **2 Kgs.**

4:1–7. Raised the Shunammite woman's son from the dead, **2 Kgs.** 4:18–37. Healed Naaman, the Syrian, **2 Kgs.** 5:1–14. Blinded the Syrian soldiers, and his servant's eyes were opened, **2 Kgs.** 6:8–23.

Elohim. *See* Father in Heaven; God, Godhead

Emmanuel. *See* Immanuel

Endless. *See also* God, Godhead

One of the names of God, indicating His eternal nature (D&C 19:10–12; Moses 1:3; 7:35).

End of the World. *See* World—End of the world

Endowment. *See also* Temple, House of the Lord

In a general sense, a gift of power from God. Worthy members of the Church can receive a gift of power through ordinances in the temple that gives them the instruction and covenants of the Holy Priesthood that they need in order to attain exaltation. The endowment includes instruction about the plan of salvation.

There you shall be endowed with power from on high, **D&C** 38:32, 38 (Luke 24:49; D&C 43:16). Build a house, in the which house I design to endow those whom I have chosen, **D&C** 95:8. I have prepared a great endowment and blessing, **D&C** 105:12, 18, 33. Many shall rejoice because of the endowment with which my servants have been endowed, **D&C** 110:9. Glory, honor, and endowment are ordained by the ordinance of my holy house, **D&C** 124:39. Those called of the Father, as was Aaron, are endowed with keys of the priesthood, **D&C** 132:59.

Endure. *See also* Adversity; Patience; Tempt, Temptation

To remain firm in a commitment to be true to the commandments of God

despite temptation, opposition, and adversity.

He that endureth to the end shall be saved, **Matt.** 10:22 (Mark 13:13). They have no root and so endure but for a time, **Mark** 4:17. Charity endureth all things, **1 Cor.** 13:7. After Abraham had patiently endured, he obtained the promise, **Heb.** 6:15.

If they endure unto the end they shall be lifted up at the last day, **1 Ne.** 13:37. If ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved, **1 Ne.** 22:31 (Alma 5:13). If ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and endure to the end, ye shall have eternal life, **2 Ne.** 31:20 (3 Ne. 15:9; D&C 14:7). Whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, shall be saved, **3 Ne.** 27:6.

Whosoever endureth of my church to the end, him will I establish upon my rock, **D&C** 10:69. He that endureth in faith shall overcome the world, **D&C** 63:20, 47. All thrones and dominions shall be set forth upon all who have endured valiantly for the gospel of Jesus Christ, **D&C** 121:29.

Enmity. See also Envy; Love; Vengeance

In the scriptures, antagonism, hostility, and hate.

I will put enmity between thee and the woman, **Gen.** 3:15 (Moses 4:21).

The carnal mind is enmity against God, **Rom.** 8:7. The friendship of the world is enmity with God, **James** 4:4.

In that day enmity shall cease from before my face, **D&C** 101:26.

Enoch. See also Zion

A prophet who led the people of the city of Zion. His ministry is discussed in both the Old Testament and the Pearl of Great Price. He was the seventh patriarch after Adam. He was the son of Jared and the father of Methuselah (**Gen.** 5:18–24; **Luke** 3:37).

Enoch was a great person and had

a more significant ministry than the Bible's brief account of him indicates. The Bible notes that he was translated (**Heb.** 11:5) but gives no details of his ministry. **Jude** 1:14 contains a quotation of a prophecy he made. Latter-day revelation explains much more of Enoch, specifically of his preaching, his city called Zion, his visions, and his prophecies (**D&C** 107:48–57; **Moses** 6–7). Zion was taken to heaven because of the righteousness of those who lived in it (**Moses** 7:69).

God revealed himself to Enoch, **Moses** 6:26–37. Enoch taught the gospel, **Moses** 6:37–68. Enoch taught the people and established Zion, **Moses** 7:1–21. Enoch saw all things, even unto the end of the world, **Moses** 7:23–68.

Enos, Son of Jacob

A Nephite prophet and record keeper in the Book of Mormon who prayed for and received a remission of his sins through his faith in Christ (**Enos** 1:1–8). The Lord covenanted with Enos to bring forth the Book of Mormon to the Lamanites (**Enos** 1:15–17).

The book of Enos: A book in the Book of Mormon that tells of Enos's prayer to the Lord for personal forgiveness, for his people, and for others. The Lord promised him that the Book of Mormon would be preserved and made available to the Lamanites in a future day. Though the book contains but one chapter, it records the powerful story of a man who sought his God in prayer, lived obedient to God's commands, and before his death rejoiced in his knowledge of the Redeemer.

Ensign

In the scriptures, a flag or standard around which people gather in a unity of purpose or identity. In ancient times an ensign served as a rallying point for soldiers in battle. The Book of Mormon and the Church of Jesus Christ are

Envy

symbolic ensigns to all nations of the earth.

He will lift up an ensign to the nations, **Isa.** 5:26 (2 Ne. 15:26). A root of Jesse shall stand for an ensign, **Isa.** 11:10 (2 Ne. 21:10; D&C 113:6).

Lift up an ensign of peace, **D&C** 105:39.

Envy. *See also* Covet; Jealous, Jealousy

According to the scriptures, to desire something that belongs to another is wrong.

The patriarchs, moved with envy, sold Joseph into Egypt, **Acts** 7:9. Charity envieth not, **1 Cor.** 13:4 (Moro. 7:45). Envy comes of pride, **1 Tim.** 6:4. Where envy is, there is confusion and every evil work, **James** 3:16.

The Lord commanded men that they should not envy, **2 Ne.** 26:32. There was no envy among the people of Nephi, **4 Ne.** 1:15–18.

The envy and wrath of man have been my common lot all the days of my life, **D&C** 127:2.

Ephesians, Epistle to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles

In the New Testament, an epistle written by the Apostle Paul to the Saints in Ephesus. The epistle is of great importance, for it contains Paul's teachings about the Church of Christ.

Chapter 1 contains the usual salutation. Chapters 2–3 explain the change that occurs in people when they become members of the Church—they become fellow citizens with the Saints, with Gentiles and Jews united in one Church. Chapters 4–6 explain the roles of Apostles and prophets, the need for unity, and the need to put on the whole armor of God.

Ephraim. *See also* Book of Mormon; Israel; Joseph, Son of Jacob; Manasseh

In the Old Testament, the second son of Joseph and Asenath (Gen. 41:50–52;

46:20). Contrary to the traditional manner, Ephraim received the birthright blessing instead of Manasseh, who was the elder son (Gen. 48:17–20). Ephraim became the father of the tribe of Ephraim.

The tribe of Ephraim: Ephraim was given the birthright in Israel (1 Chr. 5:1–2; Jer. 31:9). In the last days their privilege and responsibility is to bear the priesthood, take the message of the restored gospel to the world, and raise an ensign to gather scattered Israel (Isa. 11:12–13; 2 Ne. 21:12–13). The children of Ephraim will crown with glory those from the north countries who return in the last days (D&C 133:26–34).

The stick of Ephraim or Joseph: A record of one group from the tribe of Ephraim that was led from Jerusalem to America about 600 B.C. This group's record is called the stick of Ephraim or Joseph, or the Book of Mormon. It and the stick of Judah (the Bible) form a unified testimony of the Lord Jesus Christ, His Resurrection, and His divine work among these two segments of the house of Israel.

A branch of Ephraim will be broken off and will write another testament of Christ, **JST, Gen.** 50:24–26, 30–31. The stick of Judah and the stick of Joseph will become one, **Ezek.** 37:15–19.

The writings of Judah and of Joseph shall grow together, **2 Ne.** 3:12. The Lord speaks to many nations, **2 Ne.** 29.

The keys of the record of the stick of Ephraim were committed to Moroni, **D&C** 27:5.

Esaias

The New Testament (Greek) form of the name Isaiah (Luke 4:17). Esaias was also a prophet who lived in the days of Abraham (D&C 76:100; 84:13).

Esau. *See also* Isaac; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, Isaac and Rebekah's elder son and Jacob's twin brother. The two brothers were

rivals from their birth (Gen. 25:19–26). Esau's descendants, the Edomites, and Jacob's descendants, the Israelites, became rival nations (Gen. 25:23).

Esau sold his birthright to Jacob, **Gen.** 25:33 (Heb. 12:16–17). Esau married Hittite wives to the sorrow of his parents, **Gen.** 26:34–35. Jacob and Esau were reconciled, **Gen.** 33.

Esteem. *See also* Honor; Reverence

To regard someone or something as having worth and value, especially in a gospel setting.

He was despised, and we esteemed him not, **Isa.** 53:3–4.

That which is highly esteemed among men is abomination in the sight of God, **Luke** 16:15. Let each esteem others better than themselves, **Philip.** 2:3.

The Lord esteems all flesh in one, **1 Ne.** 17:35. Every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, **Mosiah** 27:4 (D&C 38:24–25).

In the day of their peace they esteemed lightly my counsel, **D&C** 101:8.

Esther

A woman of great faith and the main character in the book of Esther.

The book of Esther: A book in the Old Testament that contains the story of Queen Esther's great courage in saving her people from destruction.

Chapters 1–2 tell how Esther, a Jewish woman and the adopted daughter of a Jewish man named Mordecai, was chosen as queen of Persia because of her beauty. Chapter 3 explains that Haman, chief man at the king's court, hated Mordecai and obtained a decree to put all Jewish people to death. Chapters 4–10 tell how Esther, at great personal risk, revealed her own nationality to the king and obtained a reversal of the decree.

Eternal Father. *See* Father in Heaven; God, Godhead

Eternal Life. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Celestial Glory; Crown; Exaltation; Life

To live forever as families in God's presence (D&C 132:19–20, 24, 55). Eternal life is God's greatest gift to man.

Thou hast the words of eternal life, **John** 6:68. This is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, **John** 17:3 (D&C 132:24). Fight the good fight of faith, lay hold on eternal life, **1 Tim.** 6:12.

People are free to choose liberty and eternal life, **2 Ne.** 2:27 (Hel. 14:31). To be spiritually minded is life eternal, **2 Ne.** 9:39. Then are ye in the narrow path that leads to eternal life, **2 Ne.** 31:17–20. To believe in Christ and endure to the end is life eternal, **2 Ne.** 33:4 (3 Ne. 15:9).

He that hath eternal life is rich, **D&C** 6:7 (D&C 11:7). Eternal life is the greatest of all the gifts of God, **D&C** 14:7 (Rom. 6:23). The righteous will receive peace in this world, and eternal life in the world to come, **D&C** 59:23. Those who endure to the end shall have a crown of eternal life, **D&C** 66:12 (D&C 75:5). All who die without the gospel who would have received it had they lived are heirs of the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 137:7–9.

God's work and glory is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man, **Moses** 1:39. God gives eternal life to the obedient, **Moses** 5:11.

Ether. *See also* Jaredites

The last Jaredite prophet in the Book of Mormon (Ether 12:1–2).

The book of Ether: A book in the Book of Mormon that contains portions of the record of the Jaredites. The Jaredites were a group of people who lived in the western hemisphere many centuries before the people of Lehi. The book of Ether was taken from twenty-four plates found by the people of Limhi (Mosiah 8:8–9).

Chapters 1–2 tell how the Jaredites left their home at the time of the Tower

Evangelist

of Babel and began their journey to what is now known as the American continent. Chapters 3–6 explain that the brother of Jared saw the premortal Savior and that the Jaredites traveled in eight barges. Chapters 7–11 continue the history of wickedness that dominated much of Jaredite history. Moroni, who edited Ether's record, wrote in chapters 12–13 of wonders done by faith and of Christ and a New Jerusalem to come. Chapters 14–15 tell how the Jaredites became a mighty nation but were destroyed by civil war due to wickedness.

Evangelist. *See also* Patriarch, Patriarchal; Patriarchal Blessings

One who bears or proclaims the good news of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Joseph Smith taught that an evangelist was a patriarch. Patriarchs are called and ordained under the direction of the Twelve Apostles to give special blessings called patriarchal blessings.

The Lord calls some men to be Apostles, and some prophets, and some evangelists, **Eph. 4:11**. Do the work of an evangelist, **2 Tim. 4:5**.

We believe in Apostles, prophets, pastors, teachers, evangelists, **A of F 1:6**.

Eve. *See also* Adam; Eden; Fall of Adam and Eve

The first woman to live on this earth (Gen. 2:21–25; 3:20). She was Adam's wife. In Hebrew the name means "life." She was so named because she was the "mother of all living" (Moses 4:26). She and Adam, the first man, will share eternal glory for their role in making possible the eternal progress of all mankind.

Eve was tempted and partook of the forbidden fruit, **Gen. 3** (2 Ne. 2:15–20; Moses 4).

President Joseph F. Smith saw Eve in his vision of the spirit world, **D&C 138:39**.

Eve recognized the necessity of

the Fall and the joys of redemption, **Moses 5:11–12**.

Everlasting Covenant. *See* Covenant; New and Everlasting Covenant

Everlasting Life. *See* Eternal Life

Evil Speaking. *See also* Contention; Gossip; Lying; Rumor

Saying things that are wrong, hurtful, and wicked. Often in scripture such speaking is directed at a person with the specific intent to cause pain.

Keep thy tongue from evil, **Ps. 34:13** (1 Pet. 3:10). An ungodly man diggeth up evil, **Prov. 16:27**.

Blessed are ye, when men shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, **Matt. 5:11** (3 Ne. 12:11). Out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, **Matt. 15:19** (Mark 7:21). Thou shalt not speak evil of the ruler, **Acts 23:5**. Let all evil speaking be put away from you, **Eph. 4:31**. Speak not evil one of another, **James 4:11**.

See that there is no backbiting, nor evil speaking, **D&C 20:54**.

Evil Spirits. *See* Spirit—Evil spirits

Exaltation. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Celestial Glory; Crown; Eternal Life; Man, Men—Man, potential to become like Heavenly Father

The highest state of happiness and glory in the celestial kingdom.

In thy presence is fulness of joy, **Ps. 16:11**.

They are gods, even the sons of God—wherefore, all things are theirs, **D&C 76:58–59**. The Saints shall receive their inheritance and be made equal with him, **D&C 88:107**. These angels did not abide my law; therefore, they remain separately and singly, without exaltation, **D&C 132:17**. Men and women must marry according to God's law in order to gain exaltation, **D&C 132:19–20**. Strait is the gate and narrow the way that leadeth unto the exaltation, **D&C 132:22–23**. Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob

have entered into their exaltation, **D&C** 132:29, 37. I seal upon you your exaltation, **D&C** 132:49.

Excommunication. *See also* Apostasy; Rebellion

Excommunication is the most severe Church disciplinary action. A person who is excommunicated is no longer a member of the Church. Church authorities excommunicate a person from the Church only when he has chosen to live in opposition to the Lord's commandments and thus has disqualified himself for further membership in the Church.

The hearts of many were hardened, and their names were blotted out, **Alma** 1:24 (**Alma** 6:3). If he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, **3 Ne.** 18:31 (**Mosiah** 26).

Adulterers who do not repent shall be cast out, **D&C** 42:24. He that sinneth and repenteth not shall be cast out, **D&C** 42:28. Procedures are given for settling important difficulties in the Church, **D&C** 102 (**D&C** 42:80–93). The bishop is appointed to be a judge in Israel, **D&C** 107:72. Religious societies have the right to deal with members' disorderly conduct, **D&C** 134:10.

Exodus. *See also* Pentateuch

A book written by Moses in the Old Testament that describes the departure of the Israelites out of Egypt. The early history of Israel as recorded in Exodus can be divided into three parts: (1) the people's slavery to Egypt, (2) their departure from Egypt under Moses' leadership, and (3) their dedication to God's service in their religious life and their political life.

The first portion, Exodus 1:1–15:21, explains the oppression of Israel in Egypt; the early history and call of Moses; the Exodus and the institution of the Passover; and the march to the Red Sea, the destruction of Pharaoh's army, and Moses' song of victory.

The second portion, Exodus 15:22–

18:27, tells of Israel's redemption and the events on the journey from the Red Sea to Sinai; the bitter waters of Marah, the giving of quails and manna, the observance of the Sabbath, the miraculous gift of water at Rephidim, and the battle there with the Amalekites; the arrival of Jethro in the camp and his advice about the civil government of the people.

The third portion, chapters 19–40, deals with Israel's consecration to God's service during the solemn events at Sinai. The Lord set the people apart as a kingdom of priests and a holy nation; He gave the Ten Commandments; and He gave instructions about the tabernacle, its furniture, and worship therein. Then follows the account of the people's sin in worshipping a golden calf, and finally the account of the construction of the tabernacle and provision for its services.

Eye, Eyes

In the scriptures, the eye is often used as a symbol of a person's ability to receive the light of God. Symbolically, a person's eye also shows spiritual condition and an understanding of the things of God.

The commandment of the Lord is pure, enlightening the eyes, **Ps.** 19:8. The foolish have eyes and see not, **Jer.** 5:21 (**Mark** 8:18).

The light of the body is the eye, **Matt.** 6:22 (**Luke** 11:34; **3 Ne.** 13:22; **D&C** 88:67). Blessed are your eyes for they see, **Matt.** 13:16. The eyes of your understanding will be enlightened, **Eph.** 1:17–18.

Wo unto the wise in their own eyes, **2 Ne.** 15:21 (**Isa.** 5:21). They began to fast and to pray that the eyes of the people might be opened, **Mosiah** 27:22. Satan did blind their eyes, **3 Ne.** 2:2. None can have power to bring the Book of Mormon forth except with an eye single to God's glory, **Morm.** 8:15.

By the power of the Spirit our eyes were opened and our understandings enlightened, **D&C** 76:12. The light is

through him who enlighteneth your eyes, **D&C 88:11**. If your eye be single to my glory, your whole bodies shall be filled with light, **D&C 88:67**.

Ezekiel

A prophet who wrote the book of Ezekiel in the Old Testament. He was a priest of the family of Zadok and one of the Jewish captives carried away by Nebuchadnezzar. He settled with the Jewish exiles in Babylon and prophesied during a period of twenty-two years, from 592 to 570 B.C.

The book of Ezekiel: The book of Ezekiel can be separated into four divisions. Chapters 1–3 tell about a vision of God and Ezekiel's call to serve; chapters 4–24 speak of judgments on Jerusalem and why they were given; chapters 25–32 proclaim judgments on the nations; and chapters 33–48 record visions of latter-day Israel.

Ezra

An Old Testament priest and scribe who brought some of the Jews back to Jerusalem from Babylonian captivity (Ezra 7–10; Neh. 8; 12). In 458 B.C. he obtained permission from Artaxerxes, king of Persia, to take to Jerusalem any Jewish exiles who cared to go (Ezra 7:12–26).

Before Ezra's time, the priests had almost total control over reading the collection of written scriptures called the "law." Ezra helped make the scriptures available to every Jew. The open reading of "the book of the law" eventually became the center of Jewish national life. Perhaps Ezra's greatest teaching came from his own example of preparing his heart to seek the Lord's law, to obey it, and to teach it to others (Ezra 7:10).

The book of Ezra: Chapters 1–6 describe events that happened from sixty to eighty years before Ezra arrived in Jerusalem—the decree of Cyrus in 537 B.C. and the return of the Jews under Zerubbabel. Chapters 7–10 show how Ezra

went to Jerusalem. He, with his company, fasted and prayed for protection. At Jerusalem they found many Jewish people who had gone to Jerusalem earlier under Zerubbabel and had married women out of the covenant and thus defiled themselves. Ezra prayed for them and placed them under covenant to divorce those wives. The later history of Ezra is found in the book of Nehemiah.

Faith. *See also* Belief, Believe; Hope; Jesus Christ; Trust

Confidence in something or someone. As most often used in the scriptures, faith is confidence and trust in Jesus Christ that lead a person to obey Him. Faith must be centered in Jesus Christ in order for it to lead a person to salvation. Latter-day Saints also have faith in God the Father, the Holy Ghost, priesthood power, and other important aspects of the restored gospel.

Faith includes a hope for things which are not seen, but which are true (Heb. 11:1; Alma 32:21; Ether 12:6). Faith is kindled by hearing the gospel taught by authorized administrators sent by God (Rom. 10:14–17). Miracles do not produce faith, but strong faith is developed by obedience to the gospel of Jesus Christ. In other words, faith comes by righteousness (Alma 32:40–43; Ether 12:4, 6, 12; D&C 63:9–12).

True faith brings miracles, visions, dreams, healings, and all the gifts of God that He gives to His Saints. By faith one obtains a remission of sins and eventually is able to dwell in God's presence. A lack of faith leads one to despair, which comes because of iniquity (Moro. 10:22).

The just shall live by faith, **Hab. 2:4**.

Thy faith hath made thee whole, **Matt. 9:22** (Mark 5:34; Luke 7:50). According to your faith be it unto you, **Matt. 9:29**. If ye have faith as a grain of mustard seed, nothing shall be impossible unto you,

Matt. 17:20 (Luke 17:6). I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not, **Luke** 22:32. Faith in Christ's name hath made this man strong, **Acts** 3:16. Faith cometh by hearing the word of God, **Rom.** 10:17. If Christ is not risen your faith is also vain, **1 Cor.** 15:14. Faith worketh by love, **Gal.** 5:6. By grace are ye saved through faith, **Eph.** 2:8 (2 Ne. 25:23). Take the shield of faith, **Eph.** 6:16 (D&C 27:17). I have finished my course, I have kept the faith, **2 Tim.** 4:7. Faith is the substance of things hoped for, **Heb.** 11:1. Without faith it is impossible to please him, **Heb.** 11:6. Faith, if it hath not works, is dead, **James** 2:17–18, 22.

I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, **1 Ne.** 3:7. The Lord is able to do all things for the children of men, if they exercise faith in him, **1 Ne.** 7:12. The pointers in the Liahona worked according to faith, **1 Ne.** 16:28. Repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One, **2 Ne.** 9:23. Christ works mighty miracles among the children of men according to their faith, **2 Ne.** 26:13 (Ether 12:12; Moro. 7:27–29, 34–38). Enos's sins were forgiven because of his faith in Christ, **Enos** 1:3–8. Salvation cometh to none such except it be through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, **Mosiah** 3:12. Hearts are changed through faith on his name, **Mosiah** 5:7. The prayers of God's servants are answered according to their faith, **Mosiah** 27:14. Give us strength according to our faith in Christ, **Alma** 14:26. Call on God's name in faith, **Alma** 22:16. Faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things, **Alma** 32:21 (Ether 12:6). As it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith, **Alma** 33:23 (Alma 32:28). Their preservation was ascribed to the miraculous power of God because of their exceeding faith, **Alma** 57:25–27. As many as should look upon the Son of God with faith might live, **Hel.** 8:15. I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you, **3 Ne.** 17:8. Faith is things which are hoped for and not

seen, **Ether** 12:6. All they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, **Ether** 12:12–18. If they have faith in me, then will I make weak things become strong unto them, **Ether** 12:27–28, 37. Mormon taught about faith, hope, and charity, **Moro.** 7. Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be done unto you, **Moro.** 7:26. They who have faith in Christ will cleave unto every good thing, **Moro.** 7:28. If ye shall ask, having faith in Christ, he will manifest the truth, **Moro.** 10:4.

Without faith ye can do nothing; therefore ask in faith, **D&C** 8:10. It should be granted unto them according to their faith in their prayers, **D&C** 10:47, 52. All men must endure in faith on his name to the end, **D&C** 20:25, 29. The Spirit shall be given unto you by the prayer of faith, **D&C** 42:14. Faith cometh not by signs, but signs follow those that believe, **D&C** 63:9–12. Parents are to teach children faith in Christ, **D&C** 68:25. Seek learning, even by study and also by faith, **D&C** 88:118.

Faith in the Lord Jesus Christ is the first principle of the gospel, **A of F** 1:4.

Fall of Adam and Eve. *See also*

Adam; Atonement; Death, Physical; Death, Spiritual; Eve; Jesus Christ; Mortal, Mortality; Natural Man; Plan of Redemption; Redeem, Redeemed, Redemption

The process by which mankind became mortal on this earth. When Adam and Eve ate of the forbidden fruit, they became mortal, that is, subject to sin and death. Adam became the “first flesh” upon the earth (Moses 3:7). Latter-day revelation makes clear that the Fall is a blessing and that Adam and Eve should be honored as the first parents of all mankind.

The Fall was a necessary step in man's progress. Because God knew that the Fall would occur, He had planned in the

Family

premortal life for a Savior. Jesus Christ came in the meridian of time to atone for the Fall of Adam and also for man's individual sins on condition of man's repentance.

In the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die, **Gen.** 2:17 (Moses 3:17). She took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, **Gen.** 3:6 (Moses 4:12).

As in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive, **1 Cor.** 15:22.

All mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, **1 Ne.** 10:6. The way is prepared from the fall of man, **2 Ne.** 2:4. After Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit, they were driven out of the Garden of Eden, **2 Ne.** 2:19. Adam fell that men might be, **2 Ne.** 2:15–26. The natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, **Mosiah** 3:19. Aaron taught Lamoni's father about the Fall, **Alma** 22:12–14. There must be an atonement made or else all mankind are fallen and lost, **Alma** 34:9. Our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord, **Alma** 42:2–15 (Hel. 14:16). Because of the Fall our natures have become evil, **Ether** 3:2.

By the transgression of these holy laws man became fallen man, **D&C** 20:20 (D&C 29:34–44).

As thou hast fallen thou mayest be redeemed, **Moses** 5:9–12. By reason of transgression cometh the Fall, **Moses** 6:59. Men will be punished for their own sins, **A of F** 1:2.

Family. See also Child, Children; Father, Mortal; Marriage, Marry; Mother

As used in the scriptures, a family consists of a husband and wife, children, and sometimes other relatives living in the same house or under one family head. A family can also be a single parent with children, a husband and wife without children, or even a single person living alone.

General: In thee shall all families of

the earth be blessed, **Gen.** 12:3 (Gen. 28:14; Abr. 2:11). I will be the God of all the families of Israel, **Jer.** 31:1.

The whole family in heaven and earth is named of the Father, **Eph.** 3:14–15.

Adam and Eve brought forth the family of all the earth, **2 Ne.** 2:20.

Thy glory shall be a continuation of the seeds forever, **D&C** 132:19. I will give him crowns of eternal lives in the eternal worlds, **D&C** 132:55. The sealing of the children to the parents is part of the great work of the fulness of times, **D&C** 138:48.

Male and female created I them, and said unto them: Be fruitful, and multiply, **Moses** 2:27–28. It is not good that the man should be alone, **Moses** 3:18. Adam and Eve labored together, **Moses** 5:1.

Parents' responsibilities: Abraham will command his children, and they shall keep the way of the Lord, **Gen.** 18:17–19. Thou shalt teach these words diligently unto thy children, **Deut.** 6:7 (Deut. 11:19). He who loves his son chastens him, **Prov.** 13:24 (Prov. 23:13). Train up a child in the way he should go, **Prov.** 22:6. Live joyfully with the wife whom thou lovest, **Eccl.** 9:9. All thy children shall be taught of the Lord, **Isa.** 54:13 (3 Ne. 22:13).

Bring them up in the nurture of the Lord, **Eph.** 6:1–4 (Enos 1:1). If any provide not for his own, he hath denied the faith, **1 Tim.** 5:8.

He did exhort them with all the feeling of a tender parent, **1 Ne.** 8:37. We talk of Christ that our children may know to what source they may look, **2 Ne.** 25:26. Their husbands and their wives love their children, **Jacob** 3:7. Teach them to love one another and to serve one another, **Mosiah** 4:14–15. Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed, **Alma** 43:47. Pray in your families that your wives and your children may be blessed, **3 Ne.** 18:21.

Parents are to teach the gospel to their children, **D&C** 68:25. Every man

is obliged to provide for his own family, **D&C** 75:28. All children have claim upon their parents, **D&C** 83:4. Bring up your children in light and truth, **D&C** 93:40. Set in order your own house, **D&C** 93:43–44, 50. Priesthood bearers should influence others only by love unfeigned, **D&C** 121:41.

Adam and Eve made all things known unto their children, **Moses** 5:12.

Child's responsibilities: Honor thy father and thy mother, **Ex.** 20:12. My son, hear the instruction of thy father, **Prov.** 1:8 (**Prov.** 13:1; 23:22).

Jesus was subject to his parents, **Luke** 2:51. Jesus did the will of his Father, **John** 6:38 (3 **Ne.** 27:13). Obey your parents in the Lord, **Eph.** 6:1 (**Col.** 3:20).

If the children repent, thine indignation shall be turned away, **D&C** 98:45–48. Eve's faithful daughters worshiped the true and living God, **D&C** 138:38–39.

Eternal family: The Doctrine and Covenants sets forth the eternal nature of the marriage relationship and the family. Celestial marriage and a continuation of the family unit enable husbands and wives to become gods (**D&C** 132:15–20).

Family History. See *Genealogy*;
Salvation for the Dead

Fast, Fasting. See also *Alms*,
Almsgiving; Offering; Poor; Welfare

To voluntarily refrain from eating or drinking for the purpose of drawing closer to the Lord and requesting His blessings. When individuals and groups fast, they should also pray to understand God's will and to develop greater spiritual strength. Fasting has always been practiced by true believers.

In the Church today, one Sabbath day each month is set aside for the purpose of fasting. During this time, Church members go without food and water for a period of time. They then contribute to the Church the money that they would have spent on food for those meals.

This money is called a fast offering. The Church uses the fast offerings to assist the poor and needy.

We fasted and besought our God, **Ezra** 8:21–23, 31. I fasted and prayed before the God of heaven, **Neh.** 1:4. Fast ye for me, and neither eat nor drink for three days, **Esth.** 4:16. I humbled my soul with fasting, **Ps.** 35:13. Is not this the fast that I have chosen, **Isa.** 58:3–12. I set my face unto the Lord God, to seek by prayer, with fasting, **Dan.** 9:3. Turn ye to me with all your heart, and with fasting, **Joel** 2:12. Nineveh believed God, and proclaimed a fast, **Jonah** 3:5.

Jesus fasted for forty days, **Matt.** 4:2 (**Ex.** 34:28; 1 **Kgs.** 19:8; **Luke** 4:1–2). Appear not unto men to fast, **Matt.** 6:18 (3 **Ne.** 13:16). This kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting, **Matt.** 17:21.

Continue in fasting and praying, **Omni** 1:26 (4 **Ne.** 1:12). They began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God, **Mosiah** 27:22. I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things, **Alma** 5:46. The children of God joined in fasting and mighty prayer, **Alma** 6:6. The sons of Mosiah had given themselves to much prayer and fasting, **Alma** 17:3, 9. A time of fasting and prayer followed the death of many Nephites, **Alma** 28:5–6. They did fast much and pray much, **Alma** 45:1 (**Hel.** 3:35).

Let thy food be prepared with singleness of heart that thy fasting may be perfect, **D&C** 59:13–14. Ye shall continue in prayer and fasting, **D&C** 88:76.

Father, Mortal. See also *Family*;
Parents; Patriarch, Patriarchal;
Patriarchal Blessings

A sacred title referring to a man who has begotten or legally adopted a child.

Honor thy father and thy mother, **Ex.** 20:12 (**Deut.** 5:16; **Matt.** 19:19; **Mosiah** 13:20). A father will correct a son in whom he delights, **Prov.** 3:12.

Fathers, provoke not your children to wrath, **Eph.** 6:1–4.

I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father, **1 Ne.** 1:1. My father was a just man—for he taught me, **Enos** 1:1. Alma prayed for his son, **Mosiah** 27:14. Alma gave commandments to his sons, **Alma** 36–42. Helaman named his sons after their forebears, **Hel.** 5:5–12. Mormon was always mindful of his son in his prayers, **Moro.** 8:2–3.

Great things may be required at the hand of fathers, **D&C** 29:48. Every man is obliged to provide for his own family, **D&C** 75:28.

He commanded me to go to my father, **JS—H** 1:49.

Father in Heaven. *See also* God, Godhead

The Father of the spirits of all mankind (**Ps.** 82:6; **Matt.** 5:48; **John** 10:34; **Rom.** 8:16–17; **Gal.** 4:7; **1 Jn.** 3:2). Jesus is His Only Begotten Son in the flesh. Man has been commanded to obey and give reverence to the Father and to pray to Him in Jesus' name.

If ye forgive men, your Heavenly Father will also forgive you, **Matt.** 6:14 (**Matt.** 18:35; **3 Ne.** 13:14). Your Heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things, **Matt.** 6:26–33 (**3 Ne.** 13:26–33). How much more shall your Heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him, **Luke** 11:11–13. Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, **Eph.** 1:3.

Ye are eternally indebted to your Heavenly Father, **Mosiah** 2:34. Christ glorified the name of the Father, **Ether** 12:8.

The Saints should bear witness of their persecutions before the Father comes forth from his hiding place, **D&C** 123:1–3, 6.

We experienced great and glorious blessings from our Heavenly Father, **JS—H** 1:73.

Fayette, New York (USA)

The site of the farm owned by Peter Whitmer Sr. where many revelations were given to the Prophet Joseph Smith

Jr. Here the Church was organized on April 6, 1830, and the voice of the Lord was heard (**D&C** 128:20).

Fear. *See also* Courage, Courageous; Faith; Reverence

Fear can have two meanings: (1) to fear God is to feel reverence and awe for Him and to obey His commandments; (2) to fear man, mortal dangers, pain, and evil is to be afraid of such things and to dread them.

Fear of God: Surely the fear of God is not in this place, **Gen.** 20:11. Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, **Deut.** 6:13 (**Josh.** 24:14; **1 Sam.** 12:24). Serve the Lord with fear, **Ps.** 2:11. Fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom, **Ps.** 111:10. Fear the Lord and depart from evil, **Prov.** 3:7. It shall be well with them that fear God, **Eccl.** 8:12.

Work out your own salvation with fear and trembling, **Philip.** 2:12. Fear God, and give glory to him, **Rev.** 14:7 (**D&C** 88:104).

Prophets stirred up the people continually to keep them in the fear of the Lord, **Enos** 1:23. Alma and the sons of Mosiah fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon them, **Alma** 36:7. Work out your salvation with fear and trembling, **Morm.** 9:27.

They who do not fear me, I will disturb and cause to tremble, **D&C** 10:56. He that feareth me shall be looking for the signs of the coming of the Son of Man, **D&C** 45:39.

Fear of man: Fear not, for I am with thee, **Gen.** 26:24 (**Isa.** 41:10). The Lord is with us: fear them not, **Num.** 14:9. Fear not: for they that be with us are more, **2 Kgs.** 6:16. I will not fear what flesh can do, **Ps.** 56:4. Fear not the reproach of men, **Isa.** 51:7 (**2 Ne.** 8:7).

God hath not given us the spirit of fear, **2 Tim.** 1:7. Perfect love casteth out fear, **1 Jn.** 4:18 (**Moro.** 8:16).

The sons of Helaman did not fear death, **Alma** 56:46–48. The fear of death fills the breasts of the wicked,

Morm. 6:7. Fear not what man can do, **Moro.** 8:16.

You should not have feared man more than God, **D&C** 3:7 (**D&C** 30:1, 11; 122:9). Fear not to do good, **D&C** 6:33. Whosoever belongeth to my church need not fear, **D&C** 10:55. If ye are prepared ye shall not fear, **D&C** 38:30. Strip yourselves from fear, **D&C** 67:10. Be of good cheer, and do not fear, for I the Lord am with you, **D&C** 68:6. Fear not thine enemies, **D&C** 136:17.

Feel. *See also* Holy Ghost

To sense the promptings of the Spirit.

Ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words, **1 Ne.** 17:45. When you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say that this is a good seed, **Alma** 32:28.

You shall feel that it is right, **D&C** 9:8. All people who shall enter the Lord's house may feel thy power, **D&C** 109:13.

Fellowship. *See also* Love; Unity

For Latter-day Saints, fellowship includes offering friendly companionship, serving, uplifting, and strengthening others.

Love thy neighbor as thyself, **Lev.** 19:18 (**Matt.** 19:19; **D&C** 59:6).

When thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren, **Luke** 22:32. Ye are my disciples if ye have love one to another, **John** 13:35. Feed my sheep, **John** 21:15–17. They prayed that we would take upon us the fellowship of the ministering to the Saints, **2 Cor.** 8:1–5. Our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son, **1 Jn.** 1:3.

The Nephites and Lamanites did fellowship one with another, **Hel.** 6:3.

Let every man esteem his brother as himself, **D&C** 38:24–25. If ye are not one ye are not mine, **D&C** 38:27. I receive you to fellowship to be your friend and brother, **D&C** 88:133.

Field. *See also* Vineyard of the Lord; World

In scripture, an open area of land used for cultivation or pasture. It often symbolizes the world and its peoples.

The field is the world, **Matt.** 13:38. The kingdom of heaven is like unto treasure hid in a field, **Matt.** 13:44.

I beheld a large and spacious field, **1 Ne.** 8:9, 20. The field was ripe, **Alma** 26:5.

The field is white already to harvest, **D&C** 4:4 (**D&C** 6:3; 11:3; 12:3; 14:3; 31:4; 33:3, 7). The field was the world, **D&C** 86:1–2. I will liken these kingdoms unto a man having a field, **D&C** 88:51.

Filth, Filthiness. *See also* Clean and Unclean; Sin; Ungodly; Unrighteous, Unrighteousness; Wicked, Wickedness

Spiritual uncleanness because of willful disobedience to God.

The Lord shall wash away the filth of the daughters of Zion, **Isa.** 4:4 (**2 Ne.** 14:4).

The kingdom of God is not filthy, **1 Ne.** 15:34 (**Alma** 7:21). They who are filthy shall be filthy still, **2 Ne.** 9:16 (**Morm.** 9:14). How will you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with filthiness, **Alma** 5:22.

They must remain filthy still, **D&C** 88:35.

When shall I rest, and be cleansed from filthiness, **Moses** 7:48.

Fire. *See also* Baptism, Baptize; Earth—Cleansing of the earth; Hell; Holy Ghost

A symbol for cleansing, purifying, or sanctifying. Fire can also serve as a symbol of God's presence.

Thy God is a consuming fire, **Deut.** 4:24. The Lord makes his ministers a flaming fire, **Ps.** 104:4. The Lord of hosts will visit them with the flame of devouring fire, **Isa.** 29:6 (**2 Ne.** 27:2). The Lord will come with fire, **Isa.** 66:15. He

is like a refiner's fire, **Mal.** 3:2 (3 Ne. 24:2; D&C 128:24).

He shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire, **Matt.** 3:11 (Luke 3:16).

The righteous will be preserved by fire, **1 Ne.** 22:17. The wicked will be destroyed by fire, **2 Ne.** 30:10. Nephi explained how we receive the baptism of fire and the Holy Ghost, **2 Ne.** 31:13–14 (3 Ne. 9:20; 12:1; 19:13; Ether 12:14; D&C 33:11).

Thou shalt declare remission of sins by baptism, and by fire, **D&C** 19:31. The great and abominable church shall be cast down by devouring fire, **D&C** 29:21. The earth shall pass away so as by fire, **D&C** 43:32. The presence of the Lord shall be as the melting fire, **D&C** 133:41.

Adam was baptized with fire and the Holy Ghost, **Moses** 6:66.

Firstborn. *See also* Birthright; Jesus Christ

In the time of the ancient patriarchs, the firstborn son received the birthright (Gen. 43:33) and thus inherited the leadership of the family upon the death of the father. The firstborn had to be worthy to assume this responsibility (1 Chr. 5:1–2) and could lose his birthright by unrighteousness.

Under the law of Moses, the firstborn son was regarded as belonging to God. The firstborn received a double portion of his father's possessions (Deut. 21:17). After his father's death, he was responsible for the care of his mother and sisters.

The male firstborn of animals also belonged to God. Clean animals were used for sacrifices, while unclean animals might be redeemed or sold or put to death (Ex. 13:2, 11–13; 34:19–20; Lev. 27:11–13, 26–27).

The firstborn symbolized Jesus Christ and His earthly ministry, reminding the people that the great Messiah would come (Moses 5:4–8; 6:63).

Jesus was the firstborn of the spirit

children of our Heavenly Father, the Only Begotten of the Father in the flesh, and the first to rise from the dead in the Resurrection (Col. 1:13–18). Faithful Saints become members of the Church of the Firstborn in eternity (D&C 93:21–22).

The firstborn of thy sons shalt thou give unto me, **Ex.** 22:29. I hallowed unto me all the firstborn in Israel, **Num.** 3:13.

He might be the firstborn among many brethren, **Rom.** 8:29. He bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, **Heb.** 1:6.

They are they who are the Church of the Firstborn, **D&C** 76:54, 94.

It was conferred upon me from the fathers, even the right of the firstborn, **Abr.** 1:3.

Firstfruits

The first crops gathered in a season. In Old Testament times, they were offered to the Lord (Lev. 23:9–20). Jesus Christ was the firstfruits unto God in that He was the first to be resurrected (1 Cor. 15:20, 23; 2 Ne. 2:9). Those who accept the gospel and endure to the end in faithfulness are in a symbolic way the firstfruits, for they belong to God.

Those who follow the Lamb wherever he goes are the firstfruits unto God, **Rev.** 14:4.

They who shall first descend with Christ are the firstfruits, **D&C** 88:98.

First Presidency. *See also* Keys of the Priesthood; President; Revelation

The President of the Church and his Counselors. They are a quorum of three high priests and preside over the whole Church. The First Presidency holds all the keys of the priesthood.

The keys of the kingdom always belong to the Presidency of the High Priesthood, **D&C** 81:2. The Presidency of the High Priesthood has the right to officiate in all offices, **D&C** 107:9, 22. Whosoever receiveth me receiveth the First Presidency, **D&C** 112:20, 30.

The First Presidency is to receive oracles [revelations] for the whole Church, **D&C 124:126**.

First Principles of the Gospel. *See* Baptism, Baptize; Faith; Holy Ghost; Repent, Repentance

First Vision. *See also* Restoration of the Gospel; Smith, Joseph, Jr.

The appearance of God the Father and His Son Jesus Christ to the Prophet Joseph Smith in a grove of trees.

In the spring of 1820, Joseph Smith Jr. was in his fifteenth year. He lived with his family in the township of Palmyra, New York. A short distance west of the family home was a grove of large trees. Joseph went to this spot to pray to God to learn which church was right. He had been impressed while reading the Bible that he must seek that answer from God (James 1:5–6). In answer to his prayer, the Father and the Son appeared to him and told him to join none of the churches then on the earth, for they were all wrong (JS—H 1:15–20). This sacred experience began a series of events that would bring about the Restoration of the gospel and Christ's true Church.

Flesh. *See also* Body; Carnal; Mortal, Mortality; Natural Man

Flesh has several meanings: (1) the soft tissue that makes up the bodies of mankind, animals, fowls, or fish; (2) mortality; or (3) the physical or carnal nature of man.

Body tissue: Animals shall be meat for you, **Gen.** 9:3. Animals should not be killed needlessly, **JST, Gen.** 9:10–11 (**D&C 49:21**).

Animals and fowl are for man to eat and use as clothing, **D&C 49:18–19** (**D&C 59:16–20**). We should eat meat sparingly, **D&C 89:12–15**.

Mortality: Jesus is the only one begotten of the Father into mortality, **John** 1:14 (Mosiah 15:1–3).

Adam became the first flesh, **Moses 3:7**.

Carnal nature of man: Cursed be the man that makes flesh his arm, **Jer.** 17:5.

The spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak, **Mark 14:38**. The lust of the flesh is not of the Father, **1 Jn.** 2:16.

Nephi was sorrowful because of his flesh and iniquities, **2 Ne.** 4:17–18, 34. Do not reconcile yourselves to the devil and the flesh, **2 Ne.** 10:24.

Flood at Noah's Time. *See also* Ark; Noah, Bible Patriarch; Rainbow

During Noah's time the earth was completely covered with water. This was the baptism of the earth and symbolized a cleansing (1 Pet. 3:20–21).

God will bring a flood of waters upon the earth to destroy all flesh, **Gen.** 6:17 (Moses 7:34, 43, 50–52; 8:17, 30). The waters of the flood were upon the earth, **Gen.** 7:10. God set a bow in the cloud as a token of the covenant, **Gen.** 9:9–17.

After the waters had receded, the land of America became a choice land, **Ether 13:2**.

The wicked shall perish in the flood, **Moses 7:38; 8:24**.

Forbidden Fruit. *See* Eden; Fall of Adam and Eve

Foreordination. *See also* Premortal Life

God's premortal ordination of His valiant spirit children to fulfill certain missions during their mortal lives.

God set the bounds of the people, **Deut.** 32:8. Before I formed thee in the belly I ordained thee a prophet, **Jer.** 1:5.

God determined the times before appointed, **Acts 17:26**. For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate, **Rom.** 8:28–30. He has chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, **Eph.** 1:3–4. Jesus Christ was foreordained to be the Redeemer, **1 Pet.** 1:19–20 (Rev. 13:8).

They were called and prepared from the foundation of the world, **Alma 13:1–9**.

I observed the noble and great ones

Forgive

who were chosen in the beginning, **D&C** 138:55–56.

My Beloved Son was chosen from the beginning, **Moses** 4:2. Abraham was chosen before he was born, **Abr.** 3:23.

Forgive. *See also* Atoned, Atonement; Confess, Confession; Remission of Sins; Repent, Repentance

As used in the scriptures, to forgive generally means one of two things: (1) When God forgives men, He cancels or sets aside a required punishment for sin. Through the Atonement of Christ, forgiveness of sins is available to all who repent, except those guilty of murder or the unpardonable sin against the Holy Ghost. (2) As people forgive each other, they treat one another with Christlike love and have no bad feelings toward those who have offended them (**Matt.** 5:43–45; 6:12–15; **Luke** 17:3–4; **1 Ne.** 7:19–21).

The Lord is longsuffering, and of great mercy, forgiving iniquity and transgression, **Num.** 14:18. Though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow, **Isa.** 1:18.

Forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors, **Matt.** 6:12 (**Luke** 11:4; **3 Ne.** 13:11). The Son of man has power to forgive sins, **Matt.** 9:6 (**Matt.** 18:35; **Mark** 2:10; **Luke** 5:20–24). How oft shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him, **Matt.** 18:21–22 (**D&C** 98:40). He that blasphemes against the Holy Ghost hath never forgiveness, **Mark** 3:29 (**Alma** 39:6). If thy brother trespass against thee and repent, forgive him, **Luke** 17:3. Father forgive them, for they know not what they do, **Luke** 23:34.

Pray for forgiveness, **1 Ne.** 7:21. Apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, **Mosiah** 4:2. If he confess his sins before thee and me, and repent, him shall ye forgive, **Mosiah** 26:29–31.

He that repents and does the commandments shall be forgiven, **D&C** 1:32. Thrust in your sickle, and your sins

are forgiven, **D&C** 31:5 (**D&C** 84:61). He who has repented of his sins is forgiven, and I, the Lord, remember them no more, **D&C** 58:42. I will forgive whom I will forgive, but of you it is required to forgive all men, **D&C** 64:10. Inasmuch as you have forgiven one another your trespasses, even so I, the Lord, forgive you, **D&C** 82:1. Whom I love I also chasten that their sins may be forgiven, **D&C** 95:1.

I have forgiven thee thy transgression, **Moses** 6:53.

Fornication. *See also* Adultery; Chastity; Sensual, Sensuality

Unlawful sexual intercourse between two people not married to each other. In the scriptures it is also occasionally used as a symbol for apostasy.

Abstain from fornication, **Acts** 15:20. The body is not for fornication, but for the Lord, **1 Cor.** 6:13–18. To avoid fornication, let every man have his own wife, **1 Cor.** 7:2–3. This is the will of God, that ye should abstain from fornication, **1 Thes.** 4:3.

Jacob warned the people of Nephi against fornication, **Jacob** 3:12. Ye are ripening, because of your murders and fornication, for destruction, **Hel.** 8:26.

Fornicators must repent in order to join the Church, **D&C** 42:74–78.

Free, Freedom. *See also* Agency; Captivity; Liberty

The power or ability to make personal choices without compulsion. In a spiritual sense, a person who repents and obeys God's will is free from the bondage of sin through the Atonement of Jesus Christ (**Mosiah** 5:8).

The truth shall make you free, **John** 8:32. Those who become free from sin receive eternal life, **Rom.** 6:19–23.

A righteous branch of the house of Israel shall be brought out of captivity unto freedom, **2 Ne.** 3:5. They cried unto the Lord for their freedom, **Alma** 43:48–50. Moroni did joy in the freedom

of his country, **Alma** 48:11. The Spirit of God is the spirit of freedom, **Alma** 61:15.

Follow me, and you shall be a free people, **D&C** 38:22.

Free Agency. *See* Agency

Gabriel. *See also* Angels; Mary, Mother of Jesus; Noah, Bible Patriarch

An angel sent to Daniel (**Dan.** 8:16; 9:21), Zacharias (**Luke** 1:11–19; **D&C** 27:7), Mary (**Luke** 1:26–38), and others (**D&C** 128:21). The Prophet Joseph Smith indicated that Gabriel is the Old Testament prophet Noah.

Gad, Son of Jacob. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, a son of Jacob and Zilpah (**Gen.** 30:10–11). His descendants became a tribe of Israel.

The tribe of Gad: For Jacob's blessing on his son Gad, see **Genesis** 49:19. For Moses' blessing on the tribe of Gad, see **Deuteronomy** 33:20–21. According to these blessings, Gad's descendants were to be a warlike race. The lands allotted to them in the land of Canaan were east of the Jordan River and contained good pasture land with abundant water.

Gadianton Robbers. *See also* Secret Combinations

In the Book of Mormon, a band of robbers founded by a wicked Nephite named Gadianton. Their organization was based on secrecy and satanic oaths.

Gadianton caused the destruction of the Nephite nation, **Hel.** 2:12–13. The devil gave secret oaths and covenants to Gadianton, **Hel.** 6:16–32. Secret combinations caused the destruction of the Jaredite nation, **Ether** 8:15–26.

Gad the Seer. *See also* Scriptures—Lost scriptures

A prophet and faithful friend and adviser of David in the Old Testament (1 **Sam.** 22:5; 2 **Sam.** 24:11–19). He wrote

a book of the acts of David, which has become lost scripture (1 **Chr.** 29:29).

Galatians, Epistle to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles

A book in the New Testament. It was originally a letter that the Apostle Paul wrote to the Saints living throughout Galatia. The theme of this letter is that true freedom can be found only in living the gospel of Jesus Christ. If the Saints adopted the teachings of Jewish Christians who insisted on observing the Mosaic law, they would limit or destroy the freedom they had found in Christ. In the epistle Paul established his own position as an Apostle, explained the doctrine of righteousness by faith, and affirmed the value of a spiritual religion.

In chapters 1 and 2, Paul expressed regret at the news he had received of apostasy among the Galatians and clarified his position among the Apostles. Chapters 3 and 4 discuss the doctrines of faith and works. Chapters 5 and 6 contain a sermon on the practical results of the doctrine of faith.

Galilee

In ancient and modern times, the most northerly district of Israel west of the Jordan River and the Sea of Galilee. Galilee is about sixty miles (ninety-seven kilometers) long by thirty miles (forty-eight kilometers) wide. Anciently, it contained some of the best land and the busiest towns of Israel. Important highways leading to Damascus, Egypt, and eastern Israel passed through Galilee. Its excellent climate and fertile soil produced large crops of olives, wheat, barley, and grapes. Fisheries by the Sea of Galilee provided a large export trade and were a great source of wealth. The Savior spent much of His time in Galilee.

A great light shall arise in Galilee, **Isa.** 9:1–3 (2 **Ne.** 19:1–3).

Jesus went all about Galilee preaching, teaching, and healing, **Matt.** 4:23.

Gamaliel

After Jesus was resurrected, he appeared in Galilee, **Mark** 14:28 (John 21:1–14). Jesus' fame spread throughout Galilee, **Luke** 4:14. Jesus began his miracles in Cana of Galilee, **John** 2:11.

The Sea of Galilee: The Sea of Galilee is located in northern Israel. It was also called the Sea of Chinnereth in the Old Testament and the Lake of Genesaret or Tiberias in the New Testament. Jesus taught several sermons there (Matt. 13:2). The sea is pear-shaped, 12.5 miles (20 kilometers) long and 7.5 miles (12 kilometers) wide at its greatest width. It lies 680 feet (207 meters) below sea level, which often causes the surrounding air to be quite hot. Cold air rushing down from the hills and meeting the hot air above the water often produces sudden storms (Luke 8:22–24).

Gamaliel. *See also* Pharisees

A well-known Pharisee in the New Testament who knew and taught the Jewish law. The Apostle Paul was one of his students (Acts 22:3). He was very influential in the Sanhedrin (Acts 5:34–40).

Garden of Eden. *See* Eden

Garden of Gethsemane. *See* Gethsemane

Gathering of Israel. *See* Israel—The gathering of Israel

Genealogy. *See also* Baptism, Baptize—Baptism for the dead; Book of Remembrance; Family; Ordinances—Vicarious ordinance; Salvation; Salvation for the Dead

A record tracing the line of descent in a family. Where priesthood offices or certain blessings were restricted to a particular family, genealogies in the scriptures were very important (Gen. 5; 10; 25; 46; 1 Chr. 1–9; Ezra 2:61–62; Neh. 7:63–64; Matt. 1:1–17; Luke 3:23–38; 1 Ne. 3:1–4; 5:14–19; Jarom 1:1–2). In the restored Church today, members of

the Church continue to trace their family lines of descent, in part to properly identify deceased ancestors so they can perform saving ordinances in their ancestors' behalf. These ordinances are valid for those deceased persons who accept the gospel of Jesus Christ in the spirit world (D&C 127–128).

General Authorities. *See* Apostle; First Presidency; Presiding Bishop; Seventy

Genesis. *See also* Pentateuch

The book of Genesis is the first book of the Old Testament and was written by the prophet Moses. It gives an account of many beginnings, such as the creation of the earth, the placing of animals and man on the earth, the Fall of Adam and Eve, the revelation of the gospel to Adam, the beginning of tribes and races, the origin of various languages at Babel, and the beginning of the Abrahamic family leading to the establishment of the house of Israel. Joseph's role as a preserver of Israel is emphasized in Genesis.

Latter-day revelation verifies and clarifies the record of Genesis (1 Ne. 5; Ether 1; Moses 1–8; Abr. 1–5).

In the book of Genesis, chapters 1–4 relate the creation of the world and the development of the family of Adam. Chapters 5–10 record the history of Noah. Chapters 11–20 tell of Abraham and his family up to the time of Isaac. Chapters 21–35 follow Isaac's family. Chapter 36 tells of Esau and his family. Chapters 37–50 tell of Jacob's family and give the account of Joseph being sold into Egypt and his role in saving the house of Israel.

Gentiles

As used in the scriptures, *Gentiles* has several meanings. Sometimes it designates people of non-Israelite lineage, sometimes people of non-Jewish lineage, and sometimes nations that are without the gospel, even though there

may be some Israelite blood among the people. This latter usage is especially characteristic of the word as used in the Book of Mormon and Doctrine and Covenants.

Israelites were not to marry non-Israelites (Gentiles), **Deut.** 7:1–3. The Lord would come to be a light of the Gentiles, **Isa.** 42:6.

Peter was commanded to take the gospel to the Gentiles, **Acts** 10:9–48. God also granted repentance to the Gentiles, **Acts** 11:18. We are baptized into one church, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, **1 Cor.** 12:13. The Gentiles should be fellowheirs in Christ by the gospel, **Eph.** 3:6.

The Book of Mormon was written to the Gentiles, **title page of the Book of Mormon** (Morm. 3:17). A man among the Gentiles went forth upon the waters, **1 Ne.** 13:12. Other books came from the Gentiles, **1 Ne.** 13:39. The fulness of the gospel shall come to the Gentiles, **1 Ne.** 15:13 (3 **Ne.** 16:7; **D&C** 20:9). This land shall be a land of liberty to the Gentiles, **2 Ne.** 10:11. The Gentiles are a likeness of a wild olive tree, **Jacob** 5.

The gospel is to come forth in the times of the Gentiles, **D&C** 45:28 (**D&C** 19:27). The word will go forth unto the ends of the earth, unto the Gentiles first, and then unto the Jews, **D&C** 90:8–10. The Seventy are to be special witnesses to the Gentiles, **D&C** 107:25. Send forth the elders of my church to call upon all nations, first upon the Gentiles, and then upon the Jews, **D&C** 133:8.

Gethsemane. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Olives, Mount of

A garden spoken of in the New Testament as being near the Mount of Olives. In Aramaic, the word *gethsemane* means “olive press.” Jesus went to the garden on the night that Judas betrayed Him. There He prayed and suffered in Gethsemane for the sins of mankind (**Matt.** 26:36, 39; **Mark** 14:32; **John** 18:1; **Alma** 21:9; **D&C** 19:15–19).

Gideon (Book of Mormon)

A faithful Nephite leader.

Was a strong man and an enemy to King Noah, **Mosiah** 19:4–8. Counseled with King Limhi, **Mosiah** 20:17–22. Proposed a plan for escaping from Lamanite bondage, **Mosiah** 22:3–9. Was killed by Nehor, **Alma** 1:8–10.

Gideon (Old Testament)

A leader who delivered Israel from the Midianites (**Judg.** 6:11–40; 7–8).

Gift. *See also* Gift of the Holy Ghost; Gifts of the Spirit

God gives man many blessings and gifts.

There are many spiritual gifts, **1 Cor.** 12:4–10. Seek earnestly the best gifts, **1 Cor.** 12:31. Every perfect gift is from God, **James** 1:17.

The power of the Holy Ghost is the gift of God, **1 Ne.** 10:17. Those who say there are no gifts do not know the gospel of Christ, **Morm.** 9:7–8. Every good gift comes from Christ, **Moro.** 10:8–18.

Eternal life is the greatest of all the gifts of God, **D&C** 14:7 (1 **Ne.** 15:36). Gifts are given to those who love the Lord, **D&C** 46:8–11. All have not every gift given unto them, **D&C** 46:11–29.

Gift of the Holy Ghost. *See also* Gift; Gifts of the Spirit; God, Godhead; Holy Ghost

It is the right of every worthy baptized member of the Church to have the constant influence of the Holy Ghost. Following a person's baptism into the true Church of Jesus Christ, he receives the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands from one who has the proper authority (**Acts** 8:12–25; **Moro.** 2; **D&C** 39:23). Receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost is often spoken of as a baptism by fire (**Matt.** 3:11; **D&C** 19:31).

Men are commanded to repent, be baptized, and receive the gift of the Holy Ghost, **Acts** 2:38. Peter and John conferred the gift of the Holy Ghost by

Gifts of the Spirit

the laying on of hands, **Acts** 8:14–22. The Holy Ghost is given by the laying on of hands, **Acts** 19:2–6.

The remission of sins comes by fire and by the Holy Ghost, **2 Ne.** 31:17.

We believe in the laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost, **A of F** 1:4.

Gifts of the Spirit. *See also* Gift

Special spiritual blessings given by the Lord to worthy individuals for their own benefit and for them to use in blessing others. For a description of the gifts of the Spirit, study Doctrine and Covenants 46:11–33; 1 Corinthians 12:1–12; Moroni 10:8–18.

Covet earnestly the best gifts, **1 Cor.** 12:31 (1 Cor. 14:1).

The Nephites were given many gifts of the Spirit, **Alma** 9:21. Wo to him who says the Lord no longer works by gifts or by the power of the Holy Ghost, **3 Ne.** 29:6. God gives gifts to the faithful, **Morm.** 9:7. Gifts come by the Spirit of Christ, **Moro.** 10:17.

There are many gifts and to every man is given a gift by the Spirit, **D&C** 46:11. Church leaders are given power to discern the gifts of the Spirit, **D&C** 46:27. The President of the Church has all the gifts that God bestows upon the head of the Church, **D&C** 107:91–92.

Glory. *See also* Degrees of Glory; Light, Light of Christ; Truth

In the scriptures, glory often refers to God's light and truth. It may also refer to praise or honor and to a certain condition of eternal life or to the glory of God.

Holy is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory, **Isa.** 6:3 (2 Ne. 16:3).

We are changed into the same image from glory to glory, **2 Cor.** 3:18.

He will raise me up to dwell with him in glory, **Alma** 36:28.

The glories received in the resurrection will differ according to

righteousness, **D&C** 76:50–119. The glory of God is intelligence, **D&C** 93:36.

The glory of God is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man, **Moses** 1:39. I saw two Personages, whose brightness and glory defy all description, **JS—H** 1:17.

God, Godhead. *See also* Father in Heaven; Holy Ghost; Jesus Christ; Lord

There are three separate persons in the Godhead: God, the Eternal Father; His Son, Jesus Christ; and the Holy Ghost. We believe in each of Them (**A of F** 1:1). From latter-day revelation we learn that the Father and the Son have tangible bodies of flesh and bone and that the Holy Ghost is a personage of spirit, without flesh and bone (**D&C** 130:22–23). These three persons are one in perfect unity and harmony of purpose and doctrine (**John** 17:21–23; **2 Ne.** 31:21; **3 Ne.** 11:27, 36).

God the Father: It is generally the Father, or Elohim, who is referred to by the title God. He is called the Father because He is the father of our spirits (**Num.** 16:22; **27:16**; **Mal.** 2:10; **Matt.** 6:9; **Eph.** 4:6; **Heb.** 12:9). God the Father is the supreme ruler of the universe. He is all powerful (**Gen.** 18:14; **Alma** 26:35; **D&C** 19:1–3), all knowing (**Matt.** 6:8; **2 Ne.** 2:24), and everywhere present through His Spirit (**Ps.** 139:7–12; **D&C** 88:7–13, 41). Mankind has a special relationship to God that sets man apart from all other created things: men and women are God's spirit children (**Ps.** 82:6; **1 Jn.** 3:1–3; **D&C** 20:17–18).

There are few recorded instances of God the Father appearing to or speaking to man. The scriptures say that He spoke to Adam and Eve (**Moses** 4:14–31) and introduced Jesus Christ on several occasions (**Matt.** 3:17; **17:5**; **John** 12:28–29; **3 Ne.** 11:3–7). He appeared to Stephen (**Acts** 7:55–56) and Joseph Smith (**JS—H** 1:17). Later He appeared to both Joseph Smith and Sidney Rigdon

(D&C 76:20, 23). To those who love God and purify themselves before Him, God sometimes grants the privilege of seeing and knowing for themselves that He is God (Matt. 5:8; 3 Ne. 12:8; D&C 76:116–118; 93:1).

My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me, **Mark** 15:34. These men are the servants of the most high God, **Acts** 16:17. We are the offspring of God, **Acts** 17:28–29.

Thou shalt offer thy sacraments unto the Most High, **D&C** 59:10–12.

Enoch beheld the spirits that God had created, **Moses** 6:36. Man of Holiness is his name, **Moses** 6:57.

God the Son: The God known as Jehovah is the Son, Jesus Christ (Isa. 12:2; 43:11; 49:26; 1 Cor. 10:1–4; 1 Tim. 1:1; Rev. 1:8; 2 Ne. 22:2). Jesus works under the direction of the Father and is in complete harmony with Him. All mankind are His brothers and sisters, for He is the eldest of the spirit children of Elohim. Some scripture references refer to Him by the word *God*. For example, the scripture says that “God created the heaven and the earth” (Gen. 1:1), but it was actually Jesus who was the Creator under the direction of God the Father (John 1:1–3, 10, 14; Heb. 1:1–2).

The Lord identified himself as I AM, **Ex.** 3:13–16. I am the Lord [Jehovah], and beside me there is no savior, **Isa.** 43:11 (Isa. 45:21).

I am the light of the world, **John** 8:12. Before Abraham was, I am, **John** 8:58.

The Lord shall minister among men in a tabernacle of clay, **Mosiah** 3:5–10. Abinadi explained how Christ is the Father and the Son, **Mosiah** 15:1–4 (Ether 3:14). The Lord appeared to the brother of Jared, **Ether** 3. Listen to the words of Christ your Lord and your God, **Moro.** 8:8. Jehovah is the judge of the quick and the dead, **Moro.** 10:34.

Jesus appeared to Joseph Smith and Sidney Rigdon, **D&C** 76:20, 23. The Lord Jehovah appeared in the Kirtland Temple, **D&C** 110:1–4.

Jehovah spoke to Abraham, **Abr.** 1:16–19. Jesus appeared to Joseph Smith, **JS—H** 1:17.

God the Holy Ghost: The Holy Ghost is also a God and is called the Holy Spirit, the Spirit, and the Spirit of God, among other similar names and titles. With the aid of the Holy Ghost, man can know the will of God the Father and know that Jesus is the Christ (1 Cor. 12:3).

The Holy Ghost will teach you what you should say, **Luke** 12:12. The Holy Ghost is the Comforter, **John** 14:26 (John 16:7–15). Jesus gave commandments to the Apostles through the Holy Ghost, **Acts** 1:2. The Holy Ghost bears witness of God and Christ, **Acts** 5:29–32 (1 Cor. 12:3). The Holy Ghost also is a witness to us, **Heb.** 10:10–17.

By the power of the Holy Ghost you may know the truth of all things, **Moro.** 10:5.

The Holy Ghost is the spirit of revelation, **D&C** 8:2–3 (D&C 68:4).

Godhood. *See* Eternal Life; Exaltation; Man, Men—Man, potential to become like Heavenly Father

Gog. *See also* Magog; Second Coming of Jesus Christ

A king of Magog. Ezekiel prophesied that Gog would invade Israel at the time of the Lord’s Second Coming (Ezek. 38–39). Another battle, called the battle of Gog and Magog, will occur at the end of the Millennium (Rev. 20:7–9; D&C 88:111–116).

Gold Plates. *See also* Book of Mormon; Plates

A record written on plates of gold. It tells the story of two great civilizations on the American continents. Joseph Smith translated and published a portion of these plates. This translation is called the Book of Mormon. (For more information, see “Introduction” and “The Testimony of the Prophet Joseph Smith” in the Book of Mormon.)

Golgotha. *See also* Crucifixion; Jesus Christ

Golgotha means “a skull” in the Aramaic language. It is the name of the place where Christ was crucified (Matt. 27:33; Mark 15:22; John 19:17). The Latin name for this place is Calvary (Luke 23:33).

Goliath. *See also* David

In the Old Testament, a Philistine giant who challenged the Israelite armies. David accepted his challenge and killed him with the Lord’s help (1 Sam. 17).

Gomorrah. *See also* Sodom

In the Old Testament, a wicked city that was destroyed by the Lord (Gen. 19:12–29).

Good Shepherd. *See also* Jesus Christ

Jesus Christ is the Good Shepherd. Symbolically, His followers are like sheep whom Jesus watches over.

The Lord is my shepherd, **Ps.** 23:1. He shall feed his flock like a shepherd, **Isa.** 40:11. So will I seek out my sheep, **Ezek.** 34:12.

I am the good shepherd, **John** 10:14–15. Jesus is that great shepherd of the sheep, **Heb.** 13:20.

He numbereth his sheep and they know him, **1 Ne.** 22:25. The good shepherd calls you in his name, which is Christ, **Alma** 5:38, 60. There shall be one fold, and one shepherd, **3 Ne.** 15:21 (John 10:16).

Gospel. *See also* Dispensation; Doctrine of Christ; Plan of Redemption

God’s plan of salvation, made possible through the Atonement of Jesus Christ. The gospel includes the eternal truths or laws, covenants, and ordinances needed for mankind to enter back into the presence of God. God restored the fulness of the gospel to the

earth in the 19th century through the Prophet Joseph Smith.

Go ye into all the world and preach the gospel, **Mark** 16:15.

The plain and precious parts of the gospel of the Lamb have been kept back, **1 Ne.** 13:32. This is my gospel, **3 Ne.** 27:13–21 (D&C 39:6).

The Book of Mormon contains the fulness of the gospel, **D&C** 20:8–9 (D&C 42:12). This is the gospel, **D&C** 76:40–43. The Melchizedek Priesthood administers the gospel, **D&C** 84:19. Every man will hear the fulness of the gospel in his own tongue, **D&C** 90:11. The Son preached the gospel to the spirits of the dead, **D&C** 138:18–21, 28–37.

The gospel was preached from the beginning, **Moses** 5:58. The first principles and ordinances of the gospel are described, **A of F** 1:4.

Gospel, Restoration of. *See* Restoration of the Gospel

Gospels. *See also* John, Son of Zebedee; Luke; Mark; Matthew

The four records or testimonies of Jesus’ mortal life and the events pertaining to His ministry contained in the first four books of the New Testament. Written by Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John, they are recorded witnesses of Christ’s life. The book of 3 Nephi in the Book of Mormon is similar in many ways to these four New Testament Gospels.

The books of the New Testament were originally written in Greek. The Greek word for *gospel* means “good news.” The good news is that Jesus Christ has made an atonement that will redeem all mankind from death and reward each individual according to his works (John 3:16; Rom. 5:10–11; 2 Ne. 9:26; Alma 34:9; D&C 76:69).

See also the Harmony of the Gospels in the appendix.

Gossip. *See also* Evil Speaking; Rumor

To share personal facts or information

about another person without that person's approval.

Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall give account thereof, **Matt.** 12:36. Saints are admonished not to be tattlers and busybodies, speaking things which they ought not, **1 Tim.** 5:11–14.

Thou shalt not speak evil of thy neighbor, **D&C** 42:27. Strengthen your brethren in all your conversation, **D&C** 108:7.

Government. *See also* Constitution

When Jesus Christ returns, He will establish a government of righteousness.

The government shall be upon his shoulder, **Isa.** 9:6 (2 Ne. 19:6).

Render to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, **Matt.** 22:21 (**D&C** 63:26). Be subject to the higher powers, **Rom.** 13:1. Pray for kings and all in authority, **1 Tim.** 2:1–2. Be subject to principalities and powers and obey magistrates, **Titus** 3:1. Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake, **1 Pet.** 2:13–14. Jesus Christ shall be the ultimate governor of the earth, **Rev.** 11:15.

Have just men to be your kings, **Mosiah** 23:8. Do your business by the vote of the people, **Mosiah** 29:26.

Christ will be our ruler when he comes, **D&C** 41:4. He that keeps God's laws has no need to break the laws of the land, **D&C** 58:21. When the wicked rule, the people mourn, **D&C** 98:9–10. Governments are instituted of God for the benefit of mankind, **D&C** 134:1–5. Men are bound to sustain and uphold governments, **D&C** 134:5.

We believe in being subject to kings, presidents, rulers, and magistrates, **A of F** 1:12.

Grace. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Jesus Christ; Merciful, Mercy; Salvation

The enabling power from God that allows men and women to obtain

blessings in this life and to gain eternal life and exaltation after they have exercised faith, repented, and given their best effort to keep the commandments. Such divine help or strength is given through the mercy and love of God. Every mortal person needs divine grace because of Adam's Fall and also because of man's weaknesses.

Grace and truth came by Jesus Christ, **John** 1:17. Through the grace of Christ, we shall be saved, **Acts** 15:11 (**Rom.** 3:23–24; **D&C** 138:14). We have access by faith to his grace, **Rom.** 5:2. By grace ye are saved through faith, **Eph.** 2:8. The grace of God brings salvation, **Titus** 2:11. Come boldly unto the throne of grace, **Heb.** 4:16. God gives grace to the humble, **1 Pet.** 5:5.

No one can dwell in the presence of God but through the merits, mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, **2 Ne.** 2:8. It is only in and through the grace of God that men are saved, **2 Ne.** 10:24. We are saved by grace, after all we can do, **2 Ne.** 25:23. It is by grace that we have power to do these things, **Jacob** 4:7. Men might be restored unto grace for grace, according to their works, **Hel.** 12:24. My grace is sufficient for the meek and all that humble themselves, **Ether** 12:26–27. Moroni prayed that the Gentiles be given grace that they might have charity, **Ether** 12:36, 41. By the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ, **Moro.** 10:32–33.

Jesus received grace for grace, **D&C** 93:12–13, 20.

Gratitude. *See* Thankful, Thanks, Thanksgiving

Grave. *See also* Resurrection

The burial place of the mortal body. Because of the Atonement, everyone will be resurrected from the grave.

After Christ's resurrection, the graves were opened and many bodies arose, **Matt.** 27:52–53 (3 Ne. 23:9–13). O grave, where is thy victory, **1 Cor.** 15:55.

The grave must deliver up its dead, **2 Ne.** 9:11–13.

They who have slept in the grave shall come forth, **D&C 88:97–98**. A baptismal font is a symbol of the grave, **D&C 128:12–13**.

Great and Abominable Church. *See* Devil—The church of the devil

Guile. *See also* Deceit, Deceive, Deception

In the scriptures, guile is deceitful cunning.

Blessed is the man in whose spirit there is no guile, **Ps. 32:2** (**Ps. 34:13**; **1 Pet. 2:1**).

Nathanael was an Israelite in whom there was no guile, **John 1:47** (**D&C 41:9–11**).

Pure knowledge enlarges the soul without guile, **D&C 121:42**.

Guilt. *See also* Repent, Repentance

The condition of having done wrong, or the feelings of regret and sorrow that should accompany sin.

He hath sinned and is guilty, **Lev. 6:1–6**.

Whosoever shall partake of the sacrament unworthily is guilty of the body and blood of Jesus, **1 Cor. 11:27**.

The guilty take the truth to be hard, **1 Ne. 16:2**. We shall have a perfect knowledge of all our guilt, **2 Ne. 9:14**. My guilt was swept away, **Enos 1:6**. There was a punishment affixed, which brought remorse of conscience, **Alma 42:18**. Let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you down unto repentance, **Alma 42:29**.

Some of you are guilty before me, but I will be merciful, **D&C 38:14**.

The Son of God has atoned for original guilt, **Moses 6:54**.

Habakkuk

An Old Testament prophet in Judah who spoke of the sinfulness of the people possibly during the reign of Jehoiachin (about 600 B.C.).

The book of Habakkuk: Chapter 1 is a discussion between the Lord and His prophet, similar to those in Jeremiah 12 and Doctrine and Covenants 121. Habakkuk was troubled that the wicked seem to prosper. In chapter 2 the Lord counseled Habakkuk to be patient—the just must learn to live by faith. Chapter 3 records Habakkuk's prayer in which he acknowledged God's justice.

Hagar. *See also* Abraham; Ishmael, Son of Abraham

In the Old Testament, the Egyptian handmaid of Sarah. She became a wife of Abraham and the mother of Ishmael (**Gen. 16; 25:12**; **D&C 132:34, 65**). The Lord promised Hagar that a great nation would descend from her son (**Gen. 21:9–21**).

Haggai

An Old Testament prophet who prophesied in approximately 520 B.C. in Jerusalem, soon after the Jewish people returned from their exile in Babylonia (**Ezra 5:1; 6:14**). He spoke of rebuilding the Lord's temple in Jerusalem and reproved the people because it had not been finished. He also wrote of the millennial temple and reign of the Savior.

The book of Haggai: In chapter 1, the Lord rebuked the people for living in their finished houses while the temple remained unbuilt. Chapter 2 records Haggai's prophecy that the Lord will give peace in His temple.

Hagoth

A Nephite ship builder in the Book of Mormon (**Alma 63:5–7**).

Ham. *See also* Noah, Bible Patriarch

In the Old Testament, the third son of Noah (**Gen. 5:32; 6:10**; **Moses 8:12, 27**).

Noah, his sons, and their families entered the ark, **Gen. 7:13**. Canaan, Ham's son, was cursed, **Gen. 9:18–25**.

The government of Ham was patriarchal and was blessed as to things

of the earth and wisdom but not as to the priesthood, **Ab.** 1:21–27. Ham's wife, Egyptus, was a descendant of Cain; the sons of their daughter Egyptus settled in Egypt, **Ab.** 1:23, 25 (Ps. 105:23; 106:21–22).

Hands, Laying on of. *See also*

Administration to the Sick; Gift of the Holy Ghost; Ordain, Ordination; Setting Apart

The act of placing one's hands on a person's head as part of a priesthood ordinance. Many priesthood ordinances are performed by the laying on of hands, such as ordinations, blessings, administering to the sick, confirming Church membership, and conferring the Holy Ghost.

Moses laid his hands upon the head of Joshua, as the Lord commanded, **Num.** 27:18, 22–23 (Deut. 34:9).

Jesus laid his hands upon a few sick folk, and healed them, **Mark** 6:5 (Morm. 9:24). The Apostles laid their hands on the seven who would assist them, **Acts** 6:5–6. The Holy Ghost was given by the laying on of hands, **Acts** 8:14–17. Ananias laid his hands on Saul and restored his sight, **Acts** 9:12, 17–18. Paul laid his hands on him and healed him, **Acts** 28:8. Paul taught the doctrine of baptism and the laying on of hands, **Heb.** 6:2.

Alma ordained priests and elders by the laying on of hands, **Alma** 6:1. Jesus gave his disciples the power to confer the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands, **3 Ne.** 18:36–37. Upon whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost, **Moro.** 2:2.

Elders are to lay their hands upon children for a blessing, **D&C** 20:70. They shall receive the Holy Ghost by the laying on of the hands, **D&C** 35:6 (A of F 1:4). Elders shall lay hands upon the sick, **D&C** 42:44 (D&C 66:9). Children are to receive the laying on of hands after baptism, **D&C** 68:27. The

priesthood is received by the laying on of hands, **D&C** 84:6–16.

Hannah. *See also* Samuel, Old Testament Prophet

The mother of Samuel, an Old Testament prophet. The Lord gave Samuel to Hannah in answer to her prayers (1 Sam. 1:11, 20–28). Hannah dedicated Samuel to the Lord. Her song of thanksgiving may be compared with that of Mary, the mother of Jesus (1 Sam. 2:1–10; Luke 1:46–55).

Happy, Happiness. *See* Joy

Harris, Martin. *See also* Witnesses of the Book of Mormon

One of the Three Witnesses to the divine origin and truthfulness of the Book of Mormon. He financially helped Joseph Smith and the Church. The Lord asked Martin Harris to sell his property and give his funds to pay for the publication of the Book of Mormon (D&C 19:26–27, 34–35), to be an example unto the Church (D&C 58:35), and to help pay the costs of the ministry (D&C 104:26).

Martin Harris was excommunicated from the Church but later returned to full membership. To the end of his life he bore witness that he saw the angel Moroni and the gold plates from which Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon.

Harvest

The scriptures sometimes use the word *harvest* figuratively to refer to bringing people into the Church, which is the kingdom of God on the earth, or to a time of judgment, such as the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

The harvest is past, the summer is ended, and we are not saved, **Jer.** 8:20 (D&C 56:16).

The harvest is great, but the laborers are few, **Matt.** 9:37. The harvest is the end of the world, **Matt.** 13:39. Whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap, **Gal.** 6:7–9 (D&C 6:33).

Hate, Hatred

The field is white already to harvest, **D&C 4:4**. The harvest is ended and your souls are not saved, **D&C 45:2**. The time of harvest is come, and my word must be fulfilled, **D&C 101:64**.

Hate, Hatred. *See also* Enmity; Love; Vengeance

Hate is a strong dislike for someone or for something.

I, God, visit the iniquity of the fathers upon the children of them that hate me, **Ex. 20:5**. These six things doth the Lord hate, **Prov. 6:16**. A foolish man despiseth his mother, **Prov. 15:20**. He is despised and rejected of men, **Isa. 53:3**.

Do good to them that hate you, **Matt. 5:44**. Either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other, **Matt. 6:24**. Ye shall be hated of all men for my name's sake, **Matt. 10:22**. Every one that doeth evil hateth the light, **John 3:20**. Let no man despise thy youth, **1 Tim. 4:12**.

Because they are rich, they despise the poor, **2 Ne. 9:30**. Despise not the revelations of God, **Jacob 4:8**. They had an eternal hatred against us, **Jacob 7:24**.

Men set at naught the counsels of God, and despise his words, **D&C 3:7**.

I was hated and persecuted for saying that I had seen a vision, **JS—H 1:25**.

Heal, Healings. *See also*

Administration to the Sick; Anoint

To make well or healthy again, both physically and spiritually. The scriptures contain many examples of miraculous healings by the Lord and His servants.

I am the Lord that heals thee, **Ex. 15:26**. Naaman dipped himself in the Jordan River seven times and was healed, **2 Kgs. 5:1–14**. With his stripes we are healed, **Isa. 53:5** (Mosiah 14:5). The Sun of righteousness shall arise with healing in his wings, **Mal. 4:2**.

Jesus healed all manner of sickness, **Matt. 4:23** (Matt. 9:35). He gave them

power to heal all manner of sickness, **Matt. 10:1**. He hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, **Luke 4:18**.

They were healed by the power of the Lamb of God, **1 Ne. 11:31**. If thou believest in the redemption of Christ, thou canst be healed, **Alma 15:8**. He did heal them every one, **3 Ne. 17:9**.

He that hath faith in me to be healed shall be healed, **D&C 42:48**. In my name they shall heal the sick, **D&C 84:68**.

We believe in the gift of healings, **A of F 1:7**.

Health. *See* Word of Wisdom

Hearken. *See also* Ear; Obedience, Obedient, Obey

To hear and obey the voice or teachings of the Lord.

The Lord will raise up a prophet like Moses, and the people should hearken to him, **Deut. 18:15**. To hearken is better than the fat of the rams of sacrifice, **1 Sam. 15:20–23**. We have not hearkened unto the Lord's servants, the prophets, **Dan. 9:6**.

The righteous who hearken unto the words of the prophets shall not perish, **2 Ne. 26:8**. If you will not hearken to the voice of the good shepherd, you are not his sheep, **Alma 5:38** (Hel. 7:18).

Hearken, O ye people of my church, **D&C 1:1**. Those who hearken to the voice of the Spirit are enlightened and come to the Father, **D&C 84:46–47**. They were slow to hearken to the Lord; therefore, he is slow to hearken to their prayers, **D&C 101:7–9**. Those who do not hearken to the commandments are chastened, **D&C 103:4** (Moses 4:4).

Heart. *See also* Born Again, Born of God; Broken Heart

A symbol of the mind and will of man and the figurative source of all emotions and feelings.

Love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, **Deut. 6:5** (Deut. 6:3–7; Matt. 22:37; Luke 10:27; D&C 59:5). The Lord sought a man after his own heart, **1 Sam. 13:14**.

Man looketh on the outward appearance, but the Lord looketh on the heart, **1 Sam.** 16:7. He that has clean hands and a pure heart will ascend to the hill of the Lord and be blessed, **Ps.** 24:3–5 (2 Ne. 25:16). As a man thinketh in his heart, so is he, **Prov.** 23:7. Elijah will turn the hearts of the fathers to the children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers, **Mal.** 4:5–6 (Luke 1:17; D&C 2:2; 110:14–15; 138:47; JS—H 1:38–39).

Blessed are the pure in heart, **Matt.** 5:8 (3 Ne. 12:8). A man speaks from the good or evil in his heart, **Luke** 6:45.

Follow the Son with full purpose of heart, **2 Ne.** 31:13. Have you been spiritually born of God and experienced a mighty change in your heart, **Alma** 5:14. Offer for a sacrifice unto the Lord a broken heart and a contrite spirit, **3 Ne.** 9:20 (3 Ne. 12:19; Ether 4:15; Moro. 6:2).

I will tell you in your mind and in your heart by the Holy Ghost, **D&C** 8:2.

Heaven. See also Celestial Glory; Kingdom of God or Kingdom of Heaven; Paradise

The term *heaven* has two basic meanings in the scriptures. (1) It is the place where God lives and the future home of the Saints (Gen. 28:12; Ps. 11:4; Matt. 6:9). (2) It is the expanse around the earth (Gen. 1:1, 17; Ex. 24:10). Heaven is clearly not *paradise*, which is the temporary place for the faithful spirits of those who have lived and died on this earth. Jesus visited paradise after His death on the cross, but on the third day, He informed Mary that He had not yet been to the Father (Luke 23:39–44; John 20:17; D&C 138:11–37).

I consider thy heavens, the work of thy fingers, **Ps.** 8:3. By the word of the Lord were the heavens made, **Ps.** 33:6. How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, **Isa.** 14:12 (2 Ne. 24:12). The heavens shall be rolled together as a scroll, **Isa.** 34:4. I create new heavens and a

new earth, **Isa.** 65:17. God will open the windows of heaven, **Mal.** 3:10.

Our Father which art in heaven, hallowed be thy name, **Matt.** 6:9 (3 Ne. 13:9). Paul was caught up to the third heaven, **2 Cor.** 12:2. There was silence in heaven, **Rev.** 8:1 (D&C 88:95–98).

If they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, **Mosiah** 2:41. Ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven, **3 Ne.** 12:45.

I shall come in the clouds of heaven, **D&C** 45:16. Elijah was taken to heaven without tasting death, **D&C** 110:13. The rights of the priesthood are connected with the powers of heaven, **D&C** 121:36. There are two kinds of beings in heaven, **D&C** 129:1.

Zion was taken up into heaven, **Moses** 7:23.

Heavenly Father. See Father in Heaven; God, Godhead

Hebrew. See also Israel

A Semitic language spoken by the children of Israel.

Hebrew was spoken by the Israelites until their return from Babylonian captivity, at which time Aramaic became the language of everyday conversation. During the time of Jesus, Hebrew was the language of the learned, of the law, and of religious literature.

Hebrews, Epistle to. See also Paul; Pauline Epistles

A book in the New Testament. Paul wrote this letter to Jewish members of the Church to persuade them that significant aspects of the law of Moses had been fulfilled in Christ and that the higher gospel law of Christ had replaced it. When Paul returned to Jerusalem at the end of his third mission (about A.D. 60), he found that many Jewish members of the Church were still committed to the law of Moses (Acts 21:20). This was at least ten years after a conference of the Church at Jerusalem had determined that certain ordinances

Hebron

of the law of Moses were not necessary for the salvation of gentile Christians. Apparently, soon thereafter Paul wrote to the Hebrews to show them by their own scripture and by sound reason why they should no longer practice the law of Moses.

Chapters 1 and 2 explain that Jesus is greater than the angels. Chapters 3–7 compare Jesus to Moses and to the law of Moses and testify that He is greater than both. They also teach that the Melchizedek Priesthood is greater than the Aaronic. Chapters 8–9 describe how the Mosaic ordinances prepared people for Christ's ministry and how Christ is the mediator of the new covenant (Alma 37:38–45; D&C 84:21–24). Chapter 10 is an exhortation to diligence and faithfulness. Chapter 11 is a discourse on faith. Chapter 12 gives admonitions and greetings. Chapter 13 relates the honorable nature of marriage and the importance of obedience.

Hebron

An ancient city of Judah, twenty miles (thirty-two kilometers) south of Jerusalem. It was the burying place of Abraham and his family (Gen. 49:29–32). It was David's capital during the early part of his reign (2 Sam. 5:3–5).

Heir

A person entitled to inherit physical or spiritual gifts. In the scriptures, the righteous are promised that they will become heirs to all that God has.

Abraham desired an heir, **Gen.** 15:2–5.

Abraham became an heir of the world through the righteousness of faith, **Rom.** 4:13. We are the children of God, and if children, then heirs, heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ, **Rom.** 8:16–17 (D&C 84:38). Thou art a son, an heir of God through Christ, **Gal.** 4:7. God hath appointed his Son an heir of all things, **Heb.** 1:2.

Those who look forward to a remission of their sins are heirs of the kingdom of God, **Mosiah** 15:11. The people

became children of Christ and heirs of the kingdom of God, **4 Ne.** 1:17.

Those who died without a knowledge of the gospel may become heirs of the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 137:7–8. The dead who repent are heirs of salvation, **D&C** 138:58–59.

Abraham became a rightful heir by his righteousness, **Ab.** 1:2.

Helaman, Son of Alma. *See also* Alma, Son of Alma; Anti-Nephi-Lehies; Helaman, Sons of

In the Book of Mormon, the oldest son of Alma, son of Alma (Alma 31:7). Helaman was a prophet and a military leader.

Alma entrusted his son Helaman with the records of his people and with the plates of the Jaredites, **Alma** 37:1–2, 21. Alma commanded Helaman to continue writing the history of his people, **Alma** 45–62. Helaman reestablished the Church, **Alma** 45:22–23. Two thousand young Ammonite warriors desired Helaman to be their leader, **Alma** 53:19, 22. Helaman and his stripling Ammonites battled the Lamanites and were preserved by faith, **Alma** 57:19–27.

Helaman, Son of Helaman

A prophet and record keeper in the Book of Mormon who taught the Nephite people. He was the grandson of Alma the Younger and father of the Nephi who was given power over all the elements. With his son Nephi, Helaman wrote the book of Helaman.

The book of Helaman: Chapters 1–2 describe a time of great political trouble. Chapters 3–4 record that Helaman and Moronihah, chief captain of the Nephite armies, were able finally to achieve peace for a time. However, in spite of the leadership of these good men, the people grew increasingly wicked. In Helaman 5:1–6:14 Nephi gave up the judgment seat, as his grandfather Alma had done, to teach the people. For a time the people repented.

In Helaman 6:15–12:26, however, the Nephite nation became wicked. The final chapters, 13–16, contain the extraordinary account of a prophet called Samuel the Lamanite who foretold the birth and Crucifixion of the Savior and the signs that would mark those events.

Helaman, Son of King Benjamin. *See also* Benjamin, Father of Mosiah

In the Book of Mormon, one of three sons of King Benjamin (Mosiah 1:2–8).

Helaman, Sons of. *See also* Anti-Nephi-Lehies; Helaman, Son of Alma

In the Book of Mormon, sons of converted Lamanites known as Ammonites who became warriors under Helaman's charge (Alma 53:16–22).

Helaman considered them worthy to be called his sons, **Alma** 56:10. Their mothers had taught them not to doubt the Lord's ability to deliver them, **Alma** 56:47. They defeated the Lamanites and were preserved by their faith such that none were slain, **Alma** 56:52–54, 56; 57:26.

Hell. *See also* Damnation; Death, Spiritual; Devil; Sons of Perdition

Latter-day revelation speaks of hell in at least two senses. First, it is the temporary abode in the spirit world for those who were disobedient in mortality. In this sense, hell has an end. The spirits there will be taught the gospel, and sometime following their repentance they will be resurrected to a degree of glory of which they are worthy. Those who will not repent, but are nevertheless not sons of perdition, will remain in hell throughout the Millennium. After these thousand years of torment, they will be resurrected to a celestial glory (**D&C** 76:81–86; 88:100–101).

Second, it is the permanent location of those who are not redeemed by the Atonement of Jesus Christ. In this sense, hell is permanent. It is for those

who are found “filthy still” (**D&C** 88:35, 102). This is the place where Satan, his angels, and the sons of perdition—those who have denied the Son after the Father has revealed Him—will dwell eternally (**D&C** 76:43–46).

The scriptures sometimes refer to hell as outer darkness.

David's soul shall not be left in hell, **Ps.** 16:10 (**Ps.** 86:13).

Go into hell, into that fire that never shall be quenched, **Mark** 9:43 (Mosiah 2:38). The rich man in hell lifts up his eyes, being in torment, **Luke** 16:22–23 (**D&C** 104:18). Death and hell delivered up the dead, **Rev.** 20:13.

There is a place prepared, yea, even that awful hell, **1 Ne.** 15:35. The will of the flesh giveth the spirit of the devil power to bring us down to hell, **2 Ne.** 2:29. Christ prepared the way for our deliverance from death and hell, **2 Ne.** 9:10–12. Those who remain filthy go into everlasting torment, **2 Ne.** 9:16. The devil cheateth their souls and leadeth them away carefully down to hell, **2 Ne.** 28:21. Jesus hath redeemed my soul from hell, **2 Ne.** 33:6. Loose yourselves from the pains of hell, **Jacob** 3:11. To be taken captive by the devil and led by his will to destruction are the chains of hell, **Alma** 12:11. The wicked are cast into outer darkness until the time of their resurrection, **Alma** 40:13–14. The filthy would be more miserable to dwell with God than to dwell in hell, **Morm.** 9:4.

The punishment which is given from my hand is endless punishment, **D&C** 19:10–12. Hell is a place prepared for the devil and his angels, **D&C** 29:37–38. Those who acknowledge God are delivered from death and the chains of hell, **D&C** 138:23.

Herod

A family of rulers in Judea near the time of Jesus Christ. They were important figures in many New Testament events. The family was founded by Herod the Great, who was fearful of

Herodias

the birth of the Savior (Matt. 2:3) and gave the order for the massacre of the infants at Bethlehem. His sons included Aristobulus; Herod Philip (Matt. 14:3; Mark 6:17); Herod Antipas, the tetrarch (Matt. 14:1; Luke 9:7; also known as King Herod, Mark 6:14); Archelaus (Matt. 2:22); and Philip, tetrarch of Iturea (Luke 3:1). Herod Agrippa I (Acts 12:1–23) and his sister Herodias (Matt. 14:3; Mark 6:17) were the children of Aristobulus. Herod Agrippa I had several children also mentioned in the New Testament, including Herod Agrippa II (Acts 25:13), Bernice (Acts 25:13), and Drusilla, wife of Felix (Acts 24:24).

Herodias

Sister of Herod Agrippa in the New Testament. She was married to her uncle, Herod Philip, by whom she had a daughter, Salome. She and Salome conspired to have John the Baptist beheaded (Matt. 14:3–11).

Hezekiah

A righteous king of the nation of Judah in the Old Testament. He reigned for twenty-nine years, during the time that Isaiah was the prophet in Judah (2 Kgs. 18–20; 2 Chr. 29–32; Isa. 36–39). Isaiah assisted him in reforming both church and state. He suppressed idolatry and reinstated the temple services. Hezekiah's life was extended fifteen years through prayer and faith (2 Kgs. 20:1–7). The early part of his reign was prosperous, but his rebellion against the king of Assyria (2 Kgs. 18:7) resulted in two Assyrian invasions: the first is described in Isaiah 10:24–32, the second in 2 Kings 18:13–19:7. In the second invasion, Jerusalem was saved by an angel of the Lord (2 Kgs. 19:35).

High Council

A council of twelve high priests.

In the early days of the restored Church, the term *high council* referred to two different governing bodies: (1) the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles of

the Church (D&C 107:33, 38) and (2) the high council serving within each of the stakes (D&C 102; 107:36).

High Priest. *See also* Aaronic Priesthood; Melchizedek Priesthood

An office in the priesthood. The scriptures speak of “high priest” in two senses: (1) an office in the Melchizedek Priesthood; and (2) under the law of Moses, the presiding officer of the Aaronic Priesthood.

The first sense applies to Jesus Christ as the great High Priest. Adam and all the patriarchs were also high priests. Today, three presiding high priests form the Presidency of the Church and preside over all other priesthood holders and Church members. Additional worthy men are ordained high priests as appropriate throughout the Church today. High priests may be called, set apart, and ordained as bishops (D&C 68:19; 107:69–71).

In the second sense, under the law of Moses, the presiding officer of the Aaronic Priesthood was called the high priest. The office was hereditary and came through the firstborn among the family of Aaron, Aaron himself being the first high priest of the Aaronic order (Ex. 28–29; Lev. 8; D&C 84:18).

Melchizedek was a priest of the most high God, **Gen.** 14:18 (Alma 13:14).

High priests were called and prepared from the foundation of the world, **Alma** 13:1–10.

High priests administer in spiritual things, **D&C** 107:10, 12, 17.

High Priesthood. *See* Melchizedek Priesthood

Himni. *See also* Mosiah, Son of Benjamin; Mosiah, Sons of

In the Book of Mormon, a son of King Mosiah. Himni went with his brothers to preach to the Lamanites (Mosiah 27:8–11, 34–37; 28:1–9).

Holiness. *See also* Holy; Pure, Purity; Sanctification

Spiritual and moral perfection. Holiness indicates purity of a person's heart and intent.

The members are to manifest that they are worthy of the Church by walking in holiness before the Lord, **D&C** 20:69. The Lord's house is a place of holiness, **D&C** 109:13.

Man of Holiness is one of God's names, **Moses** 6:57 (**Moses** 7:35).

Holy. *See also* Holiness; Pure, Purity; Sanctification

Sacred, having a godly character, or spiritually and morally pure. The opposite of holy is common or profane.

Ye shall be unto me a kingdom of priests, and an holy nation, **Ex.** 19:5–6 (1 **Pet.** 2:9). The Lord commanded Israel: Be holy, for I am holy, **Lev.** 11:44–45. Those with clean hands and a pure heart shall stand in his holy place, **Ps.** 24:3–4. Teach my people the difference between the holy and profane, **Ezek.** 44:23.

God hath called us with a holy calling, **2 Tim.** 1:8–9. From a child thou hast known the holy scriptures, **2 Tim.** 3:15. Holy men of God spake as moved upon by the Holy Ghost, **2 Pet.** 1:21.

All men are to be judged according to the truth and holiness which is in God, **2 Ne.** 2:10. The natural man becomes a Saint through the atonement of Christ, **Mosiah** 3:19. Walk after the holy order of God, **Alma** 7:22 (**Alma** 13:11–12). Three disciples were sanctified in the flesh and were made holy, **3 Ne.** 28:1–9, 36–39.

Trifle not with sacred things, **D&C** 6:12. You cannot write that which is sacred save it be given you from me, **D&C** 9:9. Ye shall bind yourselves to act in all holiness, **D&C** 43:9. My disciples shall stand in holy places, **D&C** 45:32. That which cometh from above is sacred, **D&C** 63:64. Little children are

holy, **D&C** 74:7. Consecrate that spot and it shall be made holy, **D&C** 124:44.

The Lord will gather his elect unto a holy city, **Moses** 7:62.

Holy Ghost. *See also* Baptism, Baptize; Comforter; Dove, Sign of the; Gift of the Holy Ghost; God, Godhead; Holy Spirit of Promise; Inspiration, Inspire; Revelation; Unpardonable Sin

The third member of the Godhead (1 **Jn.** 5:7; **D&C** 20:28). He is a personage of Spirit, not having a body of flesh and bones (**D&C** 130:22). The Holy Ghost is often referred to as the Spirit, or the Spirit of God.

The Holy Ghost performs several vital roles in the plan of salvation. (1) He bears witness of the Father and the Son (1 **Cor.** 12:3; 3 **Ne.** 28:11; **Ether** 12:41). (2) He reveals the truth of all things (**John** 14:26; 16:13; **Moro.** 10:5; **D&C** 39:6). (3) He sanctifies those who have repented and become baptized (**John** 3:5; 3 **Ne.** 27:20; **Moses** 6:64–68). (4) He is the Holy Spirit of Promise (**D&C** 76:50–53; 132:7, 18–19, 26).

The power of the Holy Ghost can come upon a person before baptism and witness that the gospel is true. But the right to have the constant companionship of the Holy Ghost, whenever one is worthy, is a gift that can be received only by the laying on of hands by a Melchizedek Priesthood holder after authorized baptism into the true Church of Jesus Christ.

Jesus taught that all sins could be forgiven except blasphemy against the Holy Ghost (**Matt.** 12:31–32; **Mark** 3:28–29; **Luke** 12:10; **Heb.** 6:4–8; **D&C** 76:34–35).

The Spirit causes men to walk in God's statutes, **Ezek.** 36:27.

The Apostles were commissioned to baptize in the name of the Father, Son, and the Holy Ghost, **Matt.** 28:19. The Holy Ghost shall teach you all things, **John** 14:26. Holy men spake as

Holy of Holies

they were moved by the Holy Ghost, **2 Pet.** 1:21.

Nephi was led by the Spirit, **1 Ne.** 4:6. The mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them by the power of the Holy Ghost, **1 Ne.** 10:17–19. The Holy Ghost shows all things that you should do, **2 Ne.** 32:5. By the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things, **Moro.** 10:5.

The Holy Ghost will tell you in your mind and in your heart, **D&C** 8:2. The Spirit leadeth to do good, **D&C** 11:12. The Holy Ghost knoweth all things, **D&C** 35:19. The Holy Ghost teaches the peaceable things of the kingdom, **D&C** 36:2 (**D&C** 39:6). If ye receive not the Spirit, ye shall not teach, **D&C** 42:14. The Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and the Son, **D&C** 42:17 (**1 Cor.** 12:3; **3 Ne.** 11:32, 35–36). To some it is given by the Holy Ghost to know that Jesus Christ is the Son of God, **D&C** 46:13. Whatsoever they shall speak when moved upon by the Holy Ghost shall be scripture, **D&C** 68:4. The Holy Ghost shall be shed forth in bearing record unto all things ye shall say, **D&C** 100:8. The Holy Ghost shall be thy constant companion, **D&C** 121:45–46.

Holy of Holies. *See also* Tabernacle; Temple, House of the Lord

The most sacred room in the tabernacle of Moses and later in the temple. The Holy of Holies is also called the “most holy place” (**Ex.** 26:33–34).

Holy One of Israel. *See* Jesus Christ

Holy Spirit of Promise. *See also* Holy Ghost

The Holy Ghost is the Holy Spirit of Promise (**Acts** 2:33). He confirms as acceptable to God the righteous acts, ordinances, and covenants of men. The Holy Spirit of Promise witnesses to the Father that the saving ordinances have been performed properly and that the covenants associated with them have been kept.

They who are sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise receive all that the Father has, **D&C** 76:51–60 (**Eph.** 1:13–14). All covenants and performances must be sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise to have force after this life, **D&C** 132:7, 18–19, 26.

Home. *See also* Family

The home should be the center of gospel and family activities.

A man shall be free at home to cheer up his wife, **Deut.** 24:5.

He sent him away to his house, **Mark** 8:26. Let children learn to show piety at home, **1 Tim.** 5:4. Be discreet, chaste, keepers at home, **Titus** 2:5.

Go to your homes and ponder the things I have said, **3 Ne.** 17:2–3. I did urge them to fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes, **Morm.** 2:23.

Fathers are commanded to be diligent and concerned at home, **D&C** 93:43–44, 48–50.

Homosexual Behavior. *See also* Adultery; Sensual, Sensuality

Sexual association of individuals of the same gender. God forbids sexual activity of this kind.

Bring them out unto us, that we may know them, **Gen.** 19:1–11 (**Moses** 5:51–53). Thou shalt not lie with mankind; it is an abomination, **Lev.** 18:22 (**Lev.** 20:13). There shall be no sodomite of the sons of Israel, **Deut.** 23:17. They declare their sin as Sodom, they hide it not, **Isa.** 3:9 (**2 Ne.** 13:9).

Men burned in their lust one toward another, **Rom.** 1:27. Abusers of themselves with mankind will not inherit the kingdom of God, **1 Cor.** 6:9–10. The law is not made for a righteous man, but for them that defile themselves with mankind, **1 Tim.** 1:9–10. Those who go after strange flesh are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire, **Jude** 1:7.

Honest, Honesty. *See also* Integrity

To be sincere, truthful, and without deceit.

They that deal truly are the Lord's delight, **Prov.** 12:22. Pay that which thou hast vowed, **Eccl.** 5:4–5.

We have renounced the hidden things of dishonesty, **2 Cor.** 4:1–2. Have your conversation honest, **1 Pet.** 2:12.

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell, **2 Ne.** 9:34. The Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not, **Jacob** 4:13. Whosoever borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, **Mosiah** 4:28 (**D&C** 136:25). See that you deal justly, judge righteously, and do good, **Alma** 41:14.

Let every man deal honestly, **D&C** 51:9. All who know their hearts are honest are accepted of me, **D&C** 97:8. Honest, wise, and good men should be sought for political offices, **D&C** 98:4–10. Diligently search to return that which thy neighbor has lost, **D&C** 136:26.

We believe in being honest, **A of F** 1:13.

Honor. *See also* Esteem; Reverence

As usually used in the scriptures, to show respect and reverence to someone or something.

Honor thy father and thy mother, **Ex.** 20:12 (1 **Ne.** 17:55; **Mosiah** 13:20). Honor the Lord with thy substance, **Prov.** 3:9.

If any man serve me, him will my Father honor, **John** 12:26. Husbands should give honor to their wives, **1 Pet.** 3:7.

With their lips only do they honor the Lord, **2 Ne.** 27:25 (**Isa.** 29:13). I seek not for the honor of the world, **Alma** 60:36.

The devil rebelled against me, saying, Give me thine honor, which is my power, **D&C** 29:36. The faithful shall be crowned with honor, **D&C** 75:5 (**D&C** 124:55). The Lord delights to honor those who serve him, **D&C** 76:5. They are not chosen because they aspire to the honors of men, **D&C** 121:34–35.

We believe in honoring and sustaining the law, **A of F** 1:12 (**D&C** 134:6).

Hope. *See also* Faith

The confident expectation of and longing for the promised blessings of righteousness. The scriptures often speak of hope as anticipation of eternal life through faith in Jesus Christ.

Blessed is the man whose hope the Lord is, **Jer.** 17:7. The Lord will be the hope of his people, **Joel** 3:16.

We have hope through patience and the scriptures, **Rom.** 15:4. God hath begotten us unto a lively hope in the resurrection of Christ, **1 Pet.** 1:3. Every man that hath this hope purifieth himself, **1 Jn.** 3:2–3.

Ye must press forward, having a perfect brightness of hope, **2 Ne.** 31:20. See that ye have faith, hope, and charity, **Alma** 7:24 (1 **Cor.** 13:13; **Moro.** 10:20). I wish that ye would hearken unto my words, having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life, **Alma** 13:27–29. If ye have faith, ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true, **Alma** 32:21 (**Heb.** 11:1). Hope comes of faith and maketh an anchor to the soul, **Ether** 12:4 (**Heb.** 6:17–19). Man must hope or he cannot receive an inheritance, **Ether** 12:32. Mormon spoke concerning faith, hope, and charity, **Moro.** 7:1. Ye shall hope through the atonement of Jesus Christ to be raised to eternal life, **Moro.** 7:40–43. The Holy Ghost fills you with hope, **Moro.** 8:26 (**Rom.** 15:13).

They departed mortal life, firm in the hope of a glorious resurrection, **D&C** 138:14.

Hosanna

A word from Hebrew that means “please save us” and is used in praise and supplication.

At the Feast of Tabernacles, which celebrated the Lord's deliverance of Israel into the promised land, people chanted the words of Psalm 118 and waved palm branches. At the Lord's triumphal entry into Jerusalem, the multitudes cried

“Hosanna” and spread palm branches for Jesus to ride upon, thus demonstrating their understanding that Jesus was the same Lord who had delivered Israel anciently (Ps. 118:25–26; Matt. 21:9, 15; Mark 11:9–10; John 12:13). These people recognized Christ as the long-awaited Messiah. The word *Hosanna* has become a celebration of the Messiah in all ages (1 Ne. 11:6; 3 Ne. 11:14–17). The hosanna shout was included in the dedication of the Kirtland Temple (D&C 109:79) and is now a part of the dedication of modern temples.

Hosea

An Old Testament prophet who prophesied in the northern kingdom of Israel during the latter part of the reign of Jeroboam II. He lived during a time of national decline and ruin, the result of the sin of Israel.

The book of Hosea: The book’s basic theme is the love of God for His people. All His chastisements were inflicted in love, and Israel’s restoration shall be due to His love (Hosea 2:19; 14:4). In contrast, Hosea shows Israel’s treachery and infidelity. Yet God is able to look forward to Israel’s final redemption (Hosea 11:12–14:9).

House of Israel. *See* Israel

House of the Lord. *See* Temple, House of the Lord

Humble, Humility. *See also* Broken Heart; Meek, Meekness; Poor; Pride; Weakness

To make meek and teachable, or the condition of being meek and teachable. Humility includes recognizing our dependence upon God and desiring to submit to His will.

God led thee forty years in the wilderness to humble thee, **Deut.** 8:2. I humbled my soul with fasting, **Ps.** 35:13. Better is a poor and wise child than an old and foolish king, **Eccl.** 4:13. The

Lord dwells with him that is humble, **Isa.** 57:15.

Whosoever shall humble himself as this little child, the same is greatest in the kingdom of heaven, **Matt.** 18:4. He that shall humble himself shall be exalted, **Matt.** 23:12 (Luke 14:11; 18:14). Jesus humbled himself and became obedient unto death, **Philip.** 2:8 (Luke 22:42; 23:46). God resisteth the proud, and giveth grace to the humble, **1 Pet.** 5:5–6 (2 Ne. 9:42).

Humble yourselves in the depths of humility, **Mosiah** 4:11 (2 Ne. 9:42; 3 Ne. 12:2). Have ye been sufficiently humble, **Alma** 5:27–28. The more humble part of the people became stronger in their humility, **Hel.** 3:33–35. I give unto men weakness that they may be humble, **Ether** 12:27.

Humility is a qualification for baptism, **D&C** 20:37. Humble yourselves before me and you shall see me and know that I am, **D&C** 67:10. Be thou humble and the Lord shall give thee answer to thy prayers, **D&C** 112:10. Let him that is ignorant learn wisdom by humbling himself, **D&C** 136:32. The Spirit is sent forth to enlighten the humble, **D&C** 136:33.

Husband. *See* Family; Marriage, Marry

Hyde, Orson

A member of the first Quorum of the Twelve Apostles called in this dispensation (D&C 68:1–3; 75:13; 102:3; 124:128–129). He performed many missions for the Church, including dedicating the Holy Land in 1841 for the return of the Jewish people.

Hymn. *See also* Music; Sing

A song of praise to God.

A hymn was sung by the Twelve Apostles before the Lord retired to Gethsemane, **Matt.** 26:30.

The Lord called Emma Smith to make a selection of sacred hymns, **D&C** 25:11. The song of the righteous is a prayer

unto me, and shall be answered with a blessing upon their heads, **D&C** 25:12. Praise the Lord with singing and with music, **D&C** 136:28.

I AM. *See also* Jehovah; Jesus Christ

One of the names of the Lord Jesus Christ.

God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM, **Ex.** 3:14–15. I am the Lord, **Ex.** 6:2–3.

Before Abraham was, I am, **John** 8:56–59.

Listen to the voice of Jesus Christ, the Great I Am, **D&C** 29:1 (**D&C** 38:1; 39:1).

Idle, Idleness

Inactive and uninvolved in righteous works.

If any would not work, neither should he eat, **2 Thes.** 3:10.

They did become an idle people, full of mischief, **2 Ne.** 5:24. Refrain from idleness, **Alma** 38:12.

He that is idle shall not eat the bread of the laborer, **D&C** 42:42. Wo unto you who will not labor with your own hands, **D&C** 56:17. Be anxiously engaged in a good cause, **D&C** 58:27. Cease to be idle, **D&C** 88:124.

Idolatry

The worship of idols or an excessive attachment or devotion to anything.

Thou shalt have no other gods before me, **Ex.** 20:3 (Mosiah 12:35; 13:12–13). If thou walk after other gods, ye shall surely perish, **Deut.** 8:19. Stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry, **1 Sam.** 15:23. Thou hast discovered thyself to another than me, **Isa.** 57:8. Thou hast praised the gods of silver and gold, **Dan.** 5:23.

Ye cannot serve God and mammon, **Matt.** 6:24. Covetousness is idolatry, **Col.** 3:5. Children, keep yourselves from idols, **1 Jn.** 5:21.

Wo unto those that worship idols, **2 Ne.** 9:37. The idolatry of the people of Nephi brought upon them their wars and destructions, **Alma** 50:21.

Every man walketh after the image of his own god, **D&C** 1:16. Let them labor with their own hands that there be no idolatry, **D&C** 52:39.

Abraham's father was led away by idolatry, **Ab.** 1:27.

Immanuel. *See also* Jesus Christ

One of the names for Jesus Christ. It comes from words in Hebrew that mean "God with us."

Immanuel is a name-title given as a sign of God's deliverance (**Isa.** 7:14). Isaiah's reference to Immanuel is specifically identified by Matthew as a prophecy of Jesus' birth into mortality (**Matt.** 1:18–25). The name also appears in latter-day scripture (**2 Ne.** 17:14; 18:8; **D&C** 128:22).

Immersion. *See* Baptism, Baptize—Baptism by immersion

Immorality. *See* Chastity; Sensual, Sensuality; Sexual Immorality; Wicked, Wickedness

Immortal, Immortality. *See also* Atoned, Atonement; Jesus Christ; Mortal, Mortality; Resurrection; Salvation

The condition of living forever in a resurrected state, not subject to physical death.

He is risen, **Mark** 16:6. Even so in Christ shall all be made alive, **1 Cor.** 15:22. Death is swallowed up when this mortal shall put on immortality, **1 Cor.** 15:53–54. Christ hath abolished death and brought immortality, **2 Tim.** 1:10.

Immortality is the restoring of the spirit to the body, **2 Ne.** 9:13. Spirits united with their bodies become immortal, never to die again, **Alma** 11:45.

The faithful will be crowned with immortality and eternal life, **D&C** 75:5. The earth will be sanctified and immortal, **D&C** 77:1 (**D&C** 130:9).

God's work and glory is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man, **Moses** 1:39.

Infant Baptism

Infant Baptism. *See also* Account, Accountable, Accountability; Baptism, Baptize—Baptism not for infants; Child, Children; Salvation—Salvation of children

The unnecessary practice of baptizing babies and children who are under the age of accountability, which is eight years old. The Lord condemns infant baptism (Moro. 8:10–21). Children are born innocent and without sin. Satan has no power to tempt children until they begin to become accountable (D&C 29:46–47) so they have no need to repent or be baptized. Children should be baptized at the age of eight (D&C 68:25–27).

Innocence, Innocent

Blameless or sinless.

Before the fall, Adam and Eve were in a state of innocence, **2 Ne.** 2:23. The blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness, **Alma** 14:11.

Every spirit of man was innocent in the beginning, **D&C** 93:38. The innocent are not to be condemned with the unjust, **D&C** 104:7. Joseph and Hyrum Smith were innocent of any crime, **D&C** 135:6–7.

Children are whole from the foundation of the earth, **Moses** 6:54.

Inspiration, Inspire. *See also* Holy Ghost; Revelation

Divine guidance given to man by God. Inspiration often comes by the Spirit in a variety of ways to the mind or heart of a person.

After the fire came a still small voice, **1 Kgs.** 19:12.

The Holy Ghost will teach you all things and bring all things to your remembrance, **John** 14:26. The Spirit of truth will guide you into all truth, **John** 16:13.

I was led by the Spirit, not knowing beforehand the things which I should do, **1 Ne.** 4:6. The voice of the Lord came into my mind, **Enos** 1:10. Everything

which inviteth and enticeth to do good is inspired of God, **Moro.** 7:13–16.

Did I not speak peace to your mind, **D&C** 6:23. I will tell you in your mind and in your heart, **D&C** 8:2. My Spirit shall enlighten your mind, which shall fill your soul with joy, **D&C** 11:13. It shall be given thee in the very moment what thou shalt speak or write, **D&C** 24:6 (D&C 84:85). The still small voice whispers through and pierces all things, **D&C** 85:6.

Integrity. *See also* Honest, Honesty; Righteous, Righteousness

Righteousness, honesty, and sincerity.

Till I die I will not remove mine integrity from me, **Job** 27:5. The just man walks in his integrity, **Prov.** 20:7.

They were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted, **Alma** 53:20.

The Lord loved Hyrum Smith because of the integrity of his heart, **D&C** 124:15.

Intelligence, Intelligences. *See also* Light, Light of Christ; Spirit; Truth

Intelligence has several meanings, three of which are: (1) It is the light of truth that gives life and light to all things in the universe. It has always existed. (2) The word *intelligences* may also refer to spirit children of God. (3) The scriptures also may speak of intelligence as referring to the spirit element that existed before we were begotten as spirit children.

Intelligence cleaveth unto intelligence, **D&C** 88:40. Intelligence was not created or made, **D&C** 93:29. All intelligence is independent in that sphere in which God has placed it, **D&C** 93:30. The glory of God is intelligence, **D&C** 93:36–37. Intelligence acquired in this life rises with us in the resurrection, **D&C** 130:18–19.

The Lord rules over all the intelligences, **Abr.** 3:21. The Lord showed Abraham the intelligences that were

organized before the world was, **Abr.** 3:22.

Isaac. *See also* Abraham—The seed of Abraham

An Old Testament patriarch. His birth to Abraham and Sarah in their old age was a miracle (Gen. 15:4–6; 17:15–21; 21:1–8). Abraham's willingness to offer Isaac was a similitude of God and His Only Begotten Son (Jacob 4:5). Isaac was heir to the promises of the Abrahamic covenant (Gen. 21:9–12; 1 Ne. 17:40; D&C 27:10).

Isaac was born, **Gen.** 21:1–7. Was to be sacrificed on mount Moriah, **Gen.** 22:1–19 (D&C 101:4). Was married, **Gen.** 24. Dealt with his sons, **Gen.** 27:1–28:9.

Has received exaltation with Abraham and Jacob, **D&C** 132:37 (Matt. 8:11).

Isaiah

A prophet of the Old Testament who prophesied from 740–701 B.C. As King Hezekiah's chief adviser, Isaiah had great religious and political influence.

Jesus quoted Isaiah more frequently than He quoted any other prophet. Isaiah is also quoted frequently by Peter, John, and Paul in the New Testament. The Book of Mormon and the Doctrine and Covenants contain more quotes from Isaiah than from any other prophet and provide much help in interpreting Isaiah. Nephi taught his people from the writings of Isaiah (2 Ne. 12–24; Isa. 2–14). The Lord told the Nephites that "great are the words of Isaiah" and that all things Isaiah prophesied would be fulfilled (3 Ne. 23:1–3).

The book of Isaiah: A book in the Old Testament. Many of Isaiah's prophecies deal with the coming of the Redeemer, both in His earthly ministry (Isa. 9:6) and as the Great King at the last day (Isa. 63). He also prophesied much about Israel's future.

Chapter 1 is a prologue to the rest of the book. Isaiah 7:14; 9:6–7; 11:1–5; 53; and 61:1–3 foreshadow the mission

of the Savior. Chapters 2, 11, 12, and 35 deal with events in the latter days, when the gospel will be restored, Israel will be gathered, and the thirsty land will blossom as the rose. Chapter 29 contains a prophecy of the coming forth of the Book of Mormon (2 Ne. 27). Chapters 40–46 proclaim the superiority of Jehovah as the true God over the idol gods of the pagan worshippers. The remaining chapters, 47–66, deal with events in the final restoration of Israel and the establishment of Zion, with the Lord dwelling among His people.

Ishmael, Father-in-Law of Nephi. *See also* Lehi, Father of Nephi

A man in the Book of Mormon who, with his family, joined Lehi's family in their journey to the promised land.

Nephi and his brothers returned to Jerusalem and persuaded Ishmael and his family to accompany Lehi and his family to the promised land, **1 Ne.** 7:2–5. The two families intermarried, **1 Ne.** 16:7. Ishmael died in the wilderness, **1 Ne.** 16:34.

Ishmael, Son of Abraham. *See also* Abraham; Hagar

In the Old Testament, a son of Abraham and Hagar, Sarah's Egyptian handmaid (Gen. 16:11–16). The Lord promised both Abraham and Hagar that Ishmael would become the father of a great nation (Gen. 21:8–21).

The covenant came through Isaac rather than Ishmael, **Gen.** 17:19–21 (Gal. 4:22–5:1). God blessed Ishmael that he would be fruitful, **Gen.** 17:20. Ishmael helped bury Abraham, **Gen.** 25:8–9. Ishmael's twelve sons were named, **Gen.** 25:12–16. Ishmael died, **Gen.** 25:17–18. Esau took Ishmael's daughter, Mahalath, to be his wife, **Gen.** 28:9.

Israel. *See also* Abraham—The seed of Abraham; Adoption; Jacob, Son of Isaac

The Lord gave the name Israel to

Israel

Jacob, the son of Isaac and grandson of Abraham in the Old Testament (Gen. 32:28; 35:10). The name Israel can refer to Jacob himself, his descendants, or to the kingdom those descendants once possessed in Old Testament times (2 Sam. 1:24; 23:3). After Moses led the children of Israel out of Egyptian bondage (Ex. 3–14), they were ruled over by judges for over three hundred years. Beginning with King Saul, kings ruled over united Israel until the death of Solomon, when ten tribes revolted from Rehoboam to form a separate nation. After the kingdom of Israel was divided, the northern tribes, as the larger part, kept the name Israel, while the southern kingdom was called Judah. The land of Canaan is also called Israel today. In another sense, Israel means a true believer in Christ (Rom. 10:1; 11:7; Gal. 6:16; Eph. 2:12).

The twelve tribes of Israel: Abraham's grandson Jacob, whose name was changed to Israel, had twelve sons. Their descendants have become known as the twelve tribes of Israel or the children of Israel. These are the twelve tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun (the sons of Jacob and Leah); Dan and Naphtali (the sons of Jacob and Bilhah); Gad and Asher (the sons of Jacob and Zilpah); Joseph and Benjamin (the sons of Jacob and Rachel) (Gen. 29:32–30:24; 35:16–18).

Jacob gave each tribal leader a blessing before his death (Gen. 49:1–28). For further information, see the name of each son of Jacob.

Reuben, the firstborn son of Jacob's first wife, Leah, lost his birthright blessing and double portion of inheritance because of immorality (Gen. 49:3–4). The birthright then went to Joseph, who was the firstborn son of Jacob's second wife, Rachel (1 Chr. 5:1–2). Levi, whose tribe the Lord had chosen to serve as His priesthood ministers, did not receive an inheritance because of their special calling to minister among all the tribes. This allowed Joseph's

double portion to be shared by Joseph's sons, Ephraim and Manasseh (1 Chr. 5:1; Jer. 31:9), who were counted as separate tribes of Israel (JST, Gen. 48:5–6 [Appendix]).

Members of the tribe of Judah were to be the rulers until the Messiah came (Gen. 49:10; JST, Gen. 50:24 [Appendix]). In the last days the tribe of Ephraim has the privilege of carrying the message of the Restoration of the gospel to the world and gathering scattered Israel (Deut. 33:13–17). The time will come when through the gospel of Jesus Christ, Ephraim will have a leadership role in uniting all the tribes of Israel (Isa. 11:12–13; D&C 133:26–34).

The scattering of Israel: The Lord scattered and afflicted the twelve tribes of Israel because of their unrighteousness and rebellion. However, the Lord also used this scattering of His chosen people among the nations of the world to bless those nations.

I will scatter you among the heathen, **Lev.** 26:33. The Lord shall scatter thee among all people, **Deut.** 28:25, 37, 64. I will deliver them to be removed to all the kingdoms of the earth, **Jer.** 29:18–19. I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, **Amos** 9:9 (Zech. 10:9).

Jesus was sent to the lost sheep of the house of Israel, **Matt.** 15:24. I have other sheep which are not of this fold, **John** 10:16.

Israel shall be scattered upon all the face of the earth, **1 Ne.** 22:3–8. Jacob sets forth Zenos's allegory of the tame and wild olive trees, **Jacob** 5–6. The work of the Father will commence among the dispersed tribes, **3 Ne.** 21:26.

The gathering of Israel: The house of Israel shall be gathered together in the last days before the coming of Christ (A of F 1:10). The Lord gathers His people Israel when they accept Him and keep His commandments.

He will lift up an ensign and they shall come, **Isa.** 5:26. With great mercies will I gather thee, **Isa.** 54:7. Israel and

Judah are to be gathered to their lands, **Jer.** 30:3. The Lord shall gather the house of Israel from the people among whom they are scattered, **Ezek.** 28:25.

In the dispensation of the fulness of times he will gather in one all things in Christ, **Eph.** 1:10.

After Israel is scattered, they will be gathered, **1 Ne.** 15:12–17. The Lord will gather in all people of the house of Israel, **1 Ne.** 19:16 (3 **Ne.** 16:5). They shall be brought out of darkness and know that the Lord is their Savior, **1 Ne.** 22:12. God gathers and numbers his children, **1 Ne.** 22:25. The nations of the Gentiles shall carry Israel forth to the lands of their inheritance, **2 Ne.** 10:8 (3 **Ne.** 16:4). My people and my word shall be gathered as one, **2 Ne.** 29:13–14.

The elders are called to gather the elect, **D&C** 29:7 (**D&C** 39:11). I will gather mine elect, **D&C** 33:6. Gather so that I may give you my law and that you may be endowed, **D&C** 38:31–33. I will recover my people, who are of the house of Israel, **D&C** 39:11. The Saints shall come forth, **D&C** 45:46. Moses delivered the keys of the gathering, **D&C** 110:11.

Righteousness and truth will sweep the earth and gather out the Lord's elect, **Moses** 7:62. The gathering is compared to the gathering of eagles to a carcass, **JS—M** 1:27.

The ten lost tribes of Israel: The ten tribes of Israel made up the northern kingdom of Israel and were carried away captive into Assyria in 721 B.C. At that time they went to the "north countries" and became lost to the knowledge of others. In the last days they will return.

I will say to the north, Give up, **Isa.** 43:6. These shall come from the north, **Isa.** 49:12 (1 **Ne.** 21:12). Judah and Israel shall come together out of the land of the north, **Jer.** 3:18. The Lord liveth who brought up the children of Israel from the land of the north, **Jer.** 16:14–16. I

will bring them from the north country, **Jer.** 31:8.

The Nephites and the Jews shall have the words of the lost tribes of Israel, **2 Ne.** 29:12–13. I go to show myself unto the lost tribes of Israel, **3 Ne.** 17:4. When the gospel is preached to the remnant of the house of Israel, the lost tribes will be gathered home to the land of their inheritance, **3 Ne.** 21:26–29.

Moses committed the keys of the gathering of Israel to Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery, **D&C** 110:11. They who are in the north countries shall come in remembrance before the Lord, **D&C** 133:26–32.

We believe in the literal gathering of Israel, **A of F** 1:10.

Issachar. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

A son of Jacob and Leah in the Old Testament (Gen. 30:17–18; 35:23; 46:13). His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

The tribe of Issachar: Jacob's blessing to Issachar is found in Genesis 49:14–15. After settling in Canaan, the tribe received some of the richest land of Palestine, including the plain of Esdraelon. Within Issachar's borders were several important places in Jewish history, for example, Carmel, Megiddo, Dothan, Gilboa, Jezreel, Tabor, and Nazareth (Josh. 19:17–23).

Jackson County, Missouri (USA). *See also* New Jerusalem

The gathering place of the Saints in the last days; that is, the center place where they will establish the New Jerusalem (**D&C** 57–58; 82; 101:69–71; 105:28).

Jacob, Son of Isaac. *See also* Esau; Isaac; Israel

An Old Testament patriarch and prophet; the younger of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah (Gen. 25:19–26). Jacob obtained the birthright over his brother Esau. This was due to Jacob's

worthiness and marrying in the covenant, while Esau despised his birthright and married outside the covenant (Gen. 25:30–34; 26:34–35; 27; 28:6–9; Heb. 12:16).

Rebekah learned from the Lord that Esau would serve Jacob, **Gen.** 25:23. Purchased the birthright from Esau, **Gen.** 25:29–34. Dreamed of a ladder to heaven, **Gen.** 28. Married Leah and Rachel, **Gen.** 29:1–30. Had twelve sons and one daughter, **Gen.** 29:31–30:24; 35:16–20. Married Bilhah and Zilpah, **Gen.** 30:3–4, 9. Name was changed to Israel, **Gen.** 32:28. Saw God face to face, **Gen.** 32:30. Favored Joseph, **Gen.** 37:3. Went to Egypt with his family, **Gen.** 46:1–7. Blessed his sons and their posterity, **Gen.** 49. Died, **Gen.** 49:33.

Kept the commandments and is today exalted upon a throne in heaven, in company with Abraham and Isaac, **D&C** 132:37.

Jacob, Son of Lehi. *See also* Lehi, Father of Nephi

A prophet in the Book of Mormon and author of several sermons in the books of 2 Nephi and Jacob (2 Ne. 6–11; Jacob 1–7).

The book of Jacob: The third book in the Book of Mormon. Chapter 1 tells that Nephi transferred the records to Jacob and then consecrated Jacob and his brother Joseph to be priests and teachers to the people. Chapters 2–4 are sermons admonishing the people to be morally clean. Jacob also taught of the coming of a redeeming Messiah, and he gave reasons why some in Israel would not accept Him at His coming. Chapters 5–6 contain Jacob's testimony and a prophetic allegory on the history and mission of the people of Israel. Chapter 7 contains an account of a learned rebel named Sherem, who was overpowered by the divine testimony of Jacob.

James, Brother of the Lord

In the New Testament, a brother of

the Lord (Gal. 1:19) and of Joses, Simon, Judas, and some sisters (Matt. 13:55–56; Mark 6:3; Jude 1:1). He was also known as James the Just and occupied an important position in the Church in Jerusalem (Acts 12:17; 15:13; 1 Cor. 15:7; Gal. 2:9–12). He probably wrote the epistle of James.

The epistle of James: A book in the New Testament. Originally it was a letter addressed to the twelve tribes of Israel scattered abroad and was probably written from Jerusalem. The epistle contains some clearly stated items about practical religion, including the important advice in chapter 1 that if a person lacks wisdom, he should ask God for help (James 1:5–6; JS—H 1:9–20). Chapter 2 deals with faith and works. Chapters 3–4 speak of the need to control the tongue and admonish the Saints not to speak evil of one another. Chapter 5 encourages the Saints to have patience and to call for the elders for a blessing when sick; it also teaches of the blessings of helping to convert others.

James, Son of Alphaeus

One of the Twelve Apostles chosen by Jesus during His mortal ministry (Matt. 10:3; Mark 3:18; Luke 6:15; Acts 1:13).

James, Son of Zebedee

One of the Twelve Apostles chosen by Jesus during His mortal ministry. He was the brother of John. He was one of three Apostles chosen to be with Jesus on certain special occasions: at the raising of the daughter of Jairus (Mark 5:37), at the Transfiguration (Matt. 17:1; Mark 9:2; Luke 9:28), and at Gethsemane (Matt. 26:37; Mark 14:33). With Peter and John, he restored the Melchizedek Priesthood to the earth by ordaining Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery (**D&C** 27:12; 128:20; JS—H 1:72).

Japheth. *See also* Noah, Bible Patriarch

The eldest son of Noah, an Old Testament prophet (Moses 8:12).

Noah begat Japheth, **Gen.** 5:32 (Gen. 6:10; Moses 8:12). Japheth and his wife entered Noah's ark, **Gen.** 7:13. Japheth came out of the ark, **Gen.** 9:18. God shall enlarge Japheth, **Gen.** 9:27.

Jared. *See also* Jared, Brother of; Jaredites

A Book of Mormon leader who, with his brother, led a colony of people from the Tower of Babel to a promised land in the western hemisphere (Ether 1:33–2:1).

Jared asked his brother to pray that the Lord not confound the language of their families and friends, **Ether** 1:34–37. Journeyed to the sea and dwelt there for four years, **Ether** 2:13. Sailed to the promised land, **Ether** 6:4–12.

Jared, Brother of. *See also* Jared; Jaredites

A Book of Mormon prophet. He and his brother founded the Jaredite nation when they led a colony of people from the Tower of Babel to a promised land in the western hemisphere (Ether 1–6). He was a man of such great faith that he spoke with the Lord face to face (D&C 17:1). His story is recorded in the book of Ether.

The brother of Jared was a large and mighty man, and highly favored of the Lord, **Ether** 1:34. Because of his faith, the brother of Jared saw the finger of the Lord, **Ether** 3:6–9 (Ether 12:20). Christ showed his spirit body to the brother of Jared, **Ether** 3:13–20. There never were greater things made manifest than those which were made manifest to the brother of Jared, **Ether** 4:4. The brother of Jared warned his people against a monarchy, **Ether** 6:22–23. The Lord showed all things to the brother of Jared, **Ether** 12:21. The brother of Jared was mighty in writing, **Ether** 12:24. Through faith the brother of Jared moved mount Zerin, **Ether** 12:30.

Jaredites. *See also* Book of Mormon; Jared; Jared, Brother of

People in the Book of Mormon who were descendants of Jared, his brother, and their friends (Ether 1:33–41). They were led by God from the Tower of Babel to the Americas, a promised land (Ether 1:42–43; 2–3; 6:1–18). Although their nation had at one time millions of people, they were all destroyed by civil war brought on by wickedness (Ether 14–15).

Jarom

In the Book of Mormon, a son of Enos and a great-grandson of Lehi. He kept the Nephites' records for sixty years, 420–361 B.C. (Enos 1:25; Jarom 1:13). He was a faithful man who chose to not write very much in the historical record (Jarom 1:2).

The book of Jarom: There are only fifteen verses in this book in the Book of Mormon. Jarom recorded that the Nephites continued to live the law of Moses and look forward to the coming of Christ. They were led by kings who were mighty men of faith. They prospered as they heeded their prophets, priests, and teachers.

Jealous, Jealousy. *See also* Envy

As used in the scriptures, the word *jealous* has two meanings: (1) to be fervent and to have sensitive and deep feelings about someone or something, and (2) to be envious of someone or suspicious that another will gain some advantage.

To have fervent feelings: I the Lord am a jealous God, **Ex.** 20:5 (Deut. 5:9; 6:15; Mosiah 11:22). I will be jealous for my holy name, **Ezek.** 39:25. I am jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion, **Zech.** 1:14.

To be envious or suspicious: Jealousy is the rage of a man, **Prov.** 6:32–35.

Akish began to be jealous of his son, **Ether** 9:7.

Strip yourselves from jealousies and fears, **D&C** 67:10.

Jehoshaphat

Jehoshaphat

In the Old Testament, a faithful king of Judah (1 Kgs. 15:24; 22).

Jehovah. *See also* I AM; Jesus Christ

The covenant or proper name of the God of Israel. It denotes "the eternal I AM" (Ex. 3:14; John 8:58). Jehovah is the premortal Jesus Christ and came to earth as a son of Mary (Mosiah 3:8; 15:1; 3 Ne. 15:1–5). Usually, when the word *Lord* appears in the Old Testament, it means "Jehovah."

Jehovah is Christ: Jehovah was known to the ancient prophets (Ex. 6:3; Abr. 1:16). The Apostle Paul taught that Christ was the Jehovah of the Old Testament (Ex. 17:6; 1 Cor. 10:1–4). The brother of Jared in the Book of Mormon saw the premortal Christ and worshiped Him (Ether 3:13–15). Moroni also called Christ "Jehovah" (Moro. 10:34). At the Kirtland Temple, Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery saw the resurrected Jehovah (D&C 110:3–4).

Jeremiah. *See also* Lamentations, Book of

An Old Testament prophet who was born to a priestly family and prophesied in Judah from 626 to 586 B.C. He lived near the time of other great prophets: Lehi, Ezekiel, Hosea, and Daniel.

Jeremiah was ordained to be a prophet in the premortal life (Jer. 1:4–5). During his approximately forty years as prophet he taught against idolatry and immorality among the Jewish people (Jer. 3:1–5; 7:8–10). He had to face continuous opposition and insult (Jer. 20:2; 36:18–19; 38:4). After the fall of Jerusalem, the Jews who escaped into Egypt took Jeremiah with them (Jer. 43:5–6), where, according to tradition, they stoned him to death.

The book of Jeremiah: Chapters 1–6 contain prophecies given during the reign of Josiah. Chapters 7–20 are prophecies during the time of Jehoiakim. Chapters 21–38 deal with the reign of Zedekiah.

Chapters 39–44 contain prophecies and describe historical events after the fall of Jerusalem. Chapter 45 contains a promise to Baruch, his scribe, that Baruch's life would be preserved. Finally, chapters 46–51 are prophecies against foreign nations. Chapter 52 is a historical conclusion. Some of Jeremiah's prophecies were contained in the brass plates of Laban secured by Nephi (1 Ne. 5:10–13). Jeremiah is also mentioned two other times in the Book of Mormon (1 Ne. 7:14; Hel. 8:20).

The book of Jeremiah also includes an acknowledgment of man's premortal existence and Jeremiah's foreordination (Jer. 1:4–5); a prophecy of the return of Israel from their scattered condition, gathering one of a city and two of a family to Zion, a pleasant land where Israel and Judah could dwell in safety and peace (Jer. 3:12–19); and a prophecy of the Lord gathering Israel from the north countries by sending many "fishers" and "hunters" to find them (Jer. 16:14–21). This event of the latter days will be larger in proportion than even Moses' bringing of Israel out of Egypt (Jer. 16:13–15; 23:8).

Jericho

A walled city in the Jordan valley, 800 feet (245 meters) below sea level. Jericho is near the place where the Israelites crossed the river when they first entered the promised land (Josh. 2:1–3; 3:16; 6).

The Israelites fought a battle at Jericho, **Josh.** 6:1–20. Joshua placed a curse upon Jericho, **Josh.** 6:26 (1 Kgs. 16:34). Jericho was within the territory assigned to Benjamin, **Josh.** 18:11–12, 21.

The Lord visited Jericho on his last journey to Jerusalem, **Mark** 10:46 (Luke 18:35; 19:1).

Jeroboam

In the Old Testament, Jeroboam was the first king of the northern part of divided Israel. He was a member of the tribe of Ephraim. The wicked Jeroboam

led a revolt against the house of Judah and the family of David.

Jeroboam set up idols for the people in Dan and Bethel to worship, **1 Kgs.** 12:28–29. Ahijah rebuked Jeroboam, **1 Kgs.** 14:6–16. Jeroboam was remembered for having brought a terrible sin to Israel, **1 Kgs.** 15:34 (1 Kgs. 12:30).

Jerubbaal. *See also* Gideon (Old Testament)

A name given to Gideon in the Old Testament after he destroyed the altar of Baal (Judg. 6:32; 7:1; 9; 1 Sam. 12:11).

Jerusalem

A city located in modern Israel. It is the most significant city in biblical history. Some of the most sacred spots for Christians, Jews, and Muslims are in this city and are visited regularly by many faithful believers. It is often referred to as the holy city.

Once known as Salem (Gen. 14:18; Ps. 76:2), Jerusalem was a Jebusite city until it was captured by David (Josh. 10:1; 15:8; 2 Sam. 5:6–7), who made it his capital. Until then it had served mostly as a mountain fortress, about 2600 feet (800 meters) above sea level. It is surrounded by deep valleys on all sides except the north.

During King David's reign in Jerusalem, he occupied a wooden palace. However, during the reign of Solomon, the people did many things to beautify the city, including building the king's palace and the temple.

After the kingdoms of Israel and Judah divided, Jerusalem remained the capital of Judah. It was often attacked by invading armies (1 Kgs. 14:25; 2 Kgs. 14:13; 16:5; 18–19; 24:10; 25). Under Hezekiah, Jerusalem became the center of religious worship but was partly destroyed in 320 B.C., 168 B.C., and 65 B.C. Herod rebuilt the walls and the temple, but in A.D. 70 the Romans entirely destroyed it.

Melchizedek was king of Salem, **Gen.**

14:18 (Heb. 7:1–2). Isaiah called for Jerusalem to put on her beautiful garments, **Isa.** 52:1. The word of the Lord was to come from Jerusalem, **Micah** 4:2.

Christ lamented over the fate of Jerusalem, **Matt.** 23:37–39 (Luke 13:34). Jerusalem is the city of the living God, **Heb.** 12:22.

Jerusalem was to be destroyed if it would not repent, **1 Ne.** 1:4, 13, 18 (2 Ne. 1:4; Hel. 8:20). Jerusalem to be inhabited again after destruction, **3 Ne.** 20:46. Jerusalem to be built up again, **Ether** 13:5.

Christ warned the Latter-day Saints as he warned the people of Jerusalem, **D&C** 5:20. Those of Judah to flee to Jerusalem, **D&C** 133:13. The Lord will speak from Jerusalem, **D&C** 133:21.

Jerusalem, New. *See* New Jerusalem; Zion

Jesse. *See also* David

In the Old Testament, the father of David and ancestor of Christ and all the kings of Judah.

Ruth's son, Obed, was Jesse's father, **Ruth** 4:17, 22. Jesse's ancestors recounted back to Judah, **1 Chr.** 2:5–12 (Matt. 1:5–6).

Jesus Christ. *See also* Advocate; Alpha and Omega; Anointed One; Ascension; Atone, Atonement; Beginning; Begotten; Blood; Bread of Life; Bridegroom; Comforter; Conscience; Cornerstone; Create, Creation; Cross; Crucifixion; Deliverer; Endless; Faith; Fall of Adam and Eve; Firstborn; God, Godhead; Golgotha; Good Shepherd; Gospels; Grace; I AM; Immanuel; Jehovah; Lamb of God; Light, Light of Christ; Living Water; Lord; Mary, Mother of Jesus; Mediator; Messiah; Plan of Redemption; Redeem, Redeemed, Redemption; Redeemer; Remission of Sins; Repent, Repentance; Resurrection; Rock; Sacrament;

Sacrifice; Savior; Second Coming of Jesus Christ; Sermon on the Mount; Serpent, Brazen; Son of Man; Transfiguration—Transfiguration of Christ; Way

Christ (a Greek word) and *Messiah* (a Hebrew word) mean “the anointed.” Jesus Christ is the Firstborn of the Father in the spirit (Heb. 1:6; D&C 93:21). He is the Only Begotten of the Father in the flesh (John 1:14; 3:16). He is Jehovah (D&C 110:3–4) and was foreordained to His great calling before the creation of the world. Under the direction of the Father, Jesus created the earth and everything on it (John 1:3, 14; Moses 1:31–33). He was born to Mary at Bethlehem, lived a sinless life, and made a perfect atonement for the sins of all mankind by the shedding of His blood and giving His life on the cross (Matt. 2:1; 1 Ne. 11:13–33; 3 Ne. 27:13–16; D&C 76:40–42). He rose from the dead, thus assuring the eventual resurrection of all mankind. Through Jesus’ Atonement and Resurrection, those who repent of their sins and obey God’s commandments can live eternally with Jesus and the Father (2 Ne. 9:10–12; 21–22; D&C 76:50–53, 62).

Jesus Christ is the greatest being to be born on this earth. His life is the perfect example of how all mankind should live. All prayers, blessings, and priesthood ordinances should be done in His name. He is the Lord of lords, King of kings, the Creator, the Savior, and the God of the whole earth.

Jesus Christ will come again in power and glory to reign on the earth during the Millennium. At the last day, He will judge all mankind (Alma 11:40–41; JS—M 1).

Summary of His life (in sequence of events): Jesus’ birth and mission were foretold, **Luke** 1:26–38 (Isa. 7:14; 9:6–7; 1 Ne. 11). Was born, **Luke** 2:1–7 (Matt. 1:18–25). Was circumcised, **Luke** 2:21. Was presented in the temple, **Luke** 2:22–38. Was visited by the wise men, **Matt.**

2:1–12. Joseph and Mary fled with him to Egypt, **Matt.** 2:13–18. Was brought to Nazareth, **Matt.** 2:19–23. Visited the temple at age twelve, **Luke** 2:41–50. Had brothers and sisters, **Matt.** 13:55–56 (Mark 6:3). Was baptized, **Matt.** 3:13–17 (Mark 1:9–11; Luke 3:21–22). Was tempted by the devil, **Matt.** 4:1–11 (Mark 1:12–13; Luke 4:1–13). Called his disciples, **Matt.** 4:18–22 (Matt. 9:9; Mark 1:16–20; 2:13–14; Luke 5:1–11, 27–28; 6:12–16; John 1:35–51). Commissioned the Twelve, **Matt.** 10:1–4 (Mark 3:13–19; Luke 6:12–16). Gave the Sermon on the Mount, **Matt.** 5–7. Foretold his own death and resurrection, **Matt.** 16:21 (Matt. 17:22–23; 20:17–19; Mark 8:31; 9:30–32; 10:32–34; Luke 9:22; 18:31–34). Was transfigured, **Matt.** 17:1–9 (Mark 9:2–8; Luke 9:28–36). Sent forth the seventy, **Luke** 10:1–20. Made his triumphal entry into Jerusalem, **Matt.** 21:1–11 (Mark 11:1–11; Luke 19:29–40; John 12:12–15). Instituted the sacrament, **Matt.** 26:26–29 (Mark 14:22–25; Luke 22:19–20). Suffered and prayed in Gethsemane, **Matt.** 26:36–46 (Mark 14:32–42; Luke 22:39–46). Was betrayed, arrested, and forsaken, **Matt.** 26:47–56 (Mark 14:43–53; Luke 22:47–54; John 18:2–13). Was crucified, **Matt.** 27:31–54 (Mark 15:20–41; Luke 23:26–28, 32–49; John 19:16–30). Was resurrected, **Matt.** 28:1–8 (Mark 16:1–8; Luke 24:1–12; John 20:1–10). Appeared after his resurrection, **Matt.** 28:9–20 (Mark 16:9–18; Luke 24:13–48; John 20:11–31; Acts 1:3–8; 1 Cor. 15:5–8). Ascended to heaven, **Mark** 16:19–20 (Luke 24:51–53; Acts 1:9–12).

Appeared to the Nephites, **3 Ne.** 11:1–17 (3 Ne. 11–26).

Appeared to Joseph Smith, **JS—H** 1:15–20.

Authority: The government shall be upon his shoulder, **Isa.** 9:6 (2 Ne. 19:6).

Jesus taught as one having authority, **Matt.** 7:28–29 (Mark 1:22). The Son of Man hath power on earth to forgive sins, **Matt.** 9:6. Jesus commanded the unclean spirits with authority and they

obeyed him, **Mark** 1:27 (Luke 4:33–36). Jesus ordained twelve to have power, **Mark** 3:14–15. Jesus' word was with power, **Luke** 4:32. The Father hath committed all judgment unto the Son, **John** 5:22, 27. God anointed Jesus with the Holy Ghost and with power, **Acts** 10:38. Christ was foreordained before the foundation of the world, **1 Pet.** 1:20 (Ether 3:14). Christ has the keys of hell and of death, **Rev.** 1:18.

All men become subject unto Christ, **2 Ne.** 9:5. Jesus Christ, the Son of God, is the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning, **Hel.** 14:12.

Christ came by the will of the Father to do his will, **D&C** 19:24. Jesus received a fulness of the glory of the Father; and he received all power, **D&C** 93:3–4, 16–17 (John 3:35–36).

Example of Jesus Christ: I have given you an example, **John** 13:15. I am the way, the truth, and the life, **John** 14:6. Christ also suffered for us, leaving us an example, that ye should follow his steps, **1 Pet.** 2:21.

Unless a man follow the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved, **2 Ne.** 31:16. I would that ye should be perfect even as I, **3 Ne.** 12:48. This shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done, **3 Ne.** 18:6. I have set an example for you, **3 Ne.** 18:16. The works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do, **3 Ne.** 27:21, 27. True followers of Jesus Christ shall be like him, **Moro.** 7:48.

Glory of Jesus Christ: The glory of the Lord filled the tabernacle, **Ex.** 40:34–38. The whole earth is full of his glory, **Isa.** 6:3 (2 Ne. 16:3). The glory of the Lord is risen upon thee, **Isa.** 60:1–2.

The Son of Man shall come in the glory of his Father, **Matt.** 16:27. Glorify thou me with the glory which I had with thee before the world was, **John** 17:5.

The Holy One of Israel must reign in great glory, **1 Ne.** 22:24. We had a hope of his glory, **Jacob** 4:4. The Son of God

cometh in his glory, **Alma** 5:50. He did expound all things, from the beginning until he should come in his glory, **3 Ne.** 26:3.

Mine Apostles shall stand clothed in glory even as I am, **D&C** 29:12 (D&C 45:44). We beheld the glory of the Son, on the right hand of the Father, **D&C** 76:19–23. John saw and bore record of the fulness of my glory, **D&C** 93:6 (John 1:14). His countenance shone above the brightness of the sun, **D&C** 110:3.

His glory was upon me, and I beheld his face, **Moses** 1:1–11. This is my work and my glory, **Moses** 1:39.

Head of the Church: Christ is the head of the Church, **Eph.** 5:23 (Eph. 1:22; 4:15). He is the head of the body, the Church, **Col.** 1:18.

This is my Church, **Mosiah** 26:22 (Mosiah 27:13). Christ was the author and the finisher of their faith, **Moro.** 6:1–4.

This Church have I established, **D&C** 33:5 (3 Ne. 27:3–8).

Judge: He shall judge the world in righteousness, **Ps.** 9:8 (3 Ne. 27:16). He cometh to judge the earth, **Ps.** 96:13. God shall judge the righteous and the wicked, **Eccl.** 3:17. He shall judge among the nations, **Isa.** 2:4 (Micah 4:3; 2 Ne. 12:4). With righteousness will he judge the poor, **Isa.** 11:2–4.

The Father hath committed all judgment unto the Son, **John** 5:22. If I judge, my judgment is true, **John** 8:16. He was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead, **Acts** 10:42 (2 Tim. 4:1). God shall judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ, **Rom.** 2:16. We shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ, **Rom.** 14:10 (2 Cor. 5:10; Alma 12:12; Morm. 3:20; 7:6; Ether 12:38; D&C 135:5).

All men come unto God to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him, **2 Ne.** 2:10. Stand before God to be judged according to deeds, **Alma** 5:15 (Alma 12:15; 33:22; 3 Ne. 27:14).

Jesus Christ

God and Christ are the judge of all, **D&C 76:68**.

Millennial reign of Christ: The government shall be upon his shoulder, **Isa.** 9:6 (2 Ne. 19:6). I will dwell in the midst of thee, saith the Lord, **Zech.** 2:10–12 (**Zech.** 14:9).

God shall give unto Jesus the throne of his father David, **Luke** 1:30–33. Christ shall reign for ever and ever, **Rev.** 11:15. The Saints shall reign with Christ a thousand years, **Rev.** 20:4 (**D&C 76:63**).

Because of the righteousness of the people, Satan will have no power, **1 Ne.** 22:26 (**Rev.** 20:1–3).

I will dwell in righteousness with men on earth a thousand years, **D&C 29:11** (**D&C 43:29–30**). Be subject to the powers that be, until he reigns whose right it is to reign, **D&C 58:22** (1 Cor. 15:25).

Christ will reign personally upon the earth, **A of F 1:10** (**Isa.** 32:1).

Postmortal appearances of Christ: When Jesus was risen, he appeared first to Mary, **Mark** 16:9 (**John** 20:11–18). Jesus walked and talked with two of the disciples on the road to Emmaus, **Luke** 24:13–34. Jesus appeared to the Apostles, who felt his hands and feet, **Luke** 24:36–43 (**John** 20:19–20). Jesus appeared to Thomas, **John** 20:24–29. Jesus appeared to the disciples at the sea of Tiberias, **John** 21:1–14. Jesus ministered for forty days after his resurrection, **Acts** 1:2–3. Stephen saw Jesus standing on the right hand of God, **Acts** 7:55–56. Jesus appeared to Saul, **Acts** 9:1–8 (**JST, Acts** 9:7; **Acts** 26:9–17). Christ was seen by more than 500 people, **1 Cor.** 15:3–8.

Jesus Christ showed himself to the people of Nephi, **3 Ne.** 11:1–17. 2500 people saw and heard Jesus, **3 Ne.** 17:16–25. Mormon was visited by the Lord, **Morm.** 1:15.

Joseph Smith and Sidney Rigdon saw Jesus on the right hand of God, **D&C 76:22–23**. Joseph Smith and Oliver

Cowdery saw the Lord in the Kirtland Temple, **D&C 110:1–4**.

Joseph Smith saw Jesus, **JS—H 1:15–17**.

Premortal existence of Christ: The Lord appeared unto Abram, **Gen.** 12:7 (**Gen.** 17:1; 18:1; **Abr.** 2:6–8). The Lord spoke unto Moses face to face, **Ex.** 33:11 (**Deut.** 34:10; **Moses** 1:1–2). I saw the Lord standing upon the altar, **Amos** 9:1.

In the beginning, the Word was with God. And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, **John** 1:1, 14 (1 Jn. 1:1–3). Before Abraham was, I am, **John** 8:58. Glorify thou me with the glory which I had with thee before the world was, **John** 17:5.

Isaiah verily saw my Redeemer as I and my brother Jacob have seen him, **2 Ne.** 11:2–3. On the morrow come I into the world, **3 Ne.** 1:12–14. Christ was before the world began, **3 Ne.** 26:5 (**John** 6:62). As I appear unto thee will I appear unto my people in the flesh, **Ether** 3:14–17.

Enoch saw the Lord and walked with him, **D&C 107:48–49**.

My Beloved Son, which was my Beloved and Chosen from the beginning, **Moses** 4:2. The Lord said: Whom shall I send? And one answered like unto the Son of Man: Here am I, send me, **Abr.** 3:27.

Prophecies about the birth and death of Jesus Christ: A virgin shall conceive and bear a son, **Isa.** 7:14 (1 Ne. 11:13–20). Out of Bethlehem shall come forth a ruler in Israel, **Micah** 5:2.

Samuel the Lamanite prophesied a day, a night, and a day of light; a new star; and other signs, **Hel.** 14:2–6. Samuel the Lamanite prophesied darkness, thunderings and lightnings, and shaking of the earth, **Hel.** 14:20–27. The signs of Jesus' birth were fulfilled, **3 Ne.** 1:15–21. The signs of Jesus' death were fulfilled, **3 Ne.** 8:5–23.

Taking the name of Jesus Christ upon us: There is no other name whereby we must be saved, **Acts** 4:12 (2 Ne. 31:21). The Apostles rejoiced that they were

counted worthy to suffer shame for his name, **Acts** 5:38–42. This is his commandment, That we should believe on the name of his Son Jesus Christ, **1 Jn.** 3:23.

Witness that ye are willing to take upon you the name of Christ by baptism, **2 Ne.** 31:13. I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, **Mosiah** 5:6–12 (**Mosiah** 1:11). Whosoever was desirous to take upon them the name of Christ did join the Church of God, **Mosiah** 25:23. All those who were true believers in Christ took upon them the name of Christ, **Alma** 46:15. The gate of heaven is open to those who will believe on the name of Jesus Christ, **Hel.** 3:28. Blessed is he who is found faithful unto my name at the last day, **Ether** 4:19. They are willing to take upon them the name of the Son, **Moro.** 4:3 (**D&C** 20:77).

Take upon you the name of Christ, **D&C** 18:21–25.

Testimony borne of Jesus Christ: Paul testified that Jesus is the Christ, **Acts** 18:5. Even the evil spirits testified that they knew Jesus, **Acts** 19:15. No man can say that Jesus is the Lord except by the Holy Ghost, **1 Cor.** 12:3. Every knee shall bow and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, **Philip.** 2:10–11.

We talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, **2 Ne.** 25:26. The Book of Mormon is to convince the Jew and Gentile that Jesus is the Christ, **2 Ne.** 26:12 (title page of the Book of Mormon). The prophets and the scriptures testify of Christ, **Jacob** 7:11, 19. Seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written, **Ether** 12:41.

We saw him and heard the voice bearing record that he is the Only Begotten, **D&C** 76:20–24. This is eternal lives—to know God and Jesus Christ, **D&C** 132:24.

We believe in God the Eternal Father, and in His Son, Jesus Christ, **A of F** 1:1. We believe that Christ will reign personally upon the earth, **A of F** 1:10.

Types or symbols of Christ: Abel offered the firstlings of his flock, **Gen.** 4:4 (**Moses** 5:20). Take thine only son Isaac, and offer him for an offering, **Gen.** 22:1–13 (**Jacob** 4:5). The Lord commanded the children of Israel to sacrifice lambs without blemish, **Ex.** 12:5, 21, 46 (**Num.** 9:12; **John** 1:29; 19:33; **1 Pet.** 1:19; **Rev.** 5:6). This is the bread which the Lord hath given you to eat, **Ex.** 16:2–15 (**John** 6:51). Smite the rock, and there shall come water out of it, that the people might drink, **Ex.** 17:6 (**John** 4:6–14; **1 Cor.** 10:1–4). The goat shall bear upon him all their iniquities, **Lev.** 16:20–22 (**Isa.** 53:11; **Mosiah** 14:11; 15:6–9). Moses lifted up a serpent of brass to save those who look at it, **Num.** 21:8–9 (**John** 3:14–15; **Alma** 33:19; **Hel.** 8:14–15). Jonah was in the belly of the fish three days, **Jonah** 1:17 (**Matt.** 12:40).

This thing is a similitude of the sacrifice of the Only Begotten of the Father, **Moses** 5:4–8.

Jethro. *See also* **Moses**

An Old Testament prince and priest of Midian who gave Moses a home after Moses fled from Egypt. He is also called Reuel (**Ex.** 2:18). Moses later married Jethro's daughter Zipporah (**Ex.** 3:1; 4:18; 18:1–12). Jethro taught Moses to delegate (**Ex.** 18:13–27). Moses received the Melchizedek Priesthood from Jethro (**D&C** 84:6–7).

Jews. *See also* **Israel**; **Judah**

Jews can be (1) descendants of Judah, one of the twelve sons of Jacob, (2) people of the ancient southern kingdom of Judah, or (3) people who practice the religion, lifestyles, and traditions of Judaism but may or may not be Jewish by birth. It has become customary to use the word *Jew* to refer to all the descendants of Jacob, but this is a mistake. It should be limited to those of the kingdom of Judah or, more especially today, those of the tribe of Judah and his associates.

Jezebel

The sceptre shall not depart from Judah until Shiloh come, **Gen.** 49:10.

The gospel of Christ is the power of God unto salvation, to the Jew first, **Rom.** 1:16.

A prophet would the Lord raise up among the Jews—even a Messiah, **1 Ne.** 10:4. When the book proceeded out of the mouth of the Jew, the things were plain and pure, **1 Ne.** 14:23. The Jews shall be scattered among all nations, **2 Ne.** 25:15. The Jews are mine ancient covenant people, **2 Ne.** 29:4. Jews which are scattered shall begin to believe in Christ, **2 Ne.** 30:7. Jews will reject the stone upon which they might build, **Jacob** 4:14–16. The Jews shall have other witness that Jesus was the very Christ, **Morm.** 3:20–21.

Two prophets are to be raised up to the Jewish nation in the last days, **D&C** 77:15. Call upon all nations, first upon the Gentiles, and then upon the Jews, **D&C** 133:8.

In those days shall be great tribulation on the Jews, **JS—M** 1:18.

Jezebel. *See also* Ahab

A wicked woman in the Old Testament from the land of Phoenicia. She was the wife of Ahab (1 Kgs. 16:30–31), a king of Israel who reigned while Elijah was prophet.

Jezebel's marriage to Ahab, more than any other single event, caused the downfall of the northern kingdom of Israel; Jezebel introduced into Israel the worst forms of idol worship from her land in place of the worship of Jehovah (1 Kgs. 18:13, 19).

Jezebel killed many of God's prophets, **1 Kgs.** 18:4. Jezebel tried to kill Elijah, **1 Kgs.** 19:1–3. Jezebel's wickedness ended with her terrible death, **2 Kgs.** 9:30–37.

Job

In the Old Testament, a righteous man who suffered tremendous affliction yet remained faithful to his belief

in God. His story is told in the book of Job.

The book of Job: Although the book is about Job's suffering, it does not entirely answer the question of why Job (or any other person) might suffer pain and the loss of his family and goods. The book clarifies that having afflictions does not necessarily mean that a person has sinned. The Lord may use affliction for experience, discipline, and instruction as well as for punishment (**D&C** 122).

The book can be divided into four parts. Chapters 1–2 are a prologue to the story. Chapters 3–31 relate a series of discussions between Job and three friends. Chapters 32–37 contain the speeches of Elihu, a fourth friend, who condemns Job for reasons other than the reasons of the first three friends. Chapters 38–42 conclude the book with a reassurance to Job that his course in life was a good one from the beginning.

The book of Job teaches that if a person has a correct knowledge of God and is living a life that is acceptable to God, he will be better able to endure the trials that come upon him. Job's unflinching faith is characterized by such exclamations as "Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him" (**Job** 13:15). Job is also mentioned in **Ezekiel** 14:14; **James** 5:11; **Doctrine and Covenants** 121:10.

Joel

A prophet in the land of Judah in the Old Testament. The date of his life is uncertain—he may have lived sometime between the reign of Joash, before 850 B.C., and the return of the tribe of Judah from captivity in Babylon.

The book of Joel: The book centers on a prophecy that Joel made after the land of Judah was smitten with a severe drought and with locusts (**Joel** 1:4–20). Joel assured the people that through repentance they would again receive the blessings of God (**Joel** 2:12–14).

Chapter 1 is a call for a solemn assembly in the house of the Lord.

Chapter 2 tells of war and desolation to precede the Millennium. Chapter 3 speaks of the latter days and affirms that all nations shall be at war but that eventually the Lord will dwell in Zion.

Peter quoted Joel's prophecy of the outpouring of the Spirit on the day of Pentecost (Joel 2:28–32; Acts 2:16–21). The angel Moroni also quoted this same passage to Joseph Smith (JS—H 1:41).

John, Son of Zebedee. *See also* Apostle; Gospels; Melchizedek Priesthood; Revelation of John; Translated Beings

One of the Twelve Apostles in the New Testament, a son of Zebedee, and a brother of James. In his early life he was a fisherman (Mark 1:17–20). He is probably the unnamed disciple of John the Baptist mentioned in John 1:40. Later he received a call to be a disciple of Jesus Christ (Matt. 4:21–22; Luke 5:1–11). He wrote the Gospel of John, three epistles, and the book of Revelation. He was one of three who were with the Lord at the raising of Jairus's daughter (Mark 5:35–42), at the Mount of Transfiguration (Matt. 17:1–9), and in Gethsemane (Matt. 26:36–46). In his own writings he refers to himself as the disciple whom Jesus loved (John 13:23; 21:20) and as the "other disciple" (John 20:2–8). Jesus also called him and his brother Boanerges, "sons of thunder" (Mark 3:17). There are frequent references to him in the accounts of the Crucifixion and Resurrection (Luke 22:8; John 18:15; 19:26–27; 20:2–8; 21:1–2). John was later banished to Patmos, where he wrote the book of Revelation (Rev. 1:9).

John is mentioned frequently in latter-day revelation (1 Ne. 14:18–27; 3 Ne. 28:6; Ether 4:16; D&C 7; 27:12; 61:14; 77; 88:141). These passages confirm the biblical record of John and also provide insight into his greatness and the importance of the work the Lord has given him to do on the earth in New Testament times and in the last

days. The latter-day scriptures clarify that John did not die but was allowed to remain on the earth as a ministering servant until the time of the Lord's Second Coming (John 21:20–23; 3 Ne. 28:6–7; D&C 7).

The epistles of John: Although the writer of these three epistles does not mention himself by name, the language so strongly resembles that of John the Apostle that he is assumed to have written all three.

1 John 1 admonishes the Saints to gain fellowship with God. Chapter 2 emphasizes that the Saints know God by obedience and instructs them to love not the world. Chapter 3 calls all to become the children of God and to love one another. Chapter 4 explains that God is love and dwells in those who love Him. Chapter 5 explains that Saints are born of God through belief in Christ.

2 John is similar to 1 John. In it John rejoices because of the faithfulness of the children of "the elect lady."

3 John commends a person called Gaius for his faithfulness and help to those who love the truth.

The Gospel of John: In this New Testament book, John the Apostle testified that (1) Jesus is the Christ or Messiah and (2) Jesus is the Son of God (John 20:31). The scenes from Jesus' life that he describes are carefully selected and arranged with this object in view. The book begins with a statement of Christ's status in the premortal existence: He was with God, He was God, and He was the creator of all things. He was born in the flesh as the Only Begotten Son of the Father. John traces the course of Jesus' ministry, greatly emphasizing His divinity and His resurrection from the dead. He clearly affirms that Jesus is the Son of God, attested to by miracles, by witnesses, by the prophets, and by Christ's own voice. John teaches by contrasting light and darkness, truth

and error, good and evil, God and the devil. Perhaps in no other record is the holiness of Jesus and the faithlessness of the Jewish rulers so plainly declared.

John wrote mainly of Christ's ministry in Judea, especially the last week of His mortal ministry, whereas Matthew, Mark, and Luke wrote mainly of His ministry in Galilee. Several items from this Gospel have been clarified by latter-day revelation (D&C 7 and D&C 88:138–141).

For a list of events in the Savior's life described in the Gospel of John, see Harmony of the Gospels in the appendix.

The book of Revelation: See Revelation of John

John the Baptist. *See also* Aaronic Priesthood; Elias

The son of Zacharias and Elisabeth in the New Testament. John was sent to prepare the people to receive the Messiah (John 1:19–27). He held the keys of the Aaronic Priesthood and baptized Jesus Christ.

Isaiah and others prophesied of John's mission, **Isa.** 40:3 (Mal. 3:1; 1 Ne. 10:7–10; 2 Ne. 31:4).

Was put in prison and beheaded, **Matt.** 14:3–12 (Mark 6:17–29). Gabriel announced John's birth and ministry to Zacharias, **Luke** 1:5–25. Jesus taught that John the Baptist was a great prophet, **Luke** 7:24–28. Recognized Jesus as the Son of God, **John** 1:29–34. John's disciples became Jesus' disciples, **John** 1:25–29, 35–42 (Acts 1:21–22). Did no miracle, **John** 10:41.

As a resurrected being, was sent to ordain Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery to the Aaronic Priesthood, **D&C** 13 (D&C 27:7–8; JS—H 1:68–72). Was ordained by an angel when he was eight days old, **D&C** 84:28.

Jonah. *See also* Nineveh

An Old Testament prophet who was

called by the Lord to preach repentance to the city of Nineveh (Jonah 1:1–2).

The book of Jonah: A book in the Old Testament that tells of an experience in Jonah's life. Jonah probably did not write the book himself. The major idea of the book of Jonah is that Jehovah reigns everywhere and does not confine His love to a single nation or people.

In chapter 1, the Lord called Jonah to preach to Nineveh. Instead of doing as the Lord had commanded, Jonah fled by boat and was swallowed by a large fish. In chapter 2, Jonah prayed to the Lord, and the fish vomited Jonah out onto dry ground. Chapter 3 records that Jonah went to Nineveh and prophesied of its downfall. However, the people repented. In chapter 4, the Lord rebuked Jonah for being angry that the Lord saved the people.

Jesus taught that Jonah's being swallowed by the fish served as a foreshadowing of Jesus' own death and resurrection (Matt. 12:39–40; 16:4; Luke 11:29–30).

Jonathan. *See also* David; Saul, King of Israel

In the Old Testament, a son of Saul, king of Israel. Jonathan was a close friend of David (1 Sam. 13–23; 31).

Jordan River

The Jordan River runs from the sea of Galilee to the Dead Sea. The river is 100 miles (160 kilometers) long and is formed by the union of several springs flowing from Mount Hermon. It is the most important river in Israel.

Two important events connected with this river are the Lord's parting of the river for the crossing of Israel (Josh. 3:14–17) and the baptism of Jesus Christ (Matt. 3:13–17; 1 Ne. 10:9).

Joseph, Husband of Mary. *See also* Jesus Christ; Mary, Mother of Jesus

Husband of Mary, mother of Jesus. Joseph was a descendant of David (Matt.

1:1–16; Luke 3:23–38) and lived in Nazareth. He was espoused to Mary. Just before their marriage, Mary received a visit from the angel Gabriel, who announced that Mary had been chosen to be the mother of the Savior (Luke 1:26–35). Joseph also received revelation of this divine birth (Matt. 1:20–25).

Mary was Jesus' only earthly parent because God the Father was Jesus' father. But the Jews thought of Joseph as Jesus' father, and Jesus treated him as such (Luke 2:48, 51). Warned by heavenly dreams, Joseph preserved the infant Jesus' life by fleeing to Egypt (Matt. 2:13–14). After Herod died, an angel instructed Joseph to take the Christ child back to Israel (Matt. 2:19–23).

Joseph, Son of Jacob. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, the firstborn son of Jacob and Rachel (Gen. 30:22–24; 37:3).

Joseph obtained the birthright in Israel because Reuben, the firstborn son of Jacob's first wife, lost the privilege by transgression (1 Chr. 5:1–2). Because he was worthy, Joseph, as the firstborn son of Jacob's second wife, was next in line for the blessing. Joseph also received a blessing from his father shortly before Jacob died (Gen. 49:22–26).

Joseph was a man of great character, an individual "discreet and wise" (Gen. 41:39). His rejection of Potiphar's wife is an example of faith, chastity, and personal integrity (Gen. 39:7–12). In Egypt, when Joseph revealed his true identity to his brothers, he thanked instead of blamed them for how they had treated him. He believed their actions had helped to accomplish God's divine will (Gen. 45:4–15).

Latter-day revelation reveals the larger mission of the family of Joseph in the last days (JST, Gen. 50:24–38 [Appendix]; 2 Ne. 3:3–24; 3 Ne. 20:25–27).

Jacob loved Joseph very much and

gave him a coat of many colors, **Gen. 37:3**. Because of jealousy Joseph's brothers grew to hate him and plotted to kill him, but instead sold him to merchants, who were on their way to Egypt, **Gen. 37:5–36**. In Egypt, the Lord prospered Joseph and he became ruler of Potiphar's house, **Gen. 39:1–4**. Potiphar's wife lied, saying that Joseph attempted to seduce her; Joseph was wrongly condemned and put into prison, **Gen. 39:7–20**. Joseph interpreted the dreams of Pharaoh's chief butler and baker, **Gen. 40**. Pharaoh began to favor Joseph because Joseph had interpreted one of Pharaoh's dreams; he made Joseph a ruler over Egypt, **Gen. 41:14–45**. Ephraim and Manasseh were born, **Gen. 41:50–52**. Joseph was reunited with his father and brothers, **Gen. 45–46**. Joseph died in Egypt at the age of 110 years, **Gen. 50:22–26**.

Joseph, Stick of. *See* Book of Mormon; Ephraim—The stick of Ephraim or Joseph

Joseph of Arimathea

Joseph of Arimathea was a member of the Sanhedrin, a disciple of Christ, and a rich and faithful Israelite who took no part in the condemnation of our Lord. After the Crucifixion, Joseph had the Savior's body wrapped in a clean linen cloth and laid Him in Joseph's own cavelike tomb (Matt. 27:57–60; Mark 15:43–46; Luke 23:50–53; John 19:38–42).

Joseph Smith Jr. *See* Smith, Joseph, Jr.

Joseph Smith Translation (JST). *See also* Smith, Joseph, Jr.

A revision or translation of the King James Version of the Bible in English, which the Prophet Joseph Smith began in June 1830. He was commanded by God to make the translation and regarded it as part of his calling as a prophet.

Although Joseph completed most of the translation by July 1833, he continued until his death in 1844 to make modifications while preparing a manuscript

for publication. Though he published some parts of the translation during his lifetime, it is possible that he would have made additional changes had he lived to publish the entire work. The Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints published the first edition of Joseph Smith's inspired translation in 1867. They have published several editions since that time.

The Prophet learned many things during the translation process. Several sections of the Doctrine and Covenants were received because of his translation work (such as D&C 76; 77; 91; and 132). Also, the Lord gave Joseph specific instructions for the translation, which were recorded in the Doctrine and Covenants (D&C 37:1; 45:60–61; 76:15–18; 90:13; 91; 94:10; 104:58; 124:89). The book of Moses and Joseph Smith—Matthew, now included in the Pearl of Great Price, were taken directly from the Joseph Smith Translation.

The Joseph Smith Translation has restored some of the plain and precious things that have been lost from the Bible (1 Ne. 13). Although it is not the official Bible of the Church, this translation does offer many interesting insights and is very valuable in understanding the Bible. It is also a witness for the divine calling and ministry of the Prophet Joseph Smith.

Joshua. *See also* Jericho

An Old Testament prophet and leader, and the successor of Moses. He was born in Egypt before the children of Israel escaped (Num. 14:26–31). He and Caleb were among the twelve spies sent to Canaan. They alone gave a good report of the land (Num. 13:8, 16–33; 14:1–10). He died at the age of 110 (Josh. 24:29). Joshua was a great example of a devout prophet-warrior.

The book of Joshua: This book is named after Joshua because he was the principal figure in it and not because he was the author. Chapters 1–12 describe

the conquest of Canaan; chapters 13–24 tell of the tribes of Israel dividing up the land and of Joshua's final counsels.

Two notable verses in the book of Joshua are the Lord's command to him to meditate on the scriptures (Josh. 1:8) and Joshua's call to the people to be faithful to the Lord (Josh. 24:15).

Josiah

A righteous king of Judah from 641–610 B.C. (2 Kgs. 22–24; 2 Chr. 34–35). During his reign, the book of the law was found in the house of the Lord (2 Kgs. 22:8–13).

Joy. *See also* Obedience, Obedient, Obey

A condition of great happiness coming from righteous living. The purpose of mortal life is for all people to have joy (2 Ne. 2:22–25). A full joy will come only through Jesus Christ (John 15:11; D&C 93:33–34; 101:36).

The meek also shall increase their joy in the Lord, **Isa.** 29:19 (2 Ne. 27:30).

I bring you good tidings of great joy, **Luke** 2:10. Your joy no man taketh away from you, **John** 16:22. The fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, **Gal.** 5:22.

The fruit thereof filled my soul with exceedingly great joy, **1 Ne.** 8:12. Men are that they might have joy, **2 Ne.** 2:25. The joy of the righteous shall be full forever, **2 Ne.** 9:18. They may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness, **Mosiah** 2:41. I will give up all that I possess that I may receive this great joy, **Alma** 22:15. Perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance, and this is my joy, **Alma** 29:9. What joy, and what marvelous light I beheld, **Alma** 36:20.

My Spirit shall fill your soul with joy, **D&C** 11:13. How great shall be your joy with him in the kingdom of my Father, **D&C** 18:15–16. In this world your joy is not full, but in me your joy is full, **D&C** 101:36.

In this life I shall have joy, **Moses** 5:10–11.

Judah. *See also* Bible; Israel; Jews

In the Old Testament, the fourth son of Jacob and Leah (Gen. 29:35; 37:26–27; 43:3, 8; 44:16; 49:8). Jacob blessed Judah that he would be a natural leader among the sons of Jacob and that Shiloh (Jesus Christ) would be his descendant (Gen. 49:10).

The tribe of Judah: The tribe of Judah took the lead after the settlement in Canaan. Its chief rival was the tribe of Ephraim. Moses blessed the tribe of Judah (Deut. 33:7). After the reign of Solomon, the tribe of Judah became the kingdom of Judah.

The kingdom of Judah: In the reign of Rehoboam the dominions of Solomon were broken up into two separate kingdoms, mainly because of the jealousy between the tribes of Ephraim and Judah. The southern kingdom, or kingdom of Judah, included the tribe of Judah and the greater part of Benjamin. Jerusalem was its capital. On the whole it remained more faithful to the worship of Jehovah than did the northern kingdom. Judah was less exposed to attack from the north and east, and the supreme power remained in the hands of the family of David until the Babylonian captivity. The kingdom of Judah managed to exist for 135 years after the downfall of the more populous and more powerful kingdom of Israel.

The stick of Judah: This refers to the Bible as a record of the house of Judah (Ezek. 37:15–19). In the last days, when the various branches of the house of Israel are gathered, their sacred records will also be gathered together. These scriptural records complement one another and form a unified testimony that Jesus is the Christ, the God of Israel and the God of the whole earth (JST, Gen. 50:24–36 [Appendix]; 2 Ne. 3; 29).

Judas, Brother of James

In the New Testament, one of the original Twelve Apostles of Jesus Christ (Luke 6:13–16). He was probably also known as Lebbaeus Thaddaeus (Matt. 10:2–4).

Judas Iscariot

One of Jesus' Twelve Apostles in the New Testament (Matt. 10:4; Mark 14:10; John 6:71; 12:4). His surname meant "man of Kerioth." He was from the tribe of Judah and was the only Apostle who was not a Galilean. Judas betrayed the Lord.

Received thirty pieces of silver for delivering Christ to one of the chief priests, **Matt.** 26:14–16 (Zech. 11:12–13). Betrayed the Lord with a kiss, **Matt.** 26:47–50 (Mark 14:43–45; Luke 22:47–48; John 18:2–5). Hanged himself, **Matt.** 27:5. Satan entered into Judas, **Luke** 22:3 (John 13:2, 26–30). David spoke of Judas's betrayal of Jesus, **Acts** 1:16 (Ps. 41:9).

Jude

In the New Testament, one of Jesus' brothers and probable author of the epistle of Jude (Matt. 13:55; Jude 1:1).

The epistle of Jude: This book consists of a letter from Jude to certain Saints who were weakening in the faith. They were being weakened by those among them who professed to be Christians but who were practicing immoral pagan worship and claiming to be exempt from obeying the moral law. Jude wished to awaken the Saints to a sense of their spiritual danger and to encourage them to remain faithful.

Some notable passages in Jude are verse 6, which recounts the war in heaven and the casting out of Lucifer and his angels from that premortal state (Abr. 3:26–28), and verses 14–15, which cite a prophecy made by Enoch.

Judge, Judgment

Judge, Judgment. *See also* Condemn, Condemnation; Jesus Christ—Judge; Judgment, the Last

To evaluate behavior in relation to the principles of the gospel; to decide; to discern good from evil.

Moses sat to judge the people, **Ex.** 18:13. In righteousness shalt thou judge thy neighbor, **Lev.** 19:15.

Judge not, that ye be not judged, **Matt.** 7:1 (JST, **Matt.** 7:1–2; **Luke** 6:37; 3 **Ne.** 14:1). As many as have sinned in the law shall be judged by the law, **Rom.** 2:12. The Saints shall judge the world, **1 Cor.** 6:2–3.

The Son of the everlasting God was judged of the world, **1 Ne.** 11:32. The Twelve Apostles of the Lamb shall judge the twelve tribes of Israel, **1 Ne.** 12:9 (**D&C** 29:12). Death, hell, the devil, and all that have been seized therewith must be judged, **2 Ne.** 28:23 (1 **Ne.** 15:33). If ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for substance, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, **Mosiah** 4:22. Men shall be judged according to their works, **Alma** 41:3. Judge righteously, and you shall have justice restored unto you again, **Alma** 41:14. Out of the books which shall be written shall the world be judged, **3 Ne.** 27:23–26 (**Rev.** 20:12). The remnant of this people shall be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land, **Morm.** 3:18–20. Mormon explained the way to judge good from evil, **Moro.** 7:14–18.

Put your trust in that Spirit which leadeth to judge righteously, **D&C** 11:12. Ye ought to say in your hearts—let God judge between me and thee, **D&C** 64:11. The Lord's Church will judge the nations, **D&C** 64:37–38. The Son visited the spirits in prison that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, **D&C** 76:73 (1 **Pet.** 4:6). A bishop shall be a common judge, **D&C** 107:72–74. The Lord will judge all men according to their works, according to the desire of their hearts, **D&C** 137:9.

Judges, Book of

A book in the Old Testament. The book of Judges deals with the Israelites from the death of Joshua to the birth of Samuel.

Chapters 1–3 are a preface to the entire book of Judges. They explain that because the Israelites did not drive out their enemies (**Judg.** 1:16–35), the Israelites must suffer the consequences: loss of faith, marriages with nonbelievers, and idolatry. Chapters 4–5 relate the experiences of Deborah and Barak, who delivered Israel from the Canaanites. Chapters 6–8 are the faith-promoting experiences of Gideon, whom the Lord blessed to deliver Israel from the Midianites. In chapters 9–12, several different men serve as judges in Israel during the time most of the Israelites were in apostasy and governed by foreign rulers. Chapters 13–16 tell of the rise and fall of the last judge, Samson. The final chapters, 17–21, can be described as an appendix that reveals the depths of Israel's sins.

Judgment, the Last. *See also* Condemn, Condemnation; Jesus Christ—Judge; Judge, Judgment

The Final Judgment that will occur after the Resurrection. God, through Jesus Christ, will judge each person to determine the eternal glory he will receive. This judgment will be based on each person's obedience to God's commands, including his acceptance of the atoning sacrifice of Jesus Christ.

The Father hath committed all judgment unto the Son, **John** 5:22. We shall all stand before the judgment seat of Christ, **Rom.** 14:10. The dead were judged out of those things which were written, **Rev.** 20:12 (**D&C** 128:6–7).

For all thy doings thou shalt be brought into judgment, **1 Ne.** 10:20. The Twelve Apostles and the twelve Nephite disciples will judge Israel, **1 Ne.** 12:9–10 (**D&C** 29:12). All must appear before the judgment seat of the Holy One,

2 Ne. 9:15. Prepare your souls for that glorious day, **2 Ne.** 9:46. Can ye imagine yourselves before the tribunal of God, **Alma** 5:17–25. Jesus Christ shall stand to judge the world, **3 Ne.** 27:16.

The Lord shall come down with a curse to judgment on the ungodly, **D&C** 133:2.

Justice. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Merciful, Mercy

The unfailing consequence of blessings for righteous thoughts and acts, and punishment for unrepented sin. Justice is an eternal law that requires a penalty each time a law of God is broken (**Alma** 42:13–24). The sinner must pay the penalty if he does not repent (**Mosiah** 2:38–39; **D&C** 19:17). If he does repent, the Savior pays the penalty through the Atonement, invoking mercy (**Alma** 34:16).

The soul that sinneth shall die, **Ezek.** 18:4. What doth the Lord require of thee, but to do justly, **Micah** 6:8.

Jesus will be just and forgive our sins, **1 Jn.** 1:9.

The justice of God did divide the wicked from the righteous, **1 Ne.** 15:30. The Atonement satisfies the demands of his justice, **2 Ne.** 9:26. All mankind is fallen and is in the grasp of justice, **Alma** 42:14. The Atonement appeases the demands of justice, **Alma** 42:15. Do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice, **Alma** 42:25. The justice of God hangs over you except you repent, **Alma** 54:6.

Justice and judgment are the penalty that is affixed to my law, **D&C** 82:4. Justice continues in its course and claims its own, **D&C** 88:40. None shall be exempted from the justice and the laws of God, **D&C** 107:84.

Justification, Justify. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Sanctification

To be pardoned from punishment for sin and declared guiltless. A person is justified by the Savior's grace through faith in Him. This faith is shown by repentance and obedience

to the laws and ordinances of the gospel. Jesus Christ's Atonement enables mankind to repent and be justified or pardoned from punishment they otherwise would receive.

In the Lord shall all Israel be justified, **Isa.** 45:25.

Not the hearers but the doers of the law shall be justified, **Rom.** 2:13. Man is justified through the blood of Christ, **Rom.** 5:1–2, 9. Ye are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, **1 Cor.** 6:11. Being justified by his grace, we shall be made heirs, **Titus** 3:7. Was not Abraham our father justified by works, **James** 2:21. By works a man is justified, and not by faith only, **James** 2:14–26.

By the law no flesh is justified, **2 Ne.** 2:5. My righteous servant shall justify many, for he shall bear their iniquities, **Mosiah** 14:11 (**Isa.** 53:11). Could ye say that your garments have been cleansed through Christ, **Alma** 5:27.

Justification through the grace of Jesus Christ is true, **D&C** 20:30–31 (**D&C** 88:39).

By the Spirit ye are justified, **Moses** 6:60.

Keys of the Priesthood. *See also* Dispensation; First Presidency; Priesthood

Keys are the rights of presidency, or the power given to man by God to direct, control, and govern God's priesthood on earth. Priesthood holders called to positions of presidency receive keys from those in authority over them. Priesthood holders use the priesthood only within the limits outlined by those who hold the keys. The President of the Church is the only person on earth who holds and is authorized to exercise all priesthood keys (**D&C** 107:65–67, 91–92; 132:7).

Peter received the keys of the kingdom, **Matt.** 16:19.

Michael (Adam) received the keys of salvation under the direction of Jesus

Christ, **D&C 78:16**. The keys of the kingdom belong always to the First Presidency, **D&C 81:2**. The Melchizedek Priesthood holds the key of the mysteries of the knowledge of God, **D&C 84:19**. Special keys are held by the Twelve Apostles, **D&C 107:35; 112:16, 32; 124:128**. Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery received keys concerning the gathering of Israel, the gospel of Abraham, and the sealing powers, **D&C 110:11–16**. The First Presidency and the Twelve hold the keys of the dispensation of the fulness of times, **D&C 112:30–34**. Officers in the priesthood hold keys, **D&C 124:123**. He who has keys can obtain knowledge, **D&C 128:11**.

The Aaronic Priesthood holds the keys of the ministering of angels and of the gospel of repentance and baptism, **JS—H 1:69** (**D&C 13**).

Kill. *See* Capital Punishment; Murder

Kimball, Spencer W. *See also* Official Declaration 2

The twelfth President of the Church since it was founded in 1830. Spencer W. Kimball served as President from December 1973 to November 1985. He was born in 1895 and died in 1985 at the age of ninety.

In June 1978, the First Presidency announced that a revelation had been received by President Kimball extending priesthood and temple blessings to all worthy male members, **OD 2**.

Kingdom of God or Kingdom of Heaven. *See also* Celestial Glory; Church of Jesus Christ

The kingdom of God on earth is The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (**D&C 65**). The purpose of the Church is to prepare its members to live forever in the celestial kingdom or kingdom of heaven. However, the scriptures sometimes call the Church the kingdom of heaven, meaning that the Church is the kingdom of heaven on earth.

The Church of Jesus Christ of

Latter-day Saints is the kingdom of God on the earth, but it is at present limited to an ecclesiastical kingdom. During the Millennium, the kingdom of God will be both political and ecclesiastical.

The Lord is King for ever and ever, **Ps. 10:16** (**Ps. 11:4**). The God of heaven shall set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed, **Dan. 2:44** (**D&C 138:44**).

Repent ye for the kingdom of heaven is at hand, **Matt. 3:2** (**Matt. 4:17**). Thy kingdom come, thy will be done on earth, **Matt. 6:10**. Seek ye first the kingdom of God, **Matt. 6:33** (**3 Ne. 13:33**). I will give unto thee the keys of the kingdom, **Matt. 16:19**. Come, inherit the kingdom prepared for you, **Matt. 25:34**. When I partake of the sacrament with you in my Father's kingdom, **Matt. 26:26–29**. Ye shall see all the prophets in the kingdom of God, **Luke 13:28**. The unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God, **1 Cor. 6:9**. Flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God, **1 Cor. 15:50**.

Before ye seek for riches seek ye for the kingdom of God, **Jacob 2:18**. No unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven, **Alma 11:37**.

You may rest with them in the kingdom of my Father, **D&C 15:6**. Unto you the kingdom or the keys of the Church have been given, **D&C 42:69** (**D&C 65:2**). May the kingdom of God go forth that the kingdom of heaven may come, **D&C 65:5–6**. The keys of this kingdom shall never be taken from you, **D&C 90:3**. Whoso receiveth you as a little child, receiveth my kingdom, **D&C 99:3**. Thus shall my Church be called in the last days, even The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, **D&C 115:4**. The heavens were opened and I beheld the celestial kingdom of God, **D&C 137:1–4**.

Kingmen

In the Book of Mormon, a group who wanted to overthrow the government of the Nephites (**Alma 51:1–8**).

Kings

Two books in the Old Testament. These books narrate the history of Israel from the rebellion of Adonijah, the fourth son of King David (about 1015 B.C.), to the final captivity of Judah (about 586 B.C.). They include the whole history of the northern kingdom (the ten tribes of Israel) from the separation until the Assyrians took them captive into the north countries. See also *Chronology* in the appendix.

First Kings: Chapter 1 describes the final days of King David's life. Chapters 2–11 record Solomon's life. Chapters 12–16 tell of Solomon's immediate successors, Rehoboam and Jeroboam. Jeroboam caused the division of the kingdom of Israel. Other kings are also mentioned. Chapters 17–21 record parts of the ministry of Elijah as he admonished Ahab, king of Israel. Chapter 22 records a war against Syria in which Ahab and Jehoshaphat, king of Judah, join forces. The prophet Micaiah prophesies against the kings.

Second Kings: Chapters 1:1–2:11 continue the life of Elijah, including Elijah's rise to heaven in a chariot of fire. Chapters 2–9 relate Elisha's ministry of faith and great power. Chapter 10 tells of Jehu, the king, and how he destroyed the house of Ahab and the priests of Baal. Chapters 11–13 record the righteous reign of Jehoash and the death of Elisha. Chapters 14–17 tell of various kings who reigned in Israel and Judah, often in wickedness. Chapter 15 records the Assyrian capture of the ten tribes of Israel. Chapters 18–20 record the righteous life of Hezekiah, the king of Judah, and the prophet Isaiah. Chapters 21–23 tell of the kings Manasseh and Josiah. According to tradition, Manasseh was responsible for the martyrdom of Isaiah. Josiah was a righteous king who reestablished the law among the Jews. Chapters 24–25 record the Babylonian captivity.

Kirtland Temple, Ohio (USA)

The first temple built by the Church in modern times. The Saints built it in Kirtland, according to the Lord's command (D&C 94:3–9). One purpose was to provide a place where worthy Church members could receive spiritual power, authority, and enlightenment (D&C 109–110). It was dedicated on March 27, 1836; the dedicatory prayer was given to the Prophet Joseph Smith by revelation (D&C 109). The Lord gave several important revelations and restored needed priesthood keys in this temple (D&C 110; 137). It was not used for the full temple ordinances given in temples today.

Kishkumen. *See also* Gadianton Robbers

In the Book of Mormon, a leader of a group of wicked men later known as the Gadianton robbers (Hel. 1:9–12; 2).

Knowledge. *See also* Truth; Understanding; Wisdom

Understanding and comprehension, especially of truth as taught or confirmed by the Spirit.

The Lord is a God of knowledge, **1 Sam.** 2:3. The Lord is perfect in knowledge, **Job** 37:16. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of knowledge, **Prov.** 1:7. He that has knowledge restrains his words, **Prov.** 17:27. The earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, **Isa.** 11:9 (2 Ne. 21:9; 30:15).

Ye have taken away the key of knowledge, **Luke** 11:52. The love of Christ passes knowledge, **Eph.** 3:19. Add to your faith virtue, and to virtue knowledge, **2 Pet.** 1:5.

Nephi had a great knowledge of the goodness of God, **1 Ne.** 1:1. They shall come to the knowledge of their Redeemer, **2 Ne.** 6:11. The righteous shall have a perfect knowledge of their righteousness, **2 Ne.** 9:14. The Spirit gives knowledge, **Alma** 18:35. Your knowledge is perfect in that thing,

Alma 32:34. The Lamanites shall be brought to the true knowledge of their Redeemer, **Hel.** 15:13. Ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God, **Moro.** 7:15–17.

The Saints shall find great treasures of knowledge, **D&C** 89:19. Pure knowledge greatly enlarges the soul, **D&C** 121:42. He who has the keys of the holy priesthood has no difficulty in obtaining a knowledge of facts, **D&C** 128:11. If a person gains knowledge in this life, he has an advantage in the world to come, **D&C** 130:19. It is impossible to be saved in ignorance, **D&C** 131:6.

Kolob

The star nearest the throne of God (**Abr.** 3:2–3, 9).

Abraham saw Kolob and the stars, **Abr.** 3:2–18. The Lord's time is reckoned according to the time of Kolob, **Abr.** 3:4, 9 (**Abr.** 5:13).

Korihor. *See also* Antichrist

An antichrist in the Book of Mormon who demanded a sign as proof of God's power; the Lord caused Korihor to become dumb (**Alma** 30:6–60).

Laban, Brother of Rebekah. *See also* Rebekah

In the Old Testament, a brother of Rebekah and the father of Leah and Rachel, Jacob's wives (**Gen.** 24:29–60; 27:43–44; 28:1–5; 29:4–29; 30:25–42; 31).

Laban, Keeper of the Brass Plates. *See also* Brass Plates

In the Book of Mormon, the man who kept the brass plates in Jerusalem at the time of Lehi's family. Laban robbed and tried to kill Nephi and his brothers (1 **Ne.** 3:1–27). The Spirit led Nephi to slay Laban in order to get the plates (1 **Ne.** 4:1–26).

Laman. *See also* Lamanites; Lehi, Father of Nephi

In the Book of Mormon, the oldest

son of Lehi and Sariah and the oldest brother of Nephi (1 **Ne.** 2:5). Laman generally chose to do evil instead of good.

Laman murmured against his father, 1 **Ne.** 2:11–12. Rebelled against his righteous brother Nephi, 1 **Ne.** 7:6 (1 **Ne.** 3:28–29). Did not partake of the fruit of the tree of life in Lehi's vision, 1 **Ne.** 8:35–36. A curse came upon Laman and his followers, 2 **Ne.** 5:21 (**Alma** 3:7).

Lamanites. *See also* Book of Mormon; Laman; Nephites

A group of people in the Book of Mormon, many of whom were descendants of Laman, the eldest son of Lehi. They felt they had been wronged by Nephi and his descendants (**Mosiah** 10:11–17). As a result, they rebelled against the Nephites and often rejected the teachings of the gospel. However, shortly before the birth of Jesus Christ, the Lamanites accepted the gospel and were more righteous than the Nephites (**Hel.** 6:34–36). Two hundred years after Christ visited the Americas, both the Lamanites and the Nephites became wicked and began to wage war against each other. Around A.D. 400, the Lamanites completely destroyed the Nephite nation.

The Lamanites overcame the seed of Nephi, 1 **Ne.** 12:19–20. The Lamanites hated the Nephites, 2 **Ne.** 5:14. The Lamanites shall be a scourge to the Nephites, 2 **Ne.** 5:25. The Book of Mormon will restore to the Lamanites a knowledge of their forefathers and of the gospel of Jesus Christ, 2 **Ne.** 30:3–6 (title page of the Book of Mormon).

The Lamanites are a remnant of the Jews, **D&C** 19:27. The Lamanites shall blossom as the rose before the Lord's coming, **D&C** 49:24.

Lamb of God. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Jesus Christ; Passover

A name for the Savior that refers to Jesus as the sacrificial offering given in our behalf.

He is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, **Isa.** 53:7 (Mosiah 14:7).

Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world, **John** 1:29 (Alma 7:14). Ye were redeemed with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish, **1 Pet.** 1:18–20. Worthy is the Lamb that was slain, **Rev.** 5:12. We overcome Satan by the blood of the Lamb, **Rev.** 12:11.

These are made white in the blood of the Lamb, because of their faith in him, **1 Ne.** 12:11. The Lamb of God is the Son of the Eternal Father, and the Savior of the world, **1 Ne.** 13:40 (1 Ne. 11:21). Cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, **Morm.** 9:6 (Rev. 7:14; Alma 34:36).

The Son of Man is the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world, **Moses** 7:47.

Lamentations, Book of

A book in the Old Testament, written by Jeremiah. It is a collection of poems or songs of grief because of the fall of Jerusalem and the Israelite nation. The book was written after the fall of the city about 586 B.C.

Lamoni. *See also* Ammon, Son of Mosiah

In the Book of Mormon, a Lamanite king who was converted by the Spirit of the Lord and the inspired labors and teachings of Ammon (Alma 17–19).

Language

Words, written or spoken, put together in specific patterns in order to communicate information, thoughts, and ideas. How we use language shows how we feel toward God and other people. At the Second Coming of Jesus Christ the Lord will give to all mankind a pure language (Zeph. 3:8–9).

The whole earth was of one language, **Gen.** 11:1. The Lord did confound the language of all the earth, **Gen.** 11:4–9.

Every man heard them speak in his own language, **Acts** 2:1–6.

The Lord speaketh unto men according to their language, **2 Ne.** 31:3 (D&C 1:24). Benjamin taught his sons the language of his fathers, that they might become men of understanding, **Mosiah** 1:2–5.

He whose language is meek and edifieth is of God if he obey mine ordinances, **D&C** 52:16. Become acquainted with languages, tongues, and people, **D&C** 90:15.

Adam and his children had a language which was pure and undefiled, **Moses** 6:5–6, 46. God gave Enoch great power of language, **Moses** 7:13.

Last Days, Latter Days. *See also* Second Coming of Jesus Christ; Signs of the Times

The time in which we now live. The days (or dispensation of time) just before the Second Coming of the Lord.

I tell you what shall befall you in the last days, **Gen.** 49:1. The Redeemer shall stand at the latter day upon the earth, **Job** 19:25. In the last days, the Lord's house shall be established, **Isa.** 2:2.

In the last days perilous times shall come, **2 Tim.** 3:1–7. Latter-day scoffers shall deny the Second Coming, **2 Pet.** 3:3–7.

I prophesy unto you concerning the last days, **2 Ne.** 26:14–30.

Thus shall my church be called in the last days, even The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, **D&C** 115:4.

Christ will come in the last days, **Moses** 7:60.

Last Supper. *See also* Passover; Sacrament

According to the New Testament, the last meal that Jesus ate before His arrest and crucifixion (Luke 22:14–18). He and His Twelve Apostles ate this meal during the Passover (Matt. 26:17–30; Mark 14:12–18; Luke 22:7–13).

The Savior blessed bread and wine

and gave it to the Apostles, **Matt.** 26:26–29 (Mark 14:22–25; Luke 22:7–20). Jesus washed the feet of the Apostles, **John** 13. Judas was named as Jesus' betrayer, **John** 13:21–26 (Matt. 26:20–25).

Law. *See also* Bless, Blessed, Blessing; Commandments of God; Law of Moses; Obedience, Obedient, Obey

The commandments or rules of God upon which all blessings and punishments are based both in heaven and on earth. Those who obey the laws of God receive the promised blessings. The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that people should also obey, honor, and sustain the laws of the land (A of F 1:12).

The law of Moses was a preparatory law to bring men and women to Christ. It was a law of restrictions, prescriptions, and ordinances. Today the law of Christ, which fulfilled the law of Moses, is the fulness of the gospel or "the perfect law of liberty" (James 1:25).

God gave commandments to Adam, **Gen.** 1:28; 2:16–17. God gave laws to Noah, **Gen.** 9:1. The law of the Lord is perfect, converting the soul, **P.s.** 19:7. The Lord is our lawgiver, **Isa.** 33:22.

There is one lawgiver, **James** 4:12.

Where there is no law, there is no punishment, **2 Ne.** 9:25. There is a law given, **Alma** 42:17–22. Men will be judged according to law, **Alma** 42:23. Christ is the law, **3 Ne.** 15:9.

All laws are spiritual, **D&C** 29:34. Joseph Smith received the law of the Church by revelation, **D&C** 42. He who keeps God's law has no need to break the laws of the land, **D&C** 58:21. The light of Christ is the law by which all things are governed, **D&C** 88:7–13. He hath given a law to all things, **D&C** 88:42–43. People should observe the law of the land, **D&C** 98:4–5. When we obtain a blessing from God, it is by obedience to law, **D&C** 130:20–21. The Church declared its beliefs concerning civil laws, **D&C** 134.

Mankind is saved by obedience to

the laws and ordinances of the gospel, **A of F** 1:3.

Law of Moses. *See also* Aaronic Priesthood; Clean and Unclean; Law; Moses

God gave laws through Moses to the house of Israel to replace the higher law that they had failed to obey (Ex. 34; JST, Ex. 34:1–2; JST, Deut. 10:2 [Appendix]). The law of Moses consisted of many principles, rules, ceremonies, rituals, and symbols to remind the people of their duties and responsibilities. It included a law of moral, ethical, religious, and physical commandments and performances—including sacrifices (Lev. 1–7)—that were intended to remind them of God and their duty towards Him (Mosiah 13:30). Faith, repentance, baptism in water, and remission of sins were part of the law, as were the Ten Commandments and many other commandments of high ethical and moral value. Much of the ceremonial law was fulfilled at the death and Resurrection of Jesus Christ, which ended sacrifice by the shedding of blood (Alma 34:13–14). The law was administered under the Aaronic Priesthood and was a preparatory gospel to bring its adherents to Christ.

I will give unto them the law as at the first, but it shall be after the law of a carnal commandment, **JST**, Ex. 34:1–2.

The law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, **Gal.** 3:19–24.

We keep the law of Moses and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, **2 Ne.** 25:24–30. Salvation does not come by the law of Moses alone, **Mosiah** 12:27–13:32. In me is the law of Moses fulfilled, **3 Ne.** 9:17. The law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me, **3 Ne.** 15:1–10.

Because of disobedience, the Lord took Moses and the Holy Priesthood from the children of Israel, leaving the law of carnal commandments, **D&C** 84:23–27.

Laying on of Hands. *See* Hands, Laying on of

Lazarus. *See also* Martha; Mary of Bethany

In the New Testament, the brother of Martha and Mary. Jesus raised him from the dead (John 11:1–44; 12:1–2, 9–11). This is not the same Lazarus as the beggar in a parable that Jesus taught (Luke 16:19–31).

Leah. *See also* Jacob, Son of Isaac; Laban, Brother of Rebekah

In the Old Testament, the eldest daughter of Laban and one of Jacob's wives (Gen. 29). Leah became the mother of six sons and one daughter (Gen. 29:31–35; 30:17–21).

Lehi, Father of Nephi

In the Book of Mormon, a Hebrew prophet who led his family and followers from Jerusalem to a promised land in the western hemisphere about 600 B.C. Lehi was the first prophet among his people in the Book of Mormon.

Lehi fled Jerusalem with his family at the command of the Lord (1 Ne. 2:1–4). He was a descendant of Joseph, who was sold into Egypt (1 Ne. 5:14). The Lord gave him a vision of the tree of life (1 Ne. 8:2–35). Lehi and his sons built a boat and sailed to the western hemisphere (1 Ne. 17–18). He and his descendants became established in a new land (1 Ne. 18:23–25). Before he died, Lehi blessed his sons and taught them of Christ and the coming forth of the Book of Mormon in the latter days (2 Ne. 1:1–4:12).

The book of Lehi: Joseph Smith began with the book of Lehi when he was translating the Book of Mormon. It was a record that Mormon had abridged from the plates of Lehi. After he had 116 pages of manuscript that he had translated from this book, Joseph gave the manuscript to Martin Harris, who had briefly served as Joseph's scribe in the translation of the Book of Mormon.

The pages were then lost. Joseph did not retranslate the book of Lehi to replace the lost manuscript but instead translated other related accounts from the gold plates (see the introductions to D&C 3; 10). These other accounts now are the first six books of the Book of Mormon.

Lehi, Nephite Military Commander

In the Book of Mormon, a Nephite military commander (Alma 43:35–53; 49:16–17; 52:27–36; 53:2; 61:15–21).

Lehi, Nephite Missionary. *See also* Helaman, Son of Helaman

In the Book of Mormon, a son of Helaman, who was the son of Helaman. Lehi was a great missionary (Hel. 3:21; 4:14).

Was named Lehi to be reminded of his forefather, **Hel.** 5:4–6. With Nephi, made many converts, was imprisoned, was encircled by fire, and spoke with angels, **Hel.** 5:14–48. Received many revelations daily, **Hel.** 11:23.

Lemuel. *See also* Laman; Lamanites; Lehi, Father of Nephi

In the Book of Mormon, the second son of Lehi and one of Nephi's older brothers. He joined with Laman to oppose Nephi.

Lehi admonished Lemuel to be steadfast, like a valley, **1 Ne.** 2:10. Became angry with Nephi and hearkened unto Laman, **1 Ne.** 3:28. Lemuelites were included among the Lamanites, **Jacob** 1:13–14 (Alma 47:35).

Leprosy

A terrible form of skin disease spoken of in the Old and New Testaments. Many notable people in the Bible were at some time afflicted with it, including Moses (Ex. 4:6–7), his sister Miriam (Num. 12:10), Naaman (2 Kgs. 5), and King Uzziah (2 Chr. 26:19–21).

Jesus cured leprosy in several people, **Matt.** 8:2–4 (Mark 1:40–45; Luke 5:12–15;

Levi

3 Ne. 17:7–9). Jesus cured ten lepers, **Luke** 17:11–19.

Levi. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, the third son of Jacob and Leah (Gen. 29:34; 35:23). Levi became the father of one of the tribes of Israel.

The tribe of Levi: Jacob blessed Levi and his descendants (Gen. 49:5–7, 28). Descendants of Levi ministered in the sanctuaries of Israel (Num. 1:47–54). Aaron was a Levite, and his descendants were priests (Ex. 6:16–20; 28:1–4; 29). The Levites assisted the priests, the sons of Aaron (Num. 3:5–10; 1 Kgs. 8:4). They sometimes acted as musicians (1 Chr. 15:16; Neh. 11:22); slaughtered sacrifices (2 Chr. 29:34; Ezra 6:20); and generally assisted in the temple (Neh. 11:16). The Levites were dedicated to the service of the Lord to execute the ordinances for the children of Israel. The Levites were themselves offered on behalf of the children of Israel (Num. 8:11–22); they thus became God's peculiar property, given to Him in place of the firstborn (Num. 8:16). They were not consecrated but were cleansed for their office (Num. 8:7–16). They had no land inheritance in Canaan (Num. 18:23–24), but they received the tithe (Num. 18:21), forty-eight cities (Num. 35:6), and a right to receive the alms of the people at feast times (Deut. 12:18–19; 14:27–29).

Levitical Priesthood. *See* Aaronic Priesthood

Leviticus. *See also* Pentateuch

A book in the Old Testament that tells of the priestly duties in Israel. It emphasizes the holiness of God and the code by which His people could live to become holy. Its object is to teach the moral precepts and religious truths of the law of Moses by means of ritual. Moses wrote the book of Leviticus.

Chapters 1–7 explain the sacrificial ordinances. Chapters 8–10 describe the ritual observed in the consecration of

priests. Chapter 11 explains what may or may not be eaten and what is clean or unclean. Chapter 12 discusses women after childbirth. Chapters 13–15 are laws relating to ceremonial uncleanness. Chapter 16 contains the ritual to be observed on the Day of Atonement. Chapters 17–26 contain a code of laws dealing with religious and social observances. Chapter 27 explains that the Lord commanded Israel to consecrate their crops, flocks, and herds to the Lord.

Liahona

In the Book of Mormon, a brass ball with two pointers that gave directions—as a compass—and also spiritual instruction to Lehi and his followers when they were righteous. The Lord provided the Liahona and gave instructions through it.

Lehi found a brass ball with two spin-dles that pointed the way that Lehi and his family should go, **1 Ne.** 16:10. The ball worked according to faith and diligence, **1 Ne.** 16:28–29 (Alma 37:40). Benjamin gave the ball to Mosiah, **Mosiah** 1:16. The ball or director was called the Liahona, **Alma** 37:38. The Liahona was compared to the word of Christ, **Alma** 37:43–45.

The Three Witnesses of the Book of Mormon are to see the director given to Lehi, **D&C** 17:1.

Liberty. *See also* Agency; Captivity; Free, Freedom

The state or condition of being able to act and think freely. Obedience to gospel principles frees a person from the spiritual bondage of sin (John 8:31–36).

I will walk at liberty: for I seek thy precepts, **Ps.** 119:45.

Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty, **2 Cor.** 3:17. Stand fast in the liberty wherewith Christ hath made us free, **Gal.** 5:1 (D&C 88:86).

Men are free to choose liberty and eternal life, **2 Ne.** 2:27. This land shall be a land of liberty, **2 Ne.** 10:11. Moroni

planted the standard of liberty among the Nephites, **Alma** 46:36.

The Lord and his servants declare liberty to the captive spirits, **D&C** 138:18, 31, 42.

Liberty Jail, Missouri (USA). *See also* Smith, Joseph, Jr.

A small jail in which the Prophet Joseph Smith and others were unjustly imprisoned from November 1838 to April 1839. While in these difficult conditions, Joseph received certain revelations, gave prophecies, and was inspired to write an important letter to the Saints, excerpts of which are contained in Doctrine and Covenants 121–123.

Life. *See also* Eternal Life; Light, Light of Christ

Temporal and spiritual existence made possible by the power of God.

I have set before thee this day life and good, **Deut.** 30:15–20. Thou wilt shew me the path of life, **Ps.** 16:11. He that followeth after righteousness findeth life, **Prov.** 21:21.

He that findeth his life shall lose it: and he that loseth his life for my sake shall find it, **Matt.** 10:39 (**Matt.** 16:25; **Mark** 8:35; **Luke** 9:24; 17:33). The Son of Man is not come to destroy men's lives, but to save them, **Luke** 9:56. In him was life, and the life was the light of men, **John** 1:4. He that believeth on him that sent me is passed from death unto life, **John** 5:24. I am the way, the truth, and the life, **John** 14:6. If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are most miserable, **1 Cor.** 15:19–22. Godliness has promise of the life that now is, and of that which is to come, **1 Tim.** 4:8.

Our children may look forward to that life which is in Christ, **2 Ne.** 25:23–27. This life is the time for men to prepare to meet God, **Alma** 34:32 (**Alma** 12:24). I am the light and the life of the world, **3 Ne.** 9:18 (**Mosiah** 16:9; **3 Ne.** 11:11; **Ether** 4:12).

Blessed are they who are faithful, whether in life or in death, **D&C** 50:5.

This is eternal lives—to know God and Jesus Christ, **D&C** 132:24.

This is my work and my glory—to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man, **Moses** 1:39.

Light, Light of Christ. *See also* Conscience; Holy Ghost; Intelligence, Intelligences; Jesus Christ; Truth

Divine energy, power, or influence that proceeds from God through Christ and gives life and light to all things. It is the law by which all things are governed in heaven and on earth (**D&C** 88:6–13). It also helps people understand gospel truths and helps to put them on the gospel path that leads to salvation (**John** 3:19–21; 12:46; **Alma** 26:15; 32:35; **D&C** 93:28–29, 31–32, 40, 42).

The light of Christ should not be confused with the Holy Ghost. The light of Christ is not a person. It is an influence that comes from God and prepares a person to receive the Holy Ghost. It is an influence for good in the lives of all people (**John** 1:9; **D&C** 84:46–47).

One manifestation of the light of Christ is conscience, which helps a person choose between right and wrong (**Moro.** 7:16). As people learn more about the gospel, their consciences become more sensitive (**Moro.** 7:12–19). People who hearken to the light of Christ are led to the gospel of Jesus Christ (**D&C** 84:46–48).

The Lord is my light, **Ps.** 27:1. Let us walk in the light of the Lord, **Isa.** 2:5 (**2 Ne.** 12:5). The Lord shall be an everlasting light, **Isa.** 60:19.

The true Light lighteth every man that cometh into the world, **John** 1:4–9 (**John** 3:19; **D&C** 6:21; 34:1–3). I am the light of the world, **John** 8:12 (**John** 9:5; **D&C** 11:28).

Whatsoever is light, is good, **Alma** 32:35. Christ is the life and the light of the world, **Alma** 38:9 (**3 Ne.** 9:18; 11:11; **Ether** 4:12). The Spirit of Christ is given

Light-Mindedness

to every man that he may know good from evil, **Moro.** 7:15–19.

That which is of God is light, and groweth brighter and brighter until the perfect day, **D&C** 50:24. The Spirit giveth light to every man, **D&C** 84:45–48 (**D&C** 93:1–2). He that keepeth his commandments receiveth light and truth, **D&C** 93:27–28. Light and truth forsake that evil one, **D&C** 93:37.

Light-Mindedness. *See also* Evil Speaking

To treat lightly sacred things (**D&C** 84:54).

The Saints are not to have idle thoughts, nor an excess of laughter, **D&C** 88:69. Cease from all your pride and light-mindedness, **D&C** 88:121.

Limhi. *See also* Noah, Son of Zeniff

In the Book of Mormon, a righteous king of the Nephites in the land of Nephi; he was a son of King Noah (Mosiah 7:7–9). King Limhi entered into a covenant to serve God (Mosiah 21:32). He led his people out of Lamanite bondage and returned to Zarahemla (Mosiah 22).

Living Water. *See also* Jesus Christ

A symbol of the Lord Jesus Christ and His teachings. As water is essential to sustain physical life, the Savior and His teachings (living water) are essential for eternal life.

With joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of salvation, **Isa.** 12:3. They have forsaken me the fountain of living waters, **Jer.** 2:13.

Whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst, **John** 4:6–15. If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink, **John** 7:37.

The rod of iron led to the fountain of living waters, **1 Ne.** 11:25.

Partake of the waters of life freely, **D&C** 10:66. My commandments shall be a well of living water, **D&C** 63:23.

Lord. *See also* God, Godhead; Jesus Christ

A title of deep respect and honor for God the Father and the Savior Jesus Christ. The title refers to Their positions as supreme, loving masters over Their creations.

Nothing is too hard for the Lord, **Gen.** 18:14. The Lord spoke to Moses face to face, **Ex.** 33:11. Thou shalt love the Lord thy God, **Deut.** 6:5 (**Matt.** 22:37; **Mark** 12:30). As for me and my house, we will serve the Lord, **Josh.** 24:15. The Lord is my shepherd, **Ps.** 23:1. The Lord is strong and mighty, mighty in battle, **Ps.** 24:8. The Lord Jehovah is my strength, **Isa.** 12:2 (2 **Ne.** 22:2). I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, **Isa.** 60:16.

Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God, **Matt.** 4:10 (**Luke** 4:8). How great things the Lord hath done, **Mark** 5:19. There is one Lord Jesus Christ, **1 Cor.** 8:6. There is one Lord, one faith, one baptism, **Eph.** 4:5. The Lord himself shall descend from heaven, **1 Thes.** 4:16.

I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, **1 Ne.** 3:7. The Lord shall judge the poor with righteousness, **2 Ne.** 30:9. The Lord God, the God of Abraham, did deliver the Israelites out of bondage, **Alma** 29:11. Nothing can save the people except repentance and faith on the Lord, **Hel.** 13:6 (**Mosiah** 3:12).

Listen to the words of Jesus Christ, your Lord, **D&C** 15:1. Seek the face of the Lord always, **D&C** 101:38. The Lord shall be red in his apparel at the Second Coming, **D&C** 133:48 (**Isa.** 63:1–4).

Abraham talked with the Lord face to face, **Abr.** 3:11. We believe that the first principle of the gospel is faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, **A of F** 1:4.

Lord of Hosts. *See also* Jesus Christ

Another name for Jesus Christ. He reigns over the hosts of heaven and earth and leads the righteous against evil (**D&C** 29:9; 121:23).

The Lord of Hosts is the King of glory, **Ps.** 24:10.

The God of Israel is the Lord of Hosts, **1 Ne.** 20:2.

My Spirit shall not always strive with man, saith the Lord of Hosts, **D&C** 1:33.

Lord's Day. *See* Sabbath Day

Lord's House. *See* Temple, House of the Lord

Lord's Prayer. *See also* Prayer

A prayer offered by the Savior for His disciples that serves as a pattern for all prayer (**Matt.** 6:9–13; **3 Ne.** 13:9–13).

Lord's Supper. *See* Sacrament

Lost Books of Scripture. *See* Scriptures—Lost scriptures

Lost Tribes. *See* Israel—The ten lost tribes of Israel

Lot. *See also* Abraham

In the Old Testament, the son of Haran and nephew of Abraham (**Gen.** 11:27, 31; **Abr.** 2:4). Haran died because of the famine in Ur (**Abr.** 2:1). Lot left Ur with Abraham and Sarah and traveled with them to Canaan (**Gen.** 12:4–5). Lot chose to live in Sodom. The Lord sent messengers to warn Lot to flee from Sodom before the Lord destroyed it because of the wickedness of the people (**Gen.** 13:8–13; 19:1, 13, 15); however, Lot's wife looked backward at the destruction and became a pillar of salt (**Gen.** 19:26). The New Testament contains references to Lot (**Luke** 17:29; **2 Pet.** 2:6–7). His life after his separation from Abraham is described in **Genesis** 13, 14, and 19.

Lots

A way of selecting or eliminating several options of a choice, often done by choosing one slip of paper or piece of wood from among several. This is called casting lots.

They parted his garments, casting lots, **Matt.** 27:35 (**Ps.** 22:18; **Mark** 15:24;

Luke 23:34; **John** 19:24). They gave forth their lots, and the lot fell upon Matthias, **Acts** 1:23–26.

We cast lots—who of us should go in unto the house of Laban, **1 Ne.** 3:11.

Love. *See also* Charity; Compassion; Enmity

Deep devotion and affection. Love for God includes devotion, adoration, reverence, tenderness, mercy, forgiveness, compassion, grace, service, gratitude, kindness. The greatest example of God's love for His children is found in the infinite Atonement of Jesus Christ.

Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself, **Lev.** 19:18 (**Matt.** 5:43–44; 22:37–40; **Rom.** 13:9; **Gal.** 5:14; **James** 2:8; **Mosiah** 23:15; **D&C** 59:6). Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, **Deut.** 6:5 (**Moro.** 10:32; **D&C** 59:5). The Lord your God proveth you, to know whether ye love the Lord your God, **Deut.** 13:3. Whom the Lord loveth he correcteth, **Prov.** 3:12. A friend loveth at all times, **Prov.** 17:17.

God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, **John** 3:16 (**D&C** 138:3). Love one another; as I have loved you, **John** 13:34 (**John** 15:12, 17; **Moses** 7:33). If ye love me, keep my commandments, **John** 14:15 (**D&C** 42:29). Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends, **John** 15:13. Peter, lovest thou me more than these? Feed my sheep, **John** 21:15–17. Nothing shall separate us from the love of God in Christ, **Rom.** 8:35–39. Eye hath not seen the things which God hath prepared for them that love him, **1 Cor.** 2:9. By love serve one another, **Gal.** 5:13. Husbands, love your wives, **Eph.** 5:25 (**Col.** 3:19). Love not the world, **1 Jn.** 2:15. God is love, **1 Jn.** 4:8. We love him, because he first loved us, **1 Jn.** 4:19.

Christ suffereth because of his loving kindness towards men, **1 Ne.** 19:9. Press forward with a love of God and of all men, **2 Ne.** 31:20. Ye will teach your children to love and serve one

Lucifer

another, **Mosiah** 4:15. If ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, can ye feel so now, **Alma** 5:26. Be led by the Holy Spirit, becoming patient, full of love, **Alma** 13:28. Bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with love, **Alma** 38:12. There was no contention because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people, **4 Ne.** 1:15. Everything which inviteth to love God is inspired of God, **Moro.** 7:13–16. Charity is the pure love of Christ, **Moro.** 7:47. Perfect love casteth out fear, **Moro.** 8:16 (1 Jn. 4:18).

Love qualifies men for God's work, **D&C** 4:5 (**D&C** 12:8). Sanctification comes to all those who love and serve God, **D&C** 20:31. If thou lovest me, serve me and keep my commandments, **D&C** 42:29 (John 14:15). Show an increase of love to those whom you correct or reprove, **D&C** 121:43.

Men loved Satan more than God, **Moses** 5:13, 18, 28.

Lucifer. *See also* Antichrist; Destroyer; Devil; Hell; Sons of Perdition

The name means the "Shining One" or "Lightbearer." He is also known as the Son of the Morning. Lucifer was a spirit son of Heavenly Father and led the rebellion in the premortal life. The name Lucifer appears only once in the Bible (Isa. 14:12). Latter-day revelation gives more detail on Lucifer's fall (**D&C** 76:25–29).

Lucifer fell in the premortal existence, **Isa.** 14:12 (Luke 10:18; 2 Ne. 24:12).

After his fall he became Satan and the devil, **D&C** 76:25–29 (**Moses** 4:1–4).

Luke. *See also* Acts of the Apostles; Gospels

The author of the Gospel of Luke and the book of Acts in the New Testament and a missionary companion of Paul. He was born to Greek parents and practiced medicine (Col. 4:14). Luke was well educated. He identified himself as a companion to the Apostle Paul when he joined Paul at Troas (Acts 16:10–11).

Luke was also with Paul at Philippi on Paul's last journey to Jerusalem (Acts 20:6), and the two were together until their arrival in Rome. Luke was also with Paul during his second Roman imprisonment (2 Tim. 4:11). Tradition says he died a martyr.

The Gospel of Luke: An account that Luke wrote of Jesus Christ and His mortal ministry. The book of Acts of the Apostles is a continuation of the Gospel of Luke. Luke left a well-written account of Jesus' ministry, presenting Jesus as the Savior of both Jews and Gentiles. He wrote much about Jesus' teachings and His doings. In Luke we get the only accounts of the visits of Gabriel to Zacharias and Mary (Luke 1); the visit of the shepherds to the baby Jesus (Luke 2:8–18); Jesus at the temple at age twelve (Luke 2:41–52); the seventy charged and sent (Luke 10:1–24); Jesus sweating blood (Luke 22:44); Jesus' discussion with the thief on the cross (Luke 23:39–43); and Jesus eating fish and honey after His Resurrection (Luke 24:42–43).

For a list of events in the Savior's life described in the Gospel of Luke, see *Harmony of the Gospels* in the appendix.

Lust. *See also* Sensual, Sensuality

To have an inappropriately strong desire for something.

Lust not after her beauty in thine heart, **Prov.** 6:25.

Whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery, **Matt.** 5:28 (3 Ne. 12:28). Men burned in their lust one toward another, **Rom.** 1:27. After their own lusts they shall heap to themselves teachers, **2 Tim.** 4:3–4.

Laban saw our property and did lust after it, **1 Ne.** 3:25. Go no more after the lusts of your eyes, **Alma** 39:3–4, 9.

He that looketh upon a woman to lust after her shall deny the faith,

D&C 42:23. Cease from all your lustful desires, **D&C 88:121.**

Lying. *See also* Deceit, Deceive, Deception; Evil Speaking; Honest, Honesty

Any communication of falsehood or untruth for the purpose of deception.

Ye shall not steal, neither deal falsely, neither lie, **Lev.** 19:11. I hate and abhor lying, **Ps.** 119:163. Lying lips are abomination to the Lord, **Prov.** 12:22. They are my people that will not lie, **Isa.** 63:8.

The devil is a liar and the father of lies, **John** 8:44 (2 **Ne.** 2:18; **Ether** 8:25; **Moses** 4:4). Thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God, **Acts** 5:4 (**Alma** 12:3). If a man say, I love God, and hateth his brother, he is a liar, **1 Jn.** 4:20. All liars have part in the second death, **Rev.** 21:8 (**D&C** 63:17).

Wo unto the liar, for he shall be thrust down to hell, **2 Ne.** 9:34. Many will teach false doctrine, saying: lie a little and there is no harm in it, **2 Ne.** 28:8–9 (**D&C** 10:25). Do ye imagine you can lie unto the Lord, **Alma** 5:17. Thou art a God of truth and canst not lie, **Ether** 3:12 (**Num.** 23:19; **1 Sam.** 15:29; **Titus** 1:2; **Heb.** 6:18; **Enos** 1:6).

He that lieth and will not repent shall be cast out, **D&C** 42:21. Liars inherit testial glory, **D&C** 76:81, 103–106.

We believe in being honest, **A of F** 1:13.

Magog. *See also* Gog; Second Coming of Jesus Christ

In the Bible, a land and people near the Black Sea. Their king, Gog, shall lead the armies of Magog in a last great battle before the Second Coming of Christ (**Ezek.** 38:2; 39:6). The scriptures speak of another great battle of Gog and Magog at the end of the Millennium between the forces of God and the forces of evil (**Rev.** 20:7–9; **D&C** 88:111–116).

Malachi

An Old Testament prophet who

wrote and prophesied at approximately 430 B.C.

The book of Malachi: The book or prophecy of Malachi is the last book in the Old Testament. It seems to follow four major themes: (1) the sins of Israel—**Malachi** 1:6–2:17; 3:8–9; (2) the judgments to come upon Israel because of their disobedience—**Malachi** 1:14; 2:2–3, 12; 3:5; (3) the promises for obedience—**Malachi** 3:10–12, 16–18; 4:2–3; and (4) prophecies pertaining to Israel—**Malachi** 3:1–5; 4:1, 5–6 (**D&C** 2; 128:17; **JS—H** 1:37–39).

In his prophecy, Malachi wrote of John the Baptist (**Mal.** 3:1; **Matt.** 11:10), the law of tithing (**Mal.** 3:7–12), the Second Coming of the Lord (**Mal.** 4:5), and the return of Elijah (**Mal.** 4:5–6; **D&C** 2; 128:17; **JS—H** 1:37–39). The Savior quoted all of Malachi chapters 3 and 4 to the Nephites (**3 Ne.** 24–25).

Mammon. *See also* Money

An Aramaic word meaning “riches” (**Matt.** 6:24; **Luke** 16:9; **D&C** 82:22).

Man, Men. *See also* Brethren, Brother; God, Godhead; Sister; Sons and Daughters of God; Spirit; Spirit Creation; Woman, Women

Refers to all mankind, both male and female. All men and women are the literal spirit offspring of a Heavenly Father. When they are born into mortality, they receive physical, mortal bodies. These bodies were created in God’s image (**Gen.** 1:26–27). Men and women who are faithful in receiving the necessary ordinances, keeping their covenants, and obeying God’s commands will enter into their exaltation and become as God.

God created man in his own image, **Gen.** 1:27 (**Mosiah** 7:27; **D&C** 20:17–18). What is man, that thou art mindful of him, **Ps.** 8:4–5. Cursed is the man that trusteth in man and maketh flesh his arm, **Jer.** 17:5 (2 **Ne.** 4:34; 28:26, 31).

Manasseh

When I became a man, I put away childish things, **1 Cor.** 13:11.

Men are that they might have joy, **2 Ne.** 2:25. The natural man is an enemy to God, **Mosiah** 3:19. What manner of men ought ye to be, **3 Ne.** 27:27.

The works of man are frustrated, not the works of God, **D&C** 3:3. You should not fear man more than God, **D&C** 3:7 (**D&C** 30:11; 122:9). All things are made for the benefit and the use of man, **D&C** 59:18.

I know that man is nothing, **Moses** 1:10. God's work and glory is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man, **Moses** 1:39.

Man, a spirit child of Heavenly Father: They fell upon their faces, and said, O God, the God of the spirits of all flesh, **Num.** 16:22 (**Num.** 27:16). Ye are the children of the Lord your God, **Deut.** 14:1. Ye are gods and all of you are children of the Most High, **Ps.** 82:6. Ye are the sons of the living God, **Hosea** 1:10. Have we not all one Father? Hath not one God created us, **Mal.** 2:10.

We are the offspring of God, **Acts** 17:29. The Spirit itself beareth witness that we are the children of God, **Rom.** 8:16. Be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, **Heb.** 12:9.

The spirits of all men are taken home to that God who gave them life, **Alma** 40:11.

The inhabitants of the worlds are begotten sons and daughters of God, **D&C** 76:24. Man was in the beginning with the Father, **D&C** 93:23, 29.

God created all men spiritually, before they were upon the face of the earth, **Moses** 3:5–7. I am God; I made the world, and men before they were in the flesh, **Moses** 6:51.

Man, potential to become like Heavenly Father: Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father, **Matt.** 5:48 (**3 Ne.** 12:48). Is it not written in your law that ye are gods, **John** 10:34 (**D&C** 76:58). We may become heirs of God and joint heirs with Christ,

Rom. 8:17. Thou art a son, and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ, **Gal.** 4:7. When he shall appear, we shall be like him, **1 Jn.** 3:2. To him that overcometh will I grant to sit with me on my throne, **Rev.** 3:21.

To them have I given to become the sons of God, **3 Ne.** 9:17.

Those who inherit the celestial kingdom are gods, even the sons of God, **D&C** 76:50, 58. Then shall they be gods, because they have all power, **D&C** 132:20.

Manasseh. See also Ephraim; Israel; Joseph, Son of Jacob

In the Old Testament, the oldest son of Asenath and Joseph who was sold into Egypt (**Gen.** 41:50–51). He and his brother Ephraim were grandsons of Jacob (Israel) but were adopted and blessed by him as if they were his own sons (**Gen.** 48:1–20).

The tribe of Manasseh: Manasseh's descendants were numbered among the tribes of Israel (**Num.** 1:34–35; **Josh.** 13:29–31). Moses' blessing of the tribe of Joseph, which was given also to Ephraim and Manasseh, is recorded in Deuteronomy 33:13–17. Their assigned land was partly west of the Jordan and next to Ephraim's. They also had colonies east of the Jordan in the rich pastureland of Bashan and Gilead. In the last days, the tribe of Manasseh will assist the tribe of Ephraim in gathering scattered Israel (**Deut.** 33:13–17). The Book of Mormon prophet Lehi was a descendant of Manasseh (**Alma** 10:3).

Manifesto. See also Marriage, Marry—Plural marriage; Woodruff, Wilford

An official declaration by President Wilford Woodruff in 1890 clearly stating that the Church and its members submitted to the law of the land and no longer entered into plural marriage (OD 1). President Woodruff issued the

Manifesto following a vision and revelation from God.

Manna. *See also* Bread of Life; Exodus

A small, round food substance with the taste of honey wafers (Ex. 16:14–31) or of fresh oil (Num. 11:7–8). The Lord provided it to feed the children of Israel during their forty years in the wilderness (Ex. 16:4–5, 14–30, 35; Josh. 5:12; 1 Ne. 17:28).

The children of Israel called it manna (or *man-hu* in Hebrew)—which meant “What is it?”—because they did not know what it was (Ex. 16:15). It was also called “angels’ food” and “bread from heaven” (Ps. 78:24–25; John 6:31). It was a symbol for Christ, who would be the Bread of Life (John 6:31–35).

Man of Holiness. *See also* Father in Heaven; God, Godhead; Son of Man

Another name for God the Father (Moses 6:57).

Mark. *See also* Gospels

In the New Testament, John Mark was the son of Mary, who lived in Jerusalem (Acts 12:12); he may also have been the cousin (or nephew) of Barnabas (Col. 4:10). He went with Paul and Barnabas from Jerusalem on their first missionary journey and left them at Perga (Acts 12:25; 13:5, 13). Later he accompanied Barnabas to Cyprus (Acts 15:37–39). He was with Paul at Rome (Col. 4:10; Philem. 1:24), and he was with Peter at Babylon (probably at Rome) (1 Pet. 5:13). Finally, he was with Timothy at Ephesus (2 Tim. 4:11).

The Gospel of Mark: The second book in the New Testament. Mark’s gospel was possibly written under Peter’s direction. His object is to describe the Lord as the Son of God living and acting among men. Mark describes, with energy and humility, the impression Jesus made upon bystanders. Tradition states that after Peter’s death, Mark visited Egypt, organized the Church in Alexandria, and died by martyrdom.

For a list of events in the Savior’s life described in the Gospel of Mark, see *Harmony of the Gospels* in the appendix.

Marriage, Marry. *See also* Divorce; Family

A lawful covenant or contract between a man and a woman that makes them husband and wife. God ordained marriage (D&C 49:15).

It is not good that man should be alone, **Gen.** 2:18 (Moses 3:18). A man shall cleave unto his wife, and they shall be one flesh, **Gen.** 2:24 (Matt. 19:5; Abr. 5:18).

What God has joined together, let not man put asunder, **Matt.** 19:6 (Mark 10:9). In the latter days some shall depart from the faith, forbidding to marry, **1 Tim.** 4:1–3. Marriage is honorable, **Heb.** 13:4.

The Lord commanded Lehi’s sons to marry the daughters of Ishmael, **1 Ne.** 7:1, 5 (1 Ne. 16:7–8).

God created Adam and Eve to be man and wife, **Moses** 3:7, 18, 21–25.

New and everlasting covenant of marriage: Marriage performed under the law of the gospel and the holy priesthood is for mortal life and for eternity. Worthy men and women thus sealed in the temple in marriage may continue as husband and wife throughout eternity.

Jesus taught the law of marriage, **Luke** 20:27–36. Neither is the man without the woman in the Lord, **1 Cor.** 11:11. Husband and wife are heirs together of the grace of life, **1 Pet.** 3:7.

Whatsoever you shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven, **Hel.** 10:7 (Matt. 16:19).

To obtain the highest degree of the celestial kingdom, a man must enter into the new and everlasting covenant of marriage, **D&C** 131:1–4. If a man marry a wife not by me, their covenant and marriage is not of force when they are dead, **D&C** 132:15. If a man marry a wife by my word and by the new and

everlasting covenant, and it is sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise, it shall be of full force when they are out of the world, **D&C** 132:19.

Interfaith marriage: Marriage between a man and a woman of different religious beliefs and practices.

You shall not take a wife for my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, **Gen.** 24:3. If Jacob take a wife of the daughters of Heth, what good shall my life do me, **Gen.** 27:46 (Gen. 28:1–2). Israel shall not marry the Canaanites, **Deut.** 7:3–4. Israel intermarried with the Canaanites, worshiped false gods, and was cursed, **Judg.** 3:1–8. Solomon's wives turned his heart to the worship of false gods, **1 Kgs.** 11:1–6. We would not give our daughters unto the people of the land, nor take their daughters for our sons, **Neh.** 10:30.

Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers, **2 Cor.** 6:14.

The Lord set a mark on the Lamanites so that the Nephites might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions, **Alma** 3:6–10.

If a man marry a wife not by me, their covenant and marriage is not of force when they are dead, **D&C** 132:15.

The sons of men took them wives even as they chose, **Moses** 8:13–15.

Plural marriage: The marriage of a husband to two or more living wives. It is lawful for a man to have only one wife, unless the Lord commands otherwise by revelation (Jacob 2:27–30). By revelation, plural marriage was practiced in Old Testament times and in the early days of the restored Church by the direction of the prophet who held the priesthood keys (**D&C** 132:34–40, 45). It is no longer practiced in the Church (OD 1); today, having more than one wife is incompatible with membership in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

Sarai gave Hagar to Abram as his wife, **Gen.** 16:1–11. Jacob received Leah

and Rachel and their handmaidens as wives, **Gen.** 29:21–28 (Gen. 30:4, 9, 26). If a man take another wife, he shall not diminish the first wife's possessions, **Ex.** 21:10. David and his two wives went up to Hebron, **2 Sam.** 2:1–2.

Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob did that which they were commanded in receiving plural wives, **D&C** 132:37. David and Solomon did not sin in anything except those things which they did not receive from the Lord, **D&C** 132:38–39.

Marsh, Thomas B.

The first President of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles after the Restoration of the Church in 1830. He held the keys to the kingdom as pertained to the Twelve (**D&C** 112:16) and, in 1838, was commanded by revelation to publish the Lord's word (**D&C** 118:2). Section 31 of the Doctrine and Covenants is directed to him. Marsh was excommunicated from the Church in 1839 but was rebaptized in July 1857.

Martha. See also Lazarus; Mary of Bethany

The sister of Lazarus and Mary in the New Testament (Luke 10:38–42; John 11:1–46; 12:2).

Martyr, Martyrdom

A person who gives his life rather than forsake Christ, the gospel, or his righteous beliefs or principles.

All the righteous blood from Abel to Zacharias will testify against the wicked, **Matt.** 23:35 (Luke 11:50). Whosoever shall lose his life for Christ's sake and the gospel's shall save it, **Mark** 8:35 (**D&C** 98:13). And they stoned Stephen, **Acts** 7:59 (Acts 22:20). Where a testament is there must be the death of the testator, **Heb.** 9:16–17.

Abinadi fell, having suffered death by fire, **Mosiah** 17:20. Converted Ammoniahites were thrown into the fire, **Alma** 14:8–11. Many were slain because they testified of these things, **3 Ne.** 10:15.

Whoso layeth down his life in my

cause shall find life eternal, **D&C** 98:13–14. Joseph Smith and Hyrum Smith were martyrs to the restoration of the gospel, **D&C** 135. Joseph Smith sealed his testimony with his blood, **D&C** 136:39.

Mary, Mother of Jesus. *See also* Jesus Christ; Joseph, Husband of Mary

In the New Testament, a virgin chosen by God the Father to be the mother of His Son in the flesh. After Jesus' birth, Mary had other children (Mark 6:3).

She was betrothed to Joseph, **Matt.** 1:18 (Luke 1:27). Joseph was told not to divorce Mary or release her from the betrothal, **Matt.** 1:18–25. The wise men visited Mary, **Matt.** 2:11. Mary and Joseph fled with the child Jesus to Egypt, **Matt.** 2:13–14. After Herod's death, the family returned to Nazareth, **Matt.** 2:19–23. The angel Gabriel visited her, **Luke** 1:26–38. She visited Elisabeth, her cousin, **Luke** 1:36, 40–45. Mary gave a psalm of praise to the Lord, **Luke** 1:46–55. Mary went to Bethlehem with Joseph, **Luke** 2:4–5. Mary gave birth to Jesus and laid him in a manger, **Luke** 2:7. The shepherds went to Bethlehem to visit the Christ child, **Luke** 2:16–20. Mary and Joseph took Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem, **Luke** 2:21–38. Mary and Joseph took Jesus to the Passover, **Luke** 2:41–52. Mary was at the wedding at Cana, **John** 2:2–5. The Savior, while on the cross, asked John to care for his mother, **John** 19:25–27. Mary was with the Apostles after Christ was taken up into heaven, **Acts** 1:14.

Mary was a virgin, most beautiful and fair above all other virgins, **1 Ne.** 11:13–20. Christ's mother was to be called Mary, **Mosiah** 3:8. Mary would be a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, **Alma** 7:10.

Mary, Mother of Mark. *See also* Mark

In the New Testament, the mother of John Mark, who wrote the Gospel of Mark (Acts 12:12).

Mary Magdalene

A woman in the New Testament who became a devoted disciple of Jesus Christ. Magdalene refers to Magdala, the place from which this Mary came. It is located on the western shore of the Sea of Galilee.

She was near the cross, **Matt.** 27:56 (Mark 15:40; John 19:25). She was at Christ's burial, **Matt.** 27:61 (Mark 15:47). She was at the tomb in the morning of the resurrection, **Matt.** 28:1 (Mark 16:1; Luke 24:10; John 20:1, 11). Jesus appeared first to her after his resurrection, **Mark** 16:9 (John 20:14–18). Seven devils went out of her, **Luke** 8:2.

Mary of Bethany. *See also* Lazarus; Martha

In the New Testament, the sister of Lazarus and Martha.

Mary sat and listened at Jesus' feet, **Luke** 10:39, 42. Mary and her sister Martha sent for Jesus, **John** 11:1–45. She anointed Jesus' feet with ointment, **John** 12:3–8.

Matthew. *See also* Gospels

An Apostle of Jesus Christ and the author of the first book in the New Testament. Matthew, a Jew who was a tax collector for the Romans at Capernaum, was probably in the service of Herod Antipas. He was known before his conversion as Levi, son of Alphaeus (Mark 2:14). Soon after his call to become Jesus' disciple, he gave a feast at which the Lord was present (Matt. 9:9–13; Mark 2:14–17; Luke 5:27–32). Matthew probably had a wide knowledge of the Old Testament scriptures and was able to see the detailed fulfillment of prophecy in the Lord's life. Of the Apostle's later life little is known. One tradition asserts that he died a martyr's death.

The Gospel of Matthew: The first book in the New Testament. Matthew's Gospel was probably written initially for the use of Jews in Palestine. It uses many quotations from the Old

Testament. Matthew's chief object was to show that Jesus was the Messiah of whom the Old Testament prophets spoke. He also emphasized that Jesus is the King and Judge of men.

For a list of events in the Savior's life described in the Gospel of Matthew, see *Harmony of the Gospels* in the appendix.

Matthias. *See also* Apostle—Selection of Apostles

The person chosen to replace Judas Iscariot as a member of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles (Acts 1:15–26). He was a disciple throughout the whole of Jesus' mortal ministry (Acts 1:21–22).

Mediator. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Jesus Christ

An intercessor or intermediary. Jesus Christ is the mediator between God and man. His Atonement made possible a way for people to repent of their sins and become reconciled to God.

No man cometh unto the Father except by Jesus Christ, **John** 14:6. There is one mediator between God and men, **1 Tim.** 2:5. Christ is the mediator of a better covenant, **Heb.** 8:6 (Heb. 9:15; 12:24; **D&C** 107:19).

The Holy Messiah shall make intercession for all the children of men, **2 Ne.** 2:9 (Isa. 53:12; **Mosiah** 14:12). Ye should look to the great Mediator, **2 Ne.** 2:27–28.

We are made perfect through Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, **D&C** 76:69.

Meditate. *See* Ponder

Meek, Meekness. *See also* Broken Heart; Humble, Humility; Patience

Godfearing, righteous, humble, teachable, and patient under suffering. The meek are willing to follow gospel teachings.

Moses was very meek, **Num.** 12:3. The meek shall inherit the earth, **Ps.** 37:11 (**Matt.** 5:5; **3 Ne.** 12:5; **D&C** 88:17). Seek ye the Lord, all ye meek; seek

righteousness, seek meekness, **Zeph.** 2:3 (1 **Tim.** 6:11).

Learn of me for I am meek and lowly in heart, **Matt.** 11:29. Meekness is a fruit of the Spirit, **Gal.** 5:22–23. The servant of the Lord must be gentle, apt to teach, patient, in meekness instructing those that oppose, **2 Tim.** 2:24–25. A meek and quiet spirit is of great price in the sight of God, **1 Pet.** 3:4.

Put off the natural man and become meek, **Mosiah** 3:19 (**Alma** 13:27–28). God commanded Helaman to teach the people to be meek, **Alma** 37:33. The Lord's grace is sufficient for the meek, **Ether** 12:26. You have faith in Christ because of your meekness, **Moro.** 7:39. None is acceptable before God except the meek and lowly of heart, **Moro.** 7:44. The remission of sins bringeth meekness, and because of meekness cometh the visitation of the Holy Ghost, **Moro.** 8:26.

Walk in the meekness of my Spirit, **D&C** 19:23. Govern your house in meekness, **D&C** 31:9. Power and influence of the priesthood can be maintained by gentleness and meekness, **D&C** 121:41.

Melchizedek. *See also* Melchizedek Priesthood; Salem

A great Old Testament high priest, prophet, and leader who lived after the Flood and during the time of Abraham. He was called the king of Salem (Jerusalem), king of peace, king of righteousness (which is the Hebrew meaning of *Melchizedek*), and priest of the most high God.

Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek, **Gen.** 14:18–20. Melchizedek's people wrought righteousness, and obtained heaven, **JST, Gen.** 14:25–40.

Christ was a high priest after the order of Melchizedek, **Heb.** 5:6. Melchizedek was King of Salem, priest of the most high God, **Heb.** 7:1–3.

None were greater than Melchizedek, **Alma** 13:14–19.

Abraham received the priesthood

from Melchizedek, **D&C 84:14**. In respect for the Lord's name, the ancient Church called the higher priesthood the Melchizedek Priesthood, **D&C 107:1–4**.

Melchizedek Priesthood. *See also* Elder; Melchizedek; Priesthood

The Melchizedek Priesthood is the higher or greater priesthood; the Aaronic Priesthood is the lesser priesthood. The Melchizedek Priesthood includes the keys of the spiritual blessings of the Church. Through the ordinances of the higher priesthood the power of godliness is made manifest to men (**D&C 84:18–25; 107:18–21**).

God first revealed this higher priesthood to Adam. The patriarchs and prophets in every dispensation had this authority (**D&C 84:6–17**). It was first called the Holy Priesthood, after the Order of the Son of God. It later became known as the Melchizedek Priesthood (**D&C 107:2–4**).

When the children of Israel failed to live up to the privileges and covenants of the Melchizedek Priesthood, the Lord took away the higher law and gave them a lesser priesthood and a lesser law (**D&C 84:23–26**). These were called the Aaronic Priesthood and the law of Moses. When Jesus came to the earth, He restored the Melchizedek Priesthood to the Jews and began to build up the Church among them. However, the priesthood and the Church were lost again through apostasy. They were later restored through Joseph Smith Jr. (**D&C 27:12–13; 128:20; JS—H 1:73**).

Within the Melchizedek Priesthood are the offices of elder, high priest, patriarch, Seventy, and Apostle (**D&C 107**). The Melchizedek Priesthood will always be a part of the kingdom of God upon the earth.

The President of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints is the president of the high or Melchizedek Priesthood, and he holds all the keys that pertain to the kingdom of God on the earth. The calling of President is held

by only one man at a time, and he is the only person on the earth authorized to exercise all priesthood keys (**D&C 107:64–67; 132:7**).

Christ shall be a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek, **Ps. 110:4** (**Heb. 5:6; 10; 7:11**).

The Melchizedek Priesthood administers the gospel, **Heb. 7** (**D&C 84:18–25**).

Melchizedek exercised mighty faith and received the office of the high priesthood, **Alma 13:18**.

The Melchizedek Priesthood was conferred on Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery, **D&C 27:12–13** (**JS—H 1:72**). This priesthood received by oath and covenant, **D&C 84:33–42**. There are two divisions or grand heads, the Melchizedek and the Aaronic priesthoods, **D&C 107:6**. The Melchizedek Priesthood holds the rights to administer all spiritual blessings, **D&C 107:8–18**. Moses, Elias, and Elijah gave Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery priesthood keys, **D&C 110:11–16**. I now give unto you the officers belonging to my priesthood, that ye may hold the keys thereof, **D&C 124:123**.

Men. *See* Man, Men

Merciful, Mercy. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Forgive; Grace; Jesus Christ; Justice

The spirit of compassion, tenderness, and forgiveness. Mercy is one of the attributes of God. Jesus Christ offers mercy to us through His atoning sacrifice.

The Lord is merciful and gracious, **Ex. 34:6** (**Deut. 4:31**). His mercy endureth for ever, **1 Chr. 16:34**. Goodness and mercy shall follow me, **Ps. 23:6**. He that has mercy on the poor is happy, **Prov. 14:21**. I desired mercy and not sacrifice, **Hosea 6:6**.

Blessed are the merciful: for they shall obtain mercy, **Matt. 5:7** (**3 Ne. 12:7**). Woe unto hypocrites who pay tithes and omit the weightier matters of the law, judgment, mercy, and faith,

Meshach

Matt. 23:23. Be ye therefore merciful, as your Father also is merciful, **Luke** 6:36. Not by our works of righteousness, but according to his mercy he saved us, **Titus** 3:5.

The tender mercies of the Lord are over all, **1 Ne.** 1:20. Mercy hath no claim on the unrepentant, **Mosiah** 2:38–39. God is merciful unto all who believe on his name, **Alma** 32:22. Mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, **Alma** 34:16. Do you suppose that mercy can rob justice, **Alma** 42:25 (**Alma** 42:13–25). Little children are alive in Christ because of his mercy, **Moro.** 8:19–20 (**D&C** 29:46).

Jesus Christ's arm of mercy hath atoned for your sins, **D&C** 29:1. By virtue of the blood I spilt, have I pleaded before the Father for those who believe in my name, **D&C** 38:4. They who have kept the covenant shall obtain mercy, **D&C** 54:6. I, the Lord, forgive sins, and am merciful unto those who confess their sins with humble hearts, **D&C** 61:2. I, the Lord, show mercy unto all the meek, **D&C** 97:2. And who receiveth you as a little child, receiveth my kingdom, for they shall obtain mercy, **D&C** 99:3.

Mercy shall go before thy face, **Moses** 7:31.

Meshach. *See also* Daniel

In the Old Testament, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were three Israelite youths who, along with Daniel, were brought into the palace of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon. Meshach's Hebrew name was Mishael. The four young men refused to defile themselves by partaking of the king's meat and wine (**Dan.** 1). Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were thrown into a fiery furnace by the king but were miraculously preserved (**Dan.** 3).

Messiah. *See also* Anointed One; Jesus Christ

A form of an Aramaic and Hebrew word meaning "the anointed." In the New Testament Jesus is called the

Christ, which is the Greek equivalent of *Messiah*. It means the anointed Prophet, Priest, King, and Deliverer whose coming the Jews were eagerly expecting.

Many Jews were looking only for a deliverer from the Roman power and for a greater national prosperity; thus, when the Messiah came, the leaders and many others rejected Him. Only the humble and faithful were able to see in Jesus of Nazareth the true Christ (**Isa.** 53; **Matt.** 16:16; **John** 4:25–26).

The Messiah shall have the Spirit, preach the gospel, and proclaim liberty, **Isa.** 61:1–3 (**Luke** 4:18–21).

We have found the Messiah, which is, being interpreted, the Christ, **John** 1:41 (**John** 4:25–26).

God raised up among the Jews a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior, **1 Ne.** 10:4. The Son of God was the Messiah who should come, **1 Ne.** 10:17. Redemption cometh in and through the holy Messiah, **2 Ne.** 2:6. The Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, **2 Ne.** 2:26. The Messiah shall rise from the dead, **2 Ne.** 25:14.

In the name of Messiah I confer the Priesthood of Aaron, **D&C** 13.

The Lord said, I am Messiah, the King of Zion, **Moses** 7:53.

Methuselah. *See also* Enoch

A son of Enoch in the Old Testament. Methuselah lived 969 years (**Gen.** 5:21–27; **Luke** 3:37; **Moses** 8:7). He was a righteous prophet who was left on the earth when the city of Enoch was taken to heaven. He remained on earth to provide a posterity through which Noah would come (**Moses** 8:3–4).

Micah

An Old Testament prophet. He was a native of Moresheth Gath, in the plain country of Judah, and prophesied while Hezekiah was king (**Micah** 1:1–2).

The book of Micah: Micah is the only book in the Old Testament to name Bethlehem as the place where the

Messiah would be born (Micah 5:2). In the book the Lord counseled with His people and recounted His past goodness to them; He required from them justice, mercy, and humility (Micah 6:8).

Michael. *See also* Adam; Archangel

The name by which Adam was known in the premortal life. He is called the Archangel. In Hebrew the name means "Who is like God."

Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help Daniel, **Dan.** 10:13, 21 (**D&C** 78:16). In the last days shall Michael stand up, the great prince, **Dan.** 12:1.

Michael the archangel contended with the devil, **Jude** 1:9. Michael and his angels fought against the dragon, **Rev.** 12:7 (**Dan.** 7).

Michael is Adam, **D&C** 27:11 (**D&C** 107:53–57; 128:21). Michael, the Lord's archangel, shall sound his trump, **D&C** 29:26. Michael will gather his armies and fight Satan, **D&C** 88:112–115. The voice of Michael was heard detecting the devil, **D&C** 128:20.

Millennium. *See also* Hell; Second Coming of Jesus Christ

The thousand-year period of peace that will begin when Christ returns to reign personally on the earth (**A of F** 1:10).

People will not lift up sword, neither learn war any more, **Isa.** 2:4 (Micah 4:3; **2 Ne.** 12:4). Land that was desolate is become like the garden of Eden, **Ezek.** 36:35.

They lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years, **Rev.** 20:4.

Because of righteousness, Satan has no power, **1 Ne.** 22:26.

I will dwell in righteousness on earth a thousand years, **D&C** 29:11. When the thousand years are ended, I will spare the earth for a little season, **D&C** 29:22. The great Millennium shall come, **D&C** 43:30. Children of the righteous will grow up without sin, **D&C** 45:58.

Children shall grow up until they become old; men shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye, **D&C** 63:51. In the beginning of the seventh thousand years, the Lord will sanctify the earth, **D&C** 77:12. They live not again until the thousand years are ended, **D&C** 88:101. Satan shall be bound for a thousand years, **D&C** 88:110. The Millennium is described, **D&C** 101:23–34.

For a thousand years the earth shall rest, **Moses** 7:64.

Mind

Mental faculties; conscious powers of thought.

Serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind, **1 Chr.** 28:9.

Love the Lord thy God with all thy mind, **Matt.** 22:37.

To be carnally minded is death; to be spiritually minded is life eternal, **2 Ne.** 9:39. The voice of the Lord came into my mind, **Enos** 1:10. The word had a more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, **Alma** 31:5.

I will tell you in your mind, **D&C** 8:2. Study it out in your mind, **D&C** 9:8. Let the solemnities of eternity rest upon your minds, **D&C** 43:34. Your minds in times past have been darkened, **D&C** 84:54. Retire to thy bed early, arise early that your bodies and minds may be invigorated, **D&C** 88:124.

Satan knew not the mind of God, **Moses** 4:6. The Lord called his people Zion, because they were of one heart and one mind, **Moses** 7:18.

Minister. *See also* Priesthood; Service

To do the work of the Lord on the earth. God's chosen servants must be called of God in order to minister in His work. When true ministers do the Lord's will, they represent the Lord in their official duties and act as His agents (**D&C** 64:29), thus conducting the work necessary for the salvation of mankind. The Lord has given apostles, prophets, evangelists, high priests, sevens, elders, bishops, priests, teachers,

Ministering Angels

deacons, helps, and governments for the perfecting of the Saints, for the work of the ministry (1 Cor. 12:12–28; Eph. 4:11–16; D&C 20; 107).

The Lord hath chosen him to minister in the name of the Lord, **Deut.** 18:5. Men shall call you the Ministers of our God, **Isa.** 61:6.

The Son of Man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, **Matt.** 20:26–28. I have appeared to make thee a minister and a witness, **Acts** 26:16–18. God is not unrighteous to forget your labor of love in that ye have ministered to the Saints, **Heb.** 6:10. If any man minister, let him do it as of the ability which God giveth, **1 Pet.** 4:10–11.

They taught, and did minister one to another, **3 Ne.** 26:19.

It is the duty of the Twelve to ordain evangelical ministers, **D&C** 107:39–40. A high priest may be set apart unto the ministering of temporal things, **D&C** 107:71–72. These seventy are to be traveling ministers, **D&C** 107:93–97. Elders are ordained to be standing ministers to my church, **D&C** 124:137.

Ministering Angels. *See* Angels

Miracle. *See also* Faith; Sign

An extraordinary event caused by the power of God. Miracles are an important element in the work of Jesus Christ. They include healings, restoring the dead to life, and resurrection. Miracles are a part of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Faith is necessary in order for miracles to be manifested (Mark 6:5–6; Morm. 9:10–20; Ether 12:12).

When Pharaoh shall speak, Shew a miracle, **Ex.** 7:9.

No man which shall do a miracle in my name can lightly speak evil of me, **Mark** 9:39. Cana was the place where Jesus performed his first miracle, **John** 2:11.

I am a God of miracles, **2 Ne.** 27:23. The power of God works miracles, **Alma** 23:6. Christ could show greater miracles to those on the American

continent because they had great faith, **3 Ne.** 19:35. God has not ceased to be a God of miracles, **Morm.** 9:15.

Require not miracles, except the Lord shall command you, **D&C** 24:13–14. To some is given the gift of working miracles, **D&C** 46:21 (Moro. 10:12).

Miriam. *See also* Moses

In the Old Testament, the sister of Moses (Num. 26:59).

Watched over the ark made of bulrushes, **Ex.** 2:1–8. Led the women with timbrels, **Ex.** 15:20–21. Murmured against Moses and was smitten with leprosy, then healed, **Num.** 12:1–15 (Deut. 24:9).

Missionary Work. *See also* Gospel; Preach

To share the gospel of Jesus Christ by word and by example.

How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that publisheth salvation, **Isa.** 52:7. I will both search my sheep and seek them out, **Ezek.** 34:11.

Preach the gospel to every creature, **Mark** 16:15 (Morm. 9:22). The fields are white already to harvest, **John** 4:35. And how shall they preach, except they be sent, **Rom.** 10:15.

Teach them the word of God with all diligence, **Jacob** 1:19. The Lord grants unto all nations to teach his word, **Alma** 29:8.

The gospel might be proclaimed by the weak and the simple, **D&C** 1:23. A marvelous work is about to come forth, **D&C** 4:1. If you labor all your days and bring one soul unto me, how great shall be your joy, **D&C** 18:15. Mine elect hear my voice and harden not their hearts, **D&C** 29:7. Go forth preaching my gospel, two by two, **D&C** 42:6. The sound must go forth from this place, **D&C** 58:64. Open your mouths in proclaiming my gospel, **D&C** 71:1. Proclaim truth according to the revelations and commandments, **D&C** 75:4. Every man who has been warned should warn his

neighbor, **D&C** 88:81 (**D&C** 38:40–41). The Lord will provide for the families of those who preach the gospel, **D&C** 118:3. The servants of God shall go forth, **D&C** 133:38. Faithful elders, when they depart from mortal life, continue their labors, **D&C** 138:57.

Missouri. *See* New Jerusalem

Moab. *See also* Lot

A land in Old Testament times located east of the Dead Sea. The Moabites were descendants of Lot and were related to the Israelites. They spoke a language similar to Hebrew. There was constant warfare between the Moabites and the Israelites (**Judg.** 3:12–30; 11:17; 2 **Sam.** 8:2; 2 **Kgs.** 3:6–27; 2 **Chr.** 20:1–25; **Isa.** 15).

Modesty. *See also* Humble, Humility

Behavior or appearance that is humble, moderate, and decent. A modest person avoids excesses and pretensions.

God made coats of skins, and clothed Adam and Eve, **Gen.** 3:21 (**Moses** 4:27).

Women adorn themselves in modest apparel, **1 Tim.** 2:9. Be discreet, chaste, keepers at home, **Titus** 2:5.

Many are lifted up in pride because of the costliness of their apparel, **Jacob** 2:13.

Let all thy garments be plain, **D&C** 42:40.

We believe in being chaste and virtuous, **A of F** 1:13.

Money. *See also* Alms, Almsgiving; Riches; Tithes, Tithing; Worldliness

Coins, paper, certificates, or something people use as payment for goods or services. It is sometimes a symbol of materialism.

Ye shall be redeemed without money, **Isa.** 52:3.

The Twelve were told to take nothing for their journey, no scrip, no bread, no money, **Mark** 6:8. Peter told Simon the sorcerer that his money would perish with him, **Acts** 8:20. The love of money is the root of all evil, **1 Tim.** 6:10.

Do not spend money for that which is of no worth, **2 Ne.** 9:50–51 (**Isa.** 55:1–2; 2 **Ne.** 26:25–27). If they labor for money, they shall perish, **2 Ne.** 26:31. Before you seek for riches, seek the kingdom of God, **Jacob** 2:18–19. Churches shall say that for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins, **Morm.** 8:32, 37.

He who gives his money for the cause of Zion shall in nowise lose his reward, **D&C** 84:89–90.

Morality. *See* Adultery; Chastity; Fornication; Sexual Immorality

Mormon, Book of. *See* Book of Mormon

Mormon, Nephite Prophet. *See also* Book of Mormon

A Nephite prophet, military general, and record keeper in the Book of Mormon. Mormon lived about A.D. 311–385 (**Morm.** 1:2, 6; 6:5–6; 8:2–3). He was a military leader for most of his life, beginning at age fifteen (**Morm.** 2:1–2; 3:8–12; 5:1; 8:2–3). Ammaron instructed Mormon to prepare himself to take charge of the records and record keeping (**Morm.** 1:2–5; 2:17–18). After recording the history of his own lifetime, Mormon abridged the large plates of Nephi on the plates of Mormon. He later turned this sacred record over to his son Moroni. These plates were part of the record from which Joseph Smith translated the Book of Mormon.

The Words of Mormon: A small book in the Book of Mormon. Between the last words of Amaleki in the book of Omni and the first words in the book of Mosiah, Mormon, the editor of all the records, made this small insertion. (See “A Brief Explanation about the Book of Mormon” in the front of the Book of Mormon.)

The book of Mormon: A separate book within the volume of scripture known as the Book of Mormon. Chapters 1–2 tell of Ammaron, a prophet of the Nephites, instructing Mormon when

Mormon(s)

and where to get the plates. Also, the great wars began, and the Three Nephites were taken away because of the people's wickedness. Chapters 3–4 tell of Mormon crying repentance to the people, but they were past feeling, and greater wickedness prevailed than ever before in Israel. Chapters 5–6 record the final battles between the Nephites and the Lamanites. Mormon was slain along with most of the Nephite nation. In chapter 7, before his death, Mormon called on people—then and in the future—to repent. Chapters 8–9 record that finally only Mormon's son, Moroni, was left. He recorded the final scenes of death and carnage, including the end of the Nephite people, and wrote a message to future generations and readers of this record.

Mormon(s). *See also* Church of Jesus Christ; Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, The

The nickname *Mormon* was created by people who were not members of the Church to refer to members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. The name comes from the sacred book of scripture compiled by the ancient prophet Mormon and entitled the Book of Mormon. The name given by the Lord by which members of the Church are to be known is "Saints." The correct name of the Church is The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

Moroni, Captain. *See also* Title of Liberty

In the Book of Mormon, a righteous Nephite military commander who lived about 100 B.C.

Moroni was appointed chief captain of all the Nephite armies, **Alma** 43:16–17. Inspired the Nephite soldiers to fight for their freedom, **Alma** 43:48–50. Made a title of liberty out of a piece of his coat, **Alma** 46:12–13. Was a man of God, **Alma** 48:11–18. Was angry with

the government over their indifference about the country's freedom, **Alma** 59:13.

Moroni, Son of Mormon. *See also* Book of Mormon; Mormon, Nephite Prophet

The last Nephite prophet in the Book of Mormon (about A.D. 421). Just before Mormon's death, he delivered a historical record called the plates of Mormon to his son Moroni (W of M 1:1). Moroni finished compiling the plates of Mormon. He added chapters 8 and 9 to the book of Mormon (Morm. 8:1). He abridged and included the book of Ether (Ether 1:1–2) and added his own book called the book of Moroni (Moro. 1). Moroni sealed up the plates and hid them in the hill Cumorah (Morm. 8:14; Moro. 10:2). In 1823 Moroni was sent as a resurrected being to reveal the Book of Mormon to Joseph Smith (D&C 27:5; JS—H 1:30–42, 45). He instructed the young prophet each year from 1823 to 1827 (JS—H 1:54) and finally delivered the plates to him in 1827 (JS—H 1:59). After completing the translation Joseph Smith returned the plates to Moroni.

The book of Moroni: The final book within the Book of Mormon. It was written by the last Nephite prophet, Moroni. Chapters 1–3 tell of the final destruction of the Nephites, giving instruction on the conferring of the Holy Ghost and the priesthood. Chapters 4–5 detail the exact mode of administering the sacrament. Chapter 6 summarizes the work of the Church. Chapters 7–8 are sermons on the first principles of the gospel, including teachings by Mormon on faith, hope, and charity and on the way to judge good and evil (Moro. 7), and Mormon's explanation that little children are alive in Christ and need no baptism (Moro. 8). Chapter 9 describes the depravity of the Nephite nation. Chapter 10 is Moroni's final message

and includes the way to know the truth of the Book of Mormon (Moro. 10:3–5).

Moronihah, Son of Captain Moroni

A righteous Nephite commander in the Book of Mormon (about 60 B.C.).

Moroni turned the armies over to his son Moronihah, **Alma** 62:43. Retook the city of Zarahemla, **Hel.** 1:33. Brought the Nephites to repentance and regained control over half of the land, **Hel.** 4:14–20.

Mortal, Mortality. *See also* Body; Death, Physical; Fall of Adam and Eve; World

The time from birth until physical death. This is sometimes called the second estate.

In the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die, **Gen.** 2:16–17 (Moses 3:16–17). At death the spirit shall return to God and the body to the dust of the earth, **Eccl.** 12:7 (Gen. 3:19; Moses 4:25).

Do not let sin reign in your mortal body, **Rom.** 6:12. This mortal body must put on immortality, **1 Cor.** 15:53 (Enos 1:27; Mosiah 16:10; Morm. 6:21).

Man's state became a state of probation, **2 Ne.** 2:21 (Alma 12:24; 42:10). Adam fell that men might be, **2 Ne.** 2:25. Do you look forward and view this mortal body raised in immortality, **Alma** 5:15. This life is the time to prepare to meet God, **Alma** 34:32.

Do not fear death, for your joy is not full in this world, **D&C** 101:36.

Those who keep their second estate shall have glory, **Abr.** 3:26.

Moses. *See also* Aaron, Brother of Moses; Commandments, the Ten; Law of Moses; Pentateuch; Transfiguration—Transfiguration of Christ

An Old Testament prophet who led the Israelites out of Egyptian bondage and gave to them a set of religious,

social, and dietary laws as revealed by God.

Moses' ministry extended beyond the limits of his own mortal lifetime. Joseph Smith taught that, in company with Elijah, he came to the Mount of Transfiguration and bestowed priesthood keys upon Peter, James, and John (Matt. 17:3–4; Mark 9:4–9; Luke 9:30; D&C 63:21).

Moses appeared to Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery on April 3, 1836, in the temple in Kirtland, Ohio, and conferred on them the keys of the gathering of Israel (D&C 110:11).

Latter-day revelation speaks much concerning Moses. He is mentioned frequently in the Book of Mormon, and from the Doctrine and Covenants we learn about his ministry (D&C 84:20–26) and that he received the priesthood from his father-in-law Jethro (D&C 84:6).

Latter-day revelation also confirms the biblical account of his ministry among the children of Israel and reaffirms that he was the author of the five books that begin the Old Testament (1 Ne. 5:11; Moses 1:40–41).

Was saved by Pharaoh's daughter, **Ex.** 2:1–10. Fled to Midian, **Ex.** 2:11–22. The angel of the Lord appeared to him in a burning bush, **Ex.** 3:1–15. Announced plagues to come upon the Egyptians, **Ex.** 7–11. The Lord instituted the Passover, **Ex.** 12:1–30. Led the children of Israel across the Red Sea, **Ex.** 14:5–31. The Lord sent manna in the desert, **Ex.** 16. Struck rock at Horeb and water gushed forth, **Ex.** 17:1–7. Aaron and Hur held up his hands so that Joshua prevailed over Amalek, **Ex.** 17:8–16. Jethro counseled him, **Ex.** 18:13–26. Prepared the people for the Lord's appearance on mount Sinai, **Ex.** 19. The Lord revealed the Ten Commandments to him, **Ex.** 20:1–17. He and seventy elders saw God, **Ex.** 24:9–11. Broke the tables of testimony and destroyed the golden calf, **Ex.** 32:19–20. Spoke with God face to face, **Ex.** 33:9–11.

Mosiah, Father of Benjamin

Appeared when Jesus was transfigured, **Matt.** 17:1–13 (Mark 9:2–13; Luke 9:28–36).

Let us be strong like unto Moses, **1 Ne.** 4:2. Christ is the prophet like unto Moses that the Lord would raise up, **1 Ne.** 22:20–21 (Deut. 18:15; 3 Ne. 20:23).

Led Israel by revelation, **D&C** 8:3. Was seen among the noble spirits, **D&C** 138:41.

Saw God face to face, **Moses** 1:2, 31. Was in the similitude of the Only Begotten, **Moses** 1:6, 13. Was to write the things revealed to him concerning the creation, **Moses** 2:1.

The book of Moses: A book in the Pearl of Great Price that contains Joseph Smith's inspired translation of the first seven chapters of Genesis.

Chapter 1 records a vision in which Moses saw God, who revealed to him the whole plan of salvation. Chapters 2–5 are an account of the Creation and the Fall of man. Chapters 6–7 contain a vision about Enoch and his ministry on earth. Chapter 8 contains a vision about Noah and the great Flood.

The five books of Moses: See Genesis; Exodus; Leviticus; Numbers; Deuteronomy

The first five books of the Old Testament are known as the books of Moses. The brass plates Nephi took from Laban contained the books of Moses (1 Ne. 5:11).

Nephi read many things written in the books of Moses, **1 Ne.** 19:23.

Mosiah, Father of Benjamin. See also Benjamin, Father of Mosiah; Zarahemla

In the Book of Mormon, a Nephite prophet who was made king over the people in Zarahemla.

Mosiah was warned to flee out of the land of Nephi, **Omni** 1:12. He discovered the people of Zarahemla, **Omni** 1:14–15. He had the people of Zarahemla taught in his language, **Omni** 1:18.

He was appointed king of the united peoples, **Omni** 1:19. His son, Benjamin, reigned after his death, **Omni** 1:23.

Mosiah, Son of Benjamin. See also Benjamin, Father of Mosiah; Mosiah, Sons of

A righteous Nephite king and prophet in the Book of Mormon. Mosiah followed the righteous example of his father (Mosiah 6:4–7). He translated the twenty-four gold plates containing the record of the Jaredites (Mosiah 28:17).

The book of Mosiah: A book in the Book of Mormon. Chapters 1–6 contain King Benjamin's forceful sermon to his people. The Spirit of the Lord touched their hearts and the people were converted and felt no more desire to do evil. Chapters 7–8 tell of a group of Nephites who had gone to live in the land of the Lamanites. A search party was sent out to find them. Ammon, leader of the search party, found them and learned the story of their trials under Lamanite oppression. Chapters 9–24 describe that oppression and how their leaders—Zeniff, Noah, and Limhi—lived under the Lamanites. The martyrdom of a prophet called Abinadi is also recorded. Alma was converted at Abinadi's trial. Chapters 25–28 recount the stories of how Alma's son and four sons of King Mosiah became converted. In chapter 29 King Mosiah recommended that a system of judges replace the kings. Alma the son of Alma was elected the first chief judge.

Mosiah, Sons of. See also Aaron, Son of Mosiah; Ammon, Son of Mosiah; Himni; Mosiah, Son of Benjamin; Omner

In the Book of Mormon, four sons of King Mosiah who were converted after an angel appeared to them and called them to repentance. Their names were Ammon, Aaron, Omner, and Himni (Mosiah 27:34). They spent fourteen years successfully preaching the gospel to the Lamanites. A record of their

ministry among the Lamanites is given in the book of Alma, chapters 17 to 26.

Earlier they were unbelievers who tried to destroy the Church, **Mosiah** 27:8–10 (Alma 36:6). They were rebuked by an angel and repented, **Mosiah** 27:11–12, 18–20. They obtained permission to preach to the Lamanites, **Mosiah** 28:1–7.

Mother. *See also* Eve; Family; Parents

A sacred title referring to a woman who bears or adopts children. Mothers assist in God's plan by providing mortal bodies for God's spirit children.

Adam called his wife's name Eve, because she was the mother of all living, **Gen.** 3:20 (Moses 4:26). Honor thy father and thy mother, **Ex.** 20:12 (Eph. 6:1–3; **Mosiah** 13:20). Forsake not the law of thy mother, **Prov.** 1:8. A foolish man despises his mother, **Prov.** 15:20 (Prov. 10:1). Do not despise your mother when she is old, **Prov.** 23:22. Her children and husband rise up and call her blessed and her husband praises her, **Prov.** 31:28.

The mother of Jesus stood by the cross, **John** 19:25–27.

Two thousand Lamanite warriors had been taught by their mothers, **Alma** 56:47 (Alma 57:21).

Our glorious Mother Eve was among the great and mighty whom the Lord instructed in the spirit world, **D&C** 138:38–39.

Mount of Olives. *See* Olives, Mount of

Mulek. *See also* Zedekiah

A son of the Old Testament king Zedekiah (about 589 B.C.). The Bible records that all the sons of Zedekiah were slain (2 Kgs. 25:7), but the Book of Mormon clarifies that Mulek survived (Hel. 8:21).

Zarahemla was a descendant of Mulek, **Mosiah** 25:2. The people of Mulek joined the Nephites, **Mosiah** 25:13. The Lord brought Mulek into the

land north, **Hel.** 6:10. All of Zedekiah's sons were slain except Mulek, **Hel.** 8:21.

Murder. *See also* Cain; Capital Punishment

The deliberate and unjustified taking of human life. Murder is a sin condemned from earliest times (Gen. 4:1–12; Moses 5:18–41).

Whoever sheds a man's blood shall have his blood shed by man, **Gen.** 9:6 (JST, Gen. 9:12–13; Ex. 21:12; Alma 34:12). Thou shalt not kill, **Ex.** 20:13 (Deut. 5:17; Matt. 5:21–22; **Mosiah** 13:21; **D&C** 59:6).

Jesus said, thou shalt do no murder, **Matt.** 19:18. Murderers shall have their part in the second death, **Rev.** 21:8.

Ye are murderers in your hearts, **1 Ne.** 17:44. Wo to the murderer who kills deliberately, **2 Ne.** 9:35. God has commanded that men should not murder, **2 Ne.** 26:32. Murder is an abomination to the Lord, **Alma** 39:5–6.

He that kills shall not have forgiveness, **D&C** 42:18. Any person who kills shall be delivered up to the laws of the land, **D&C** 42:79.

Murmur. *See also* Rebellion

To grumble and complain against God's purposes, plans, or servants.

The people murmured against Moses, **Ex.** 15:23–16:3.

The Jews then murmured at Jesus, **John** 6:41.

Laman and Lemuel did murmur in many things, **1 Ne.** 2:11–12 (1 Ne. 3:31; 17:17).

Murmur not because of the things which thou hast not seen, **D&C** 25:4.

Music. *See also* Hymn; Sing

Melodies and rhythms sung and played since early biblical times to express joy, praise, and worship (2 Sam. 6:5). It can be a form of prayer. The psalms were probably sung to simple melodies and accompanied by instruments.

Miriam, the sister of Aaron and Moses, took a timbrel and she and the

women danced, **Ex.** 15:20. The Levites who were the singers had cymbals and harps and one hundred twenty priests blew their trumpets, **2 Chr.** 5:12.

Jesus and the Twelve sang a hymn after the Last Supper, **Matt.** 26:30. Teach and admonish one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, **Col.** 3:16.

Have you felt to sing the song of redeeming love, **Alma** 5:26.

God's soul delights in the song of the heart; yea, the song of the righteous is a prayer, **D&C** 25:12. Praise the Lord with singing, with music, and with dancing, **D&C** 136:28.

Mustard Seed

The seeds of a mustard plant. Though a seed is very small, the height of the plant that grows from it is very great. Jesus compared the kingdom of heaven to a mustard seed (**Matt.** 13:31).

If you have faith as a grain of mustard seed, you can move mountains, **Matt.** 17:20.

Mysteries of God

Mysteries of God are spiritual truths known only by revelation. God reveals His mysteries to those who are obedient to the gospel. Some of God's mysteries are yet to be revealed.

It is given unto you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, **Matt.** 13:11. Though I understand all mysteries and have not charity, I am nothing, **1 Cor.** 13:2.

Nephi had a great knowledge of the mysteries of God, **1 Ne.** 1:1. It is given to many to know the mysteries of God, **Alma** 12:9. To such is given to know the mysteries of God, **Alma** 26:22. These mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me, **Alma** 37:11. There are many mysteries that no man knows except God himself, **Alma** 40:3.

How great is the mystery of godliness, **D&C** 19:10. If ye ask, ye shall receive revelation and know the mysteries of the

kingdom, **D&C** 42:61, 65 (1 Cor. 2:7, 11–14). He who keeps the commandments will be given the mysteries of the kingdom, **D&C** 63:23. To them will I reveal all mysteries, **D&C** 76:7. The greater priesthood holds the key of the mysteries, **D&C** 84:19. At his coming the Lord will reveal hidden things which no man knew, **D&C** 101:32–33. The Melchizedek Priesthood is to have the privilege of receiving the mysteries of the kingdom, **D&C** 107:19.

Naaman. *See also* Elisha

In the Old Testament, the captain of a Syrian king's army. He was also a leper. Through the faith of an Israelite maid he went to Israel to see the prophet Elisha. He was cured of leprosy by humbling himself and bathing seven times in the river Jordan as the prophet Elisha instructed (2 Kgs. 5:1–19; Luke 4:27).

Nahum

An Old Testament prophet of Galilee who recorded his prophecies sometime between 642 and 606 B.C.

The book of Nahum: Chapter 1 speaks of the burning of the earth at the Second Coming and of the Lord's mercy and power. Chapter 2 tells of Nineveh's destruction, which is a foreshadowing of what will come in the latter days. Chapter 3 continues to foretell Nineveh's miserable destruction.

Name of the Church. *See* Church, Name of; Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, The

Naomi. *See also* Ruth

In the Old Testament, a righteous woman and the wife of Elimelech (Ruth 1–4). Elimelech and Naomi took their family to Moab to escape a famine. After Elimelech and her two sons died, Naomi returned to Bethlehem with her daughter-in-law Ruth.

Naphtali. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

The sixth of the twelve sons of Jacob and the second child of Bilhah, Rachel's handmaiden (Gen. 30:7–8). Naphtali had four sons (1 Chr. 7:13).

The tribe of Naphtali: Jacob's blessing on Naphtali is recorded in Genesis 49:21. Moses' blessing on the tribe is recorded in Deuteronomy 33:23.

Nathan. *See also* David

An Old Testament prophet at the time of King David. When David offered to build a temple for the Lord, the Lord instructed Nathan to tell David he was not to build it. Nathan also rebuked David for causing the death of Uriah, one of his warriors, and for taking Uriah's wife, Bathsheba (2 Sam. 12:1–15; D&C 132:38–39). Zadok, with Nathan, anointed David's son Solomon king (1 Kgs. 1:38–39, 45).

Nathanael. *See also* Bartholomew

An Apostle of Christ and a friend of Philip in the New Testament (John 1:45–51). He came from Cana in Galilee (John 21:2). Christ said that Nathanael was an Israelite without guile (John 1:47). He and Bartholomew are generally thought to be the same person (Matt. 10:3; Mark 3:18; Luke 6:14; John 1:43–45).

Natural Man. *See also* Born Again, Born of God; Carnal; Fall of Adam and Eve

A person who chooses to be influenced by the passions, desires, appetites, and senses of the flesh rather than by the promptings of the Holy Spirit. Such a person can comprehend physical things but not spiritual things. All people are carnal, or mortal, because of the Fall of Adam and Eve. Each person must be born again through the Atonement of Jesus Christ to cease being a natural man.

The natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit, **1 Cor. 2:14**.

The natural man is an enemy to God and should be put off, **Mosiah 3:19**. He that persists in his own carnal nature remaineth in his fallen state, **Mosiah 16:5** (Alma 42:7–24; D&C 20:20). What natural man is there that knoweth these things, **Alma 26:19–22**. Natural or carnal men are without God in the world, **Alma 41:11**.

Because of his transgression, man became spiritually dead, **D&C 29:41**. Neither can any natural man abide the presence of God, **D&C 67:12**.

And man began to be carnal, sensual, and devilish, **Moses 5:13** (Moses 6:49).

Nauvoo, Illinois (USA)

A city established by the Latter-day Saints in 1839 in the state of Illinois. It is located on the Mississippi River, nearly 200 miles (320 kilometers) up the river from St. Louis.

Due to persecutions in the state of Missouri, the Saints moved about 200 miles to the northeast, across the Mississippi River, and into Illinois, where they found more favorable conditions. Eventually, the Saints purchased land near the undeveloped city of Commerce. This land was virtually swamp wilderness with only a few simple buildings. The Saints drained the land and established homes. Joseph Smith moved his family into a small log home. The city name of Commerce was changed to Nauvoo, after the Hebrew word for "beautiful."

Several sections of the Doctrine and Covenants were recorded in Nauvoo (D&C 124–129; 132; 135). The Saints were told to build a temple in Nauvoo (D&C 124:26–27). They built the temple and organized stakes of Zion before being driven from their homes in 1846. As a result of this persecution, the Saints left the area and made their way west.

Nazareth. *See also* Jesus Christ

A village among the hills west of the Sea of Galilee. Nazareth was the early

home of Jesus (Matt. 2:23). Jesus taught in the synagogue at Nazareth and declared that He fulfilled the prophecy in Isaiah 61:1–2 (Matt. 13:54–58; Mark 6:1–6; Luke 4:16–30).

Nebuchadnezzar. *See also* Babel, Babylon; Daniel

In the Old Testament, the king of Babylon (604–561 B.C.) who subdued Judah (2 Kgs. 24:1–4) and besieged Jerusalem (2 Kgs. 24:10–11). The prophet Lehi was commanded to flee Jerusalem in about 600 B.C. to avoid being taken captive to Babylon (1 Ne. 1:4–13) when Nebuchadnezzar carried away King Zedekiah and the people (2 Kgs. 25:1, 8–16, 20–22). Daniel interpreted Nebuchadnezzar's dreams (Dan. 2; 4).

Nehemiah

An Israelite nobleman in Babylon in the Old Testament (either a Levite or of the tribe of Judah) who held the office of cupbearer at the court of Artaxerxes, from whom he obtained a royal commission authorizing him to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.

The book of Nehemiah: This book is a continuation of the book of Ezra. It contains an account of the progress and difficulties of the work at Jerusalem following the return of the Jews from Babylonian captivity. Chapters 1–7 tell of Nehemiah's first visit to Jerusalem and the rebuilding of the city walls in spite of great opposition. Chapters 8–10 describe the religious and social reforms that Nehemiah tried to implement. Chapters 11–13 give a list of names of those worthy and give an account of the dedication of the wall. Verses 4–31 of chapter 13 record a second visit by Nehemiah to Jerusalem after being away for twelve years.

Nehor. *See also* Antichrist; Priestcraft

An evil man in the Book of Mormon. Nehor was one of the first to practice priestcraft among the Nephites. After

teaching false doctrine and killing Gideon, Nehor was executed for his crimes (Alma 1). Nehor's followers continued his evil practices and teachings long after Nehor died.

Alma and Amulek were imprisoned by a judge after the order of Nehor, **Alma** 14:14–18. They were of the profession of Nehor who were slain, **Alma** 16:11. Many were after the order of the Nehors, **Alma** 21:4. The greatest number of those who slew their brethren were after the order of the Nehors, **Alma** 24:28.

Nephi, Son of Helaman. *See also* Helaman, Son of Helaman; Lehi, Nephite Missionary

In the Book of Mormon, a great Nephite prophet and missionary.

Was the elder son of Helaman, **Hel.** 3:21. Was appointed chief judge, **Hel.** 3:37. He and his brother Lehi converted many Lamanites to the gospel, **Hel.** 5:18–19. Was encircled with fire and released from prison, **Hel.** 5:20–52. Prayed on his garden tower, **Hel.** 7:6–10. Revealed the murder of the chief judge, **Hel.** 8:25–28; 9:1–38. Was given great power by the Lord, **Hel.** 10:3–11. Asked the Lord for a famine and for the end of the famine, **Hel.** 11:3–18.

Nephi, Son of Lehi. *See also* Lehi, Father of Nephi; Nephites

In the Book of Mormon, a righteous son of Lehi and Sariah (1 Ne. 1:1–4; 2:5). Nephi had strong faith in the word of God (1 Ne. 3:7) and became a great prophet, record keeper, and leader of his people.

Was obedient and prayed in faith, **1 Ne.** 2:16. Returned to Jerusalem to get the brass plates, **1 Ne.** 3–4. Returned to Jerusalem to bring Ishmael's family into the wilderness, **1 Ne.** 7. Received the same vision that Lehi received, **1 Ne.** 10:17–22; 11. Saw in vision the future of his people and the restoration of the gospel, **1 Ne.** 12–13. Interpreted the

vision of the tree of life, **1 Ne.** 15:21–36. Broke his bow but through faith was able to obtain food, **1 Ne.** 16:18–32. Built a ship and traveled to the promised land, **1 Ne.** 17–18. The Nephites and Lamanites separated, **2 Ne.** 5. Bore final testimony, **2 Ne.** 33.

The book of 1 Nephi: Chapters 1 to 18:8 deal mostly with the prophet Lehi and his family leaving Jerusalem. They traveled through barren deserts until they reached the sea. 1 Nephi 18:9–23 tells of their voyage to a promised land, as directed by the Lord, despite the rebellion of Laman and Lemuel. Chapters 19–22 tell Nephi's purpose for keeping records (1 Ne. 6; 19:18)—to persuade all to remember the Lord their Redeemer. He quoted Isaiah (1 Ne. 20–21) and interpreted Isaiah's messages, with the hope that all might come to know Jesus Christ as their Savior and Redeemer (1 Ne. 22:12).

The book of 2 Nephi: Chapters 1–4 contain some of Lehi's final teachings and prophecies before his death, including blessings on his sons and their descendants. Chapter 5 explains why the Nephites separated themselves from the Lamanites. The Nephites built a temple, taught the law of Moses, and kept records. Chapters 6–10 contain the words of Jacob, Nephi's younger brother. Jacob reviewed the history of Judah and prophesied of the Messiah, some of which was taken from the writings of the prophet Isaiah. In chapters 11–33 Nephi recorded his testimony of Christ, Jacob's testimony, prophecies of the last days, and several chapters from the Old Testament book of Isaiah.

Plates of Nephi: See Plates

Nephi, Son of Nephi, Son of Helaman. See also Disciple; Nephi, Son of Helaman

One of the twelve Nephite disciples chosen by the resurrected Jesus Christ in the Book of Mormon (3 Ne. 1:2–3;

19:4). This prophet prayed mightily to the Lord in behalf of his people. Nephi heard the voice of the Lord (3 Ne. 1:11–14). Nephi was also visited by angels, cast out devils, raised his brother from the dead, and bore a testimony that could not be disbelieved (3 Ne. 7:15–19; 19:4). Nephi kept the scriptural record (3 Ne. 1:2–3).

The book of 3 Nephi: A book written by Nephi, son of Nephi, in the Book of Mormon. Chapters 1–10 show the fulfillment of the prophecies about the coming of the Lord. The sign of Christ's birth was given; the people repented; but then they returned to wickedness. Finally tempests, earthquakes, violent storms, and great destruction signaled the death of Christ. Chapters 11–28 record Christ's coming to the Americas. This is the central part of the book of 3 Nephi. Many of Christ's words are similar to His sermons recorded in the Bible (for example, Matt. 5–7 and 3 Ne. 12–14). Chapters 29–30 are Mormon's words to the latter-day nations.

The book of 4 Nephi: This book has only forty-nine verses, all in one chapter, yet it covers nearly three hundred years of Nephite history (A.D. 34–321). Several generations of writers, including Nephi, contributed to the record. Verses 1–19 tell that after the resurrected Christ's visit all the Nephites and Lamanites were converted to the gospel. Peace, love, and harmony reigned. The three Nephite disciples, whom Christ had allowed to remain on earth until His Second Coming (3 Ne. 28:4–9), ministered to the people. Nephi left the record to his son Amos. Verses 19–47 are the record of Amos's ministry (84 years) and that of his son Amos (112 years). In A.D. 201, pride began to cause problems among the people, who divided themselves into classes and began false churches to get gain (4 Ne. 1:24–34).

The final verses of 4 Nephi show that the people had returned again to

Nephite Disciples

wickedness (4 Ne. 1:35–49). In A.D. 305, Amos the son of Amos died and his brother Ammaron hid all the sacred records for safekeeping. Ammaron later entrusted the records to Mormon, who recorded many events of his own lifetime and then abridged them (Morm. 1:2–4).

Nephite Disciples. *See* Three Nephite Disciples

Nephites. *See also* Book of Mormon; Lamanites; Nephi, Son of Lehi

A group of people in the Book of Mormon, many of whom were descendants of the prophet Nephi, son of Lehi. They separated from the Lamanites and were generally more righteous than the Lamanites. However, they were eventually destroyed by the Lamanites because of wickedness.

The Nephites separated from the Lamanites, **2 Ne.** 5:5–17. All those who were not Lamanites were Nephites, **Jacob** 1:13. The Nephites were inspired by a better cause, **Alma** 43:6–9, 45. The Nephites had never been happier than at the time of Moroni, **Alma** 50:23. The Nephites were saved because of the prayers of the righteous, **Alma** 62:40. The Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, **Hel.** 6:34–35. Jesus taught and ministered among the Nephites, **3 Ne.** 11:1–28:12. All were converted to the Lord and had all things in common, **4 Ne.** 1:2–3. There was no contention, the love of God dwelt in their hearts, and they were the happiest of people, **4 Ne.** 1:15–16. The Nephites began to be proud and vain, **4 Ne.** 1:43. Blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land, **Morm.** 2:8. The Nephites increased in wickedness and Mormon refused to lead them, **Morm.** 3:9–11. All the Nephites, except for twenty-four, were killed, **Morm.** 6:7–15. Every Nephite who would not deny Christ was put to death, **Moro.** 1:2.

The Nephites were destroyed because of their wickedness and sins, **D&C** 3:18.

Beware of pride for fear you become as the Nephites, **D&C** 38:39.

New and Everlasting Covenant. *See also* Covenant

The fulness of the gospel of Jesus Christ (**D&C** 66:2). It is new every time it is revealed anew following a period of apostasy. It is everlasting in the sense that it is God's covenant and has been enjoyed in every gospel dispensation where people have been willing to receive it. The new and everlasting covenant was revealed again to men on earth by Jesus Christ through the Prophet Joseph Smith. It contains sacred ordinances administered by priesthood authority—such as baptism and temple marriage—that provide for man's salvation, immortality, and eternal life. When people accept the gospel and promise to keep God's commandments, God covenants to give them the blessings of His new and everlasting covenant.

I will establish my covenant between me and you, **Gen.** 17:7. He shall have the covenant of an everlasting priesthood, **Num.** 25:13. The people changed the ordinances and broke the everlasting covenant, **Isa.** 24:5 (**D&C** 1:15). I will make an everlasting covenant with you, **Isa.** 55:3 (**Jer.** 32:40). It shall be an everlasting covenant, **Ezek.** 37:26.

The Lord made a new covenant, and the old passed away, **Heb.** 8:13. Jesus is the mediator of the new covenant, **Heb.** 12:24 (**D&C** 76:69).

This is a new and an everlasting covenant, **D&C** 22:1. I have sent my everlasting covenant into the world, **D&C** 45:9 (**D&C** 49:9). The Lord sent the fulness of his gospel, his everlasting covenant, **D&C** 66:2 (**D&C** 133:57). In order to obtain the highest degree in the celestial kingdom, a man must enter into the new and everlasting covenant of marriage, **D&C** 131:1–2. The new and everlasting covenant was instituted

for the fulness of the Lord's glory, **D&C 132:6, 19.**

New Jerusalem. *See also* Zion

The place where the Saints will gather and Christ will personally reign with them during the Millennium. Zion (the New Jerusalem) will be built upon the American continent, and the earth will be renewed and receive its paradisiacal glory (A of F 1:10). It also refers to a holy city that will come down out of heaven at the beginning of the Millennium.

The law shall go forth out of Zion, **Micah 4:2.**

The name of the city of my God is New Jerusalem, **Rev. 3:12.** John saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, **Rev. 21:1–5.**

This people will I establish in this land, and it shall be a New Jerusalem, **3 Ne. 20:22.** A New Jerusalem will be built in America, **Ether 13:3–6, 10.**

The city of the New Jerusalem shall be prepared, **D&C 42:9, 35, 62–69.** Saints are to gather and build the New Jerusalem, **D&C 45:63–75.** The New Jerusalem is to be built in Missouri, **D&C 84:1–5 (D&C 57:1–3).** The Lamb shall stand upon Mount Zion and upon the holy city, the New Jerusalem, **D&C 133:56.**

My tabernacle shall be called Zion, a New Jerusalem, **Moses 7:62.**

New Testament. *See also* Bible; Scriptures

A collection of inspired writings (originally in Greek) about the life and ministry of Jesus Christ, the Apostles, and other followers of Jesus Christ. The New Testament is commonly divided into the Gospels, the Acts of the Apostles, Paul's epistles, the general epistles, and the book of Revelation.

The four Gospels—the books of Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John—are accounts of the life of Christ. The book of Acts records the history of the Church and the Apostles, especially Paul's missionary travels, after Christ's death. Paul's letters give instruction to

Church leaders and members. The other letters were written by other Apostles and give additional counsel to the early Saints. The book of Revelation, which was written by the Apostle John, contains mostly prophecies pertaining to the last days.

Nicodemus. *See also* Pharisees

In the New Testament, a righteous ruler of the Jews (probably of the Sanhedrin) and a Pharisee (John 3:1).

He spoke to Jesus at night, **John 3:1–21.** He defended Christ to the Pharisees, **John 7:50–53.** He brought spices to Jesus' burial, **John 19:39–40.**

Nineveh. *See also* Assyria; Jonah

In the Old Testament, the capital of Assyria and for over two hundred years a great commercial center on the eastern bank of the Tigris river. It fell at the downfall of the Assyrian empire, 606 B.C.

Sennacherib, the king of Assyria, lived in Nineveh, **2 Kgs. 19:36.** Jonah was sent to call the city to repentance, **Jonah 1:1–2 (Jonah 3:1–4).** The people of Nineveh repented, **Jonah 3:5–10.**

Christ used Nineveh as an example of repentance before the Jews, **Matt. 12:41.**

Noah, Bible Patriarch. *See also* Ark; Flood at Noah's Time; Gabriel; Rainbow

In the Old Testament, the son of Lamech and the tenth patriarch from Adam (Gen. 5:29–32). He testified of Christ and preached repentance to a wicked generation. When the people rejected his message, God commanded him to build an ark to house his family and all the animals when the earth was flooded to destroy the wicked (Gen. 6:13–22; Moses 8:16–30). The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that Noah is the angel Gabriel and stands next to Adam in holding the keys of salvation.

He and his sons Japheth, Shem, and Ham, and their wives were saved when

Noah, Son of Zeniff

they built an ark at the command of God, **Gen.** 6–8 (Heb. 11:7; 1 Pet. 3:20). The Lord renewed the covenant he had made with Enoch with Noah, **Gen.** 9:1–17 (JST, Gen. 9:15, 21–25; Moses 7:49–52).

Noah was ordained to the priesthood when he was ten years old by Methuselah, **D&C** 107:52.

Men tried to take his life, but the power of God saved him, **Moses** 8:18. He became a preacher of righteousness and taught the gospel of Jesus Christ, **Moses** 8:19, 23–24 (2 Pet. 2:5).

Noah, Son of Zeniff

A wicked king in the Book of Mormon. He ruled over a group of Nephites in the land of Nephthi.

Noah committed many sins, **Mosiah** 11:1–15. He ordered the prophet Abinadi slain, **Mosiah** 13:1 (Mosiah 17:1, 5–20). Noah was burned to death, **Mosiah** 19:20.

Numbers. *See also* Pentateuch

The fourth book in the Old Testament. Moses wrote the book of Numbers. The book of Numbers relates the story of Israel's journey from Mount Sinai to the plains of Moab on the border of Canaan. One of the important lessons it teaches is that God's people must walk by faith, trusting His promises, if they are to continue successfully. It recounts God's punishment of Israel for disobedience and provides information about Israelite laws. The name of the book is derived from the prominence of census figures (Num. 1–2; 26).

Chapters 1–10 tell of the Israelite preparation for departure from Sinai. Chapters 11–14 describe the march itself, the sending of spies into Canaan, and Israel's refusal to enter the promised land. Chapters 15–19 note various laws and historical events. Chapters 20–36 are the history of the people's last year in the wilderness.

Oath. *See also* Covenant; Oath and Covenant of the Priesthood

As used in the scriptures, usually a sacred covenant or promise. However, wicked persons, including Satan and his angels, also make oaths to accomplish their evil purposes. In Old Testament times, oaths were acceptable; however, Jesus Christ taught that people should not swear in the name of God or His creations (Matt. 5:33–37).

I will perform the oath which I swear unto Abraham, **Gen.** 26:3. If a man swears an oath to bind his soul, he shall not break it, **Num.** 30:2. They entered into an oath to walk in God's law, **Neh.** 10:29.

Thou shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths, **Matt.** 5:33 (Eccl. 5:4–5; 3 Ne. 12:33). God swears with an oath that the faithful shall be saved, **Heb.** 6:13–18.

When Zoram made an oath, our fears did cease, **1 Ne.** 4:37. The people of Ammon took an oath that they would never shed blood, **Alma** 53:11. The wicked Nephites made secret oaths and covenants with Satan, **Hel.** 6:21–30.

Men gain eternal life through the oath and covenant of the priesthood, **D&C** 84:33–42. All covenants, contracts, bonds, obligations, and oaths not sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise end when men die, **D&C** 132:7.

Oath and Covenant of the Priesthood.

See also Covenant; Oath; Priesthood

An oath is a sworn affirmation to be true and faithful to one's promises. A covenant is a solemn promise between two parties. The Aaronic Priesthood is received by covenant alone. Melchizedek Priesthood holders receive the priesthood by unspoken oath as well as by covenant. As priesthood holders are faithful and magnify their callings as God directs, He blesses them. Those who are faithful to the end and do all He asks of them will receive all that the Father has (**D&C** 84:33–39).

The Lord covenanted with Abraham, and Abraham obeyed, **Gen.** 15:18; 17:1; 22:16–18. Priests during Ezekiel's time fed not the flock, **Ezek.** 34:2–3. Priests during Malachi's time corrupted the covenant, **Mal.** 1–2.

Obadiah

An Old Testament prophet who foretold the doom of Edom. He prophesied possibly during the reign of Jehoram (848–844 B.C.) or during the Babylonian invasion in 586 B.C.

The book of Obadiah: A book in the Old Testament. It has only one chapter. In it, Obadiah wrote of the downfall of Edom and prophesied that saviors shall stand upon Mount Zion.

Obed. *See also* Boaz; Ruth

In the Old Testament, the son of Boaz and Ruth and the father of Jesse, who became the father of King David (Ruth 4:13–17, 21–22).

Obedience, Obedient, Obey. *See*

also Bless, Blessed, Blessing; Commandments of God; Hearken; Joy; Law; Walk, Walk with God

In a spiritual sense, obedience is doing God's will.

Noah did according to all that God commanded, **Gen.** 6:22. Abraham obeyed the Lord, **Gen.** 22:15–18. All that the Lord hath said will we do, **Ex.** 24:7. Hear therefore, O Israel, and observe to do it, **Deut.** 6:1–3. Love the Lord and obey his voice, **Deut.** 30:20. To obey is better than sacrifice, **1 Sam.** 15:22. Fear God, and keep his commandments, **Ecc.** 12:13–14.

Not every one shall enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of the Father, **Matt.** 7:21 (3 Ne. 14:21). If any man will do his will, he shall know if the doctrine is of God, **John** 7:17. We ought to obey God rather than men, **Acts** 5:29. Children, obey your parents, **Eph.** 6:1 (Col. 3:20).

I will go and do the things which

the Lord hath commanded, **1 Ne.** 3:7. I did obey the voice of the Spirit, **1 Ne.** 4:6–18. If the children of men keep the commandments of God he doth nourish them, **1 Ne.** 17:3. Beware lest ye obey the evil spirit, **Mosiah** 2:32–33, 37 (D&C 29:45). Men reap their reward according to the spirit they obey, **Alma** 3:26–27.

Men should do many things of their own free will, **D&C** 58:26–29. In nothing does man offend God, save those who confess not his hand and obey not his commandments, **D&C** 59:21. I the Lord am bound when you do what I say, **D&C** 82:10. Every soul who obeys my voice shall see my face and know that I am, **D&C** 93:1. People must be chastened until they learn obedience, **D&C** 105:6. When we obtain any blessing from God, it is by obedience to that law upon which it is predicated, **D&C** 130:21.

Adam was obedient, **Moses** 5:5. We will prove them to see if they will do all things whatsoever the Lord shall command, **Abr.** 3:25.

Offend

To break a divine law, to sin, or to cause discomfort or injury; also to displease or annoy.

A brother offended is harder to be won than a strong city, **Prov.** 18:19.

If thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out, **Matt.** 5:29. Whosoever shall offend one of these little ones which believe in me, it were better that he were drowned in the sea, **Matt.** 18:6 (D&C 121:19–22).

If thy brother or sister offend thee and confess, thou shalt be reconciled, **D&C** 42:88. In nothing does man offend God, save those who confess not his hand and obey not his commandments, **D&C** 59:21.

Offering. *See also* Alms, Almsgiving; Fast, Fasting; Sacrifice; Tithes, Tithing; Welfare

A gift to the Lord. The Old Testament often used the word to refer to sacrifices or burnt offerings. The Church today

Office, Officer

uses fast offerings and other freewill offerings (including time, talents, and possessions) to help the poor and for other worthy causes.

Ye have robbed me in tithes and offerings, **Mal.** 3:8–10.

First be reconciled with thy brother and then offer thy gift, **Matt.** 5:23–24.

Offer your whole souls as an offering to Christ, **Omni** 1:26. If a man offers a gift without real intent, it profits him nothing, **Moro.** 7:6.

The Aaronic Priesthood will never be taken again until the sons of Levi offer again an offering to the Lord in righteousness, **D&C** 13. On this, the Lord's day, thou shalt offer thine oblations and thy sacraments unto the Most High, **D&C** 59:12. Let us as a church and a people offer to the Lord an offering in righteousness, **D&C** 128:24.

Office, Officer. *See also* Ordain, Ordination; Priesthood

Position of authority or responsibility in an organization, often used in the scriptures to mean a position of priesthood authority; may also mean the duties assigned to the position or the person who holds the position.

All members have not the same office, **Rom.** 12:4.

We did magnify our office unto the Lord, **Jacob** 1:19. Melchizedek received the office of the high priesthood, **Alma** 13:18. The office of the angels' ministry is to call men unto repentance, **Moro.** 7:31.

No person is to be ordained to any office in this Church without the vote of that Church, **D&C** 20:65. Let every man stand in his own office, **D&C** 84:109. There are presidents, or presiding officers, appointed from among those ordained to the offices in these two priesthoods, **D&C** 107:21. The duties of those who preside over the offices of the priesthood quorums are described, **D&C** 107:85–98. Let every man learn his duty, and to act in the office in which

he is appointed, **D&C** 107:99–100. I give unto you the officers belonging to my priesthood, **D&C** 124:123.

Official Declaration 1. *See also* Manifesto; Marriage, Marry—Plural marriage; Woodruff, Wilford

Printed in the closing pages of the Doctrine and Covenants, the first part of Official Declaration 1 is also known as the Manifesto. It was given by President Wilford Woodruff and presented to the members of the Church at a general conference on October 6, 1890. Beginning in 1862, various laws for the next twenty-five years made plural marriage illegal in the United States. The Lord showed Wilford Woodruff by vision and revelation what would take place if the Saints did not cease the practice of plural marriage. The Manifesto formally announced that plural marriages were no longer being performed.

Official Declaration 2. *See also* Kimball, Spencer W.; Priesthood

A doctrinal statement regarding who may hold the priesthood of God, now printed in the final pages of the Doctrine and Covenants. In early June 1978, the Lord revealed to President Spencer W. Kimball that the priesthood should be given to all worthy male members of the Church. This made the priesthood available to all worthy men and temple blessings available to all worthy members, regardless of race or color. On September 30, 1978, this declaration was presented to the general conference of the Church and unanimously accepted.

Oil. *See also* Administration to the Sick; Anoint; Olive Tree

Usually olive oil is meant when oil is mentioned in the scriptures. From Old Testament times, olive oil has been used for temple and tabernacle rites, for anointings, for burning in lamps, and for food. Olive oil is sometimes a symbol for purity and for the Holy Spirit

and its influence (1 Sam. 10:1, 6; 16:13; Isa. 61:1–3).

The priest shall put oil upon the tip of the right ear, **Lev.** 14:28–29. The Lord sent me to anoint thee to be king over his people, **1 Sam.** 15:1. The widow's container of oil did not become empty, **1 Kgs.** 17:10–16. The Lord anoints my head with oil, **Ps.** 23:5.

They anointed with oil many that were sick, **Mark** 6:13. Let the elders pray over him, anointing him with oil, **James** 5:13–15.

Have your lamps trimmed and burning and oil with you, **D&C** 33:17 (Matt. 25:1–13).

Old Testament. *See also* Bible; Pentateuch; Scriptures

Writings of ancient prophets who acted under the influence of the Holy Spirit and who over many centuries testified of Christ and His future ministry. It also contains a record of the history of Abraham and his descendants, beginning with Abraham, and the covenant, or *testament*, the Lord made with Abraham and his posterity.

The first five books of the Old Testament were written by Moses. They are Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. Genesis refers to the origin of the earth, mankind, languages, races, and the beginning of the house of Israel.

The historical books tell of events of Israel. These books are Joshua, Judges, Ruth, 1 and 2 Samuel, 1 and 2 Kings, 1 and 2 Chronicles, Ezra, Nehemiah, and Esther.

The poetic books record some of the wisdom and literature of the prophets. They are Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Song of Solomon, and Lamentations.

The prophets warned Israel of her sins and testified of the blessings that come from obedience. They prophesied of the coming of Christ, who would atone for the sins of those

who repent, receive the ordinances, and live the gospel. The books of the prophets are Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Daniel, Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah, Jonah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, and Malachi.

Most Old Testament books were written in Hebrew. A few writings contain Aramaic, a related language.

Olives, Mount of. *See also* Gethsemane

A hill east of the Kidron Valley, east of Jerusalem. On its western slopes, near the bottom, is the garden of Gethsemane. Bethphage and Bethany are located on the top and east slope. This mount was the place of many biblical events (Matt. 24:3) and will also be an important place in events of the latter days (Zech. 14:3–5; D&C 45:48–54; 133:20).

Olive Tree. *See also* Israel; Oil

A tree common to Israel and an important agricultural resource in Bible lands. It is grown for its wood, fruit, and oil. The olive tree is used most frequently in the scriptures to symbolize the house of Israel.

The house of Israel is compared to an olive tree whose branches are broken and scattered, **1 Ne.** 10:12 (1 Ne. 15:12). The Lord compared the house of Israel to a tame olive tree, **Jacob** 5–6.

Joseph Smith called the revelation in section 88 the olive leaf, **D&C** 88 heading. A nobleman told his servants to go into his vineyard and plant twelve olive trees, **D&C** 101:43–62.

Omega. *See* Alpha and Omega; Jesus Christ

Omner. *See also* Mosiah, Son of Benjamin; Mosiah, Sons of

In the Book of Mormon, a son of King Mosiah. Omner went with his brothers to preach to the Lamanites (Mosiah 27:8–11, 34–37; 28:1–9).

Omni

Omni

A Nephite record keeper in the Book of Mormon who wrote in about 361 B.C. (Jarom 1:15; Omni 1:1–3).

The book of Omni: A book translated from the small plates of Nephi in the Book of Mormon. The book has only a single chapter, which contains an account of the wars among the Nephites and Lamanites. Omni wrote only the first three verses of the book. The plates were then passed in turn to Amaron, Chemish, Abinadom, and finally Amaleki. Amaleki delivered the plates to King Benjamin, king of Zarahemla.

Omnipotent. *See also* God, Godhead

The divine trait of having all power (Gen. 18:14; Alma 26:35; D&C 19:1–3).

Omnipresent. *See also* God, Godhead

God's ability to be present everywhere through His spirit (Ps. 139:7–12; D&C 88:7–13, 41).

Omniscient. *See also* God, Godhead

The divine trait of having all knowledge (Matt. 6:8; 2 Ne. 2:24).

One. *See* God, Godhead; Unity

Only Begotten. *See also* Begotten; Jesus Christ

Another name for Jesus Christ. He is the Only Begotten Son of the Father (Luke 1:26–35; John 1:14; 3:16; 1 Ne. 11:18–20; 2 Ne. 25:12; Alma 7:10; 12:33; Moses 7:62).

Opposition. *See* Adversity

Ordain, Ordination. *See also* Authority; Call, Called of God, Calling; Hands, Laying on of; Office, Officer; Priesthood

To appoint or confer authority or office. To use authority in the Lord's Church, a person must be called of God, by prophecy, and by the laying on of hands by those who are in authority

(A of F 1:5). Although a person may receive authority by ordination, he uses it under the direction of those who hold the particular keys for that authority.

I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations, **Jer.** 1:5.

Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, **John** 15:16.

Having authority from God, Alma ordained priests, **Mosiah** 18:18. Men are ordained unto the high priesthood with a holy ordinance, **Alma** 13:1–9. Jesus called and ordained twelve disciples, **3 Ne.** 12:1. Elders ordain priests and teachers by the laying on of hands, **Moro.** 3.

Wait yet a little while, for ye are not yet ordained, **D&C** 5:17. Joseph Smith was ordained an Apostle of Jesus Christ, **D&C** 20:2 (D&C 27:12). No person is to be ordained without the vote of the Church, **D&C** 20:65. It shall not be given to any one to preach my gospel, except he be ordained by some one who has authority, **D&C** 42:11. Elders are ordained to preach my gospel, **D&C** 50:13–18. It is the duty of the Twelve to ordain and set in order all the other officers of the Church, **D&C** 107:58.

I sought for the blessings of the fathers, and the right whereunto I should be ordained, **Abr.** 1:2. Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery ordained one another to the Aaronic Priesthood, **JS—H** 1:68–72.

Ordinances. *See also* Genealogy; Salvation; Salvation for the Dead; Seal, Sealing; Temple, House of the Lord

Sacred rites and ceremonies. Ordinances consist of acts that have spiritual meanings. Ordinances can also mean God's laws and statutes.

Ordinances in the Church include administration to the sick (James 5:14–15), blessing the sacrament (D&C 20:77, 79), baptism by immersion (Matt. 3:16; D&C 20:72–74), blessing of children (D&C 20:70), conferring the Holy

Ghost (D&C 20:68; 33:15), conferring the priesthood (D&C 84:6–16; 107:41–52), temple ordinances (D&C 124:39), and marriage in the new and everlasting covenant (D&C 132:19–20).

Teach them ordinances and laws, **Ex.** 18:20. Walk in my statutes, and keep mine ordinances, **Ezek.** 11:20.

The people were strict in observing the ordinances of God, **Alma** 30:3. What doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances, **3 Ne.** 24:13–14.

He that prayeth and is contrite is accepted of me if he obeys mine ordinances, **D&C** 52:14–19.

All mankind may be saved, by obedience to the laws and ordinances of the gospel, **A of F** 1:3.

Vicarious ordinance: A religious ordinance performed by a living person in behalf of one who is dead. These ordinances take effect only when those for whom the ordinances were performed accept them, keep the covenants associated with them, and become sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise. Such ordinances are performed today within temples.

What shall they do which are baptized for the dead, if the dead rise not at all, **1 Cor.** 15:29.

Baptisms for the dead are to be performed in temples, **D&C** 124:29–36. The spirits in the spirit world were taught vicarious baptism for the remission of sins, **D&C** 138:29–34.

Outer Darkness. *See* Hell

Pahoran

The third Nephite chief judge in the Book of Mormon (**Alma** 50:39–40; 51:1–7; 59–62).

Parable

A simple story used to illustrate and teach a spiritual truth or principle. A parable is based on comparing an ordinary object or event to a truth, and the

underlying meaning or message of a parable is often hidden to listeners who are not spiritually prepared to receive it (**Matt.** 13:10–17).

Jesus often taught with parables. For a listing of His key parables, see Harmony of the Gospels in the appendix.

Paradise. *See also* Heaven

That part of the spirit world in which the righteous spirits who have departed from this life await the resurrection of the body. It is a condition of happiness and peace.

Paradise is also used in the scriptures to mean the world of spirits (**Luke** 23:43), the celestial kingdom (**2 Cor.** 12:4), and the glorified millennial condition of the earth (**A of F** 1:10).

To him that overcometh will I give to eat of the tree of life, which is in the midst of the paradise of God, **Rev.** 2:7.

The paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, **2 Ne.** 9:13. The spirits of the righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, **Alma** 40:11–12. All the disciples of Jesus had gone to the paradise of God, save it were three, **4 Ne.** 1:14. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God, **Moro.** 10:34.

Christ ministered to the righteous spirits in paradise, **D&C** 138.

Parents. *See also* Father, Mortal; Mother

Fathers and mothers. Worthy husbands and wives who have been properly sealed in marriage in a temple of God may fulfill their role as parents throughout eternity. "Parents have a sacred duty to rear their children in love and righteousness, to provide for their physical and spiritual needs, and to teach them to love and serve one another, observe the commandments of God, and be law-abiding citizens wherever they live" ("The Family: A Proclamation to the World," *Ensign*, Nov. 2010, 129).

Children, obey your parents, **Eph.** 6:1–3 (Col. 3:20).

Adam and Eve were our first parents, **1 Ne.** 5:11. The cursing may be upon the heads of your parents, **2 Ne.** 4:6. Teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, **Moro.** 8:10.

Parents are commanded to teach the gospel to their children, **D&C** 68:25. All children have claim upon their parents, **D&C** 83:4.

The sins of the parents cannot be answered upon the heads of the children, **Moses** 6:54.

Partridge, Edward

An early member and leader of the Church after its restoration in modern times. Edward Partridge served as the first bishop of the Church (**D&C** 36; 41:9–11; 42:10; 51:1–18; 115; 124:19).

Passover. *See also* Lamb of God; Last Supper

The Feast of the Passover was instituted to help the children of Israel remember when the destroying angel passed over their houses and delivered them from the Egyptians (Ex. 12:21–28; 13:14–15). The unblemished lambs, whose blood was used as a sign to save Israel anciently, are a symbol of Jesus Christ, the Lamb of God, whose sacrifice redeemed all mankind.

This is the ordinance of the Passover, **Ex.** 12:43.

Jesus and his Apostles kept the Passover at the Last Supper, **Matt.** 26:17–29 (Mark 14:12–25). Behold the Lamb of God, which taketh away the sin of the world, **John** 1:29, 36. Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us, **1 Cor.** 5:7. We are redeemed by the blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish, **1 Pet.** 1:18–19.

Have faith on the Lamb of God who taketh away the sins of the world, **Alma** 7:14.

Saints who live by the Word of Wisdom to be preserved as were the children of Israel, **D&C** 89:21.

The Lamb is slain from the foundation of the world, **Moses** 7:47.

Patience. *See also* Endure; Meek, Meekness

Calm endurance; the ability to endure affliction, insult, or injury without complaint or retaliation.

Rest in the Lord, and wait patiently for him, **Ps.** 37:7–8. He that is slow to wrath is of great understanding, **Prov.** 14:29.

In your patience possess ye your souls, **Luke** 21:19. We have hope through patience and comfort of the scriptures, **Rom.** 15:4. Be followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises, **Heb.** 6:12–15. Let patience have her perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, **James** 1:2–4. Ye have heard of the patience of Job, **James** 5:11.

They did submit cheerfully and with patience to all the will of the Lord, **Mosiah** 24:15. Thou didst bear all these things with patience because the Lord was with thee, **Alma** 38:4–5.

Continue in patience until ye are perfected, **D&C** 67:13.

Patriarch, Patriarchal. *See also* Evangelist; Father, Mortal; Melchizedek Priesthood; Patriarchal Blessings

The scriptures speak of two kinds of patriarchs: (1) an ordained office in the Melchizedek Priesthood, sometimes called an evangelist; (2) fathers of families. Ordained patriarchs give special blessings to worthy members of the Church.

Ordained patriarchs: He gave some prophets and some evangelists, **Eph.** 4:11 (A of F 1:6).

It is the duty of the Twelve to ordain evangelical ministers, **D&C** 107:39. Hyrum may take the office of priesthood and patriarch, **D&C** 124:91–92, 124; 135:1.

Fathers: Jacob blessed his sons and their descendants, **Gen.** 49:1–28.

Let me freely speak unto you of the patriarch David, **Acts** 2:29.

Lehi counseled and blessed his posterity, **2 Ne.** 4:3–11.

I became a rightful heir, holding the right belonging to the fathers, **Abr.** 1:2–4.

Patriarchal Blessings. *See also*

Evangelist; Father, Mortal; Patriarch, Patriarchal

Blessings given to worthy Church members by ordained patriarchs. A patriarchal blessing contains the Lord's counsel for the person receiving the blessing and declares that person's lineage in the house of Israel. Fathers may give special blessings as the patriarchs of their families, but such blessings are not recorded or retained by the Church.

Israel stretched out his right hand and laid it upon Ephraim's head, **Gen.** 48:14. Jacob blessed his sons and their seed, **Gen.** 49.

Lehi blessed his posterity, **2 Ne.** 4:3–11.

Patten, David W.

A member of the first Quorum of Twelve Apostles chosen in the latter-day dispensation. David Patten was the first martyr of the restored Church, having been killed at the battle of Crooked River in Missouri in 1838.

Called to settle his business and perform a mission, **D&C** 114:1. Was taken unto the Lord, **D&C** 124:19, 130.

Pattern

A model that a person can follow to obtain certain results. In the scriptures, *pattern* usually means an example either for living a certain way or for building something.

The Lord commanded Israel to build a tabernacle according to the pattern shown to Moses, **Ex.** 25. David gave Solomon the pattern for building the temple, **1 Chr.** 28:11–13.

In me Jesus Christ might shew a

pattern to them which should believe on him, **1 Tim.** 1:16.

I will give unto you a pattern in all things, that ye may not be deceived, **D&C** 52:14.

Paul. *See also* Pauline Epistles

An Apostle in the New Testament. Paul's Hebrew name was Saul, and he went by this name until the beginning of his mission to the Gentiles. He had previously persecuted the Church but was converted to its truth after seeing a vision of Jesus Christ. Paul went on three major missionary journeys and wrote many letters to the Saints. Fourteen of these letters form a part of the New Testament today. He was finally taken as a prisoner to Rome and was killed, probably in the spring of A.D. 65.

Consented to the stoning of Stephen, **Acts** 7:57–8:1. Persecuted the Saints, **Acts** 8:3. Was traveling to Damascus when Jesus appeared to him, **Acts** 9:1–9. Was baptized by Ananias, **Acts** 9:10–18. After retiring into Arabia, returned to Damascus to preach, **Acts** 9:19–25 (Gal. 1:17). Three years after his conversion, went back to Jerusalem, **Acts** 9:26–30 (Gal. 1:18–19). Went on three missionary journeys, preaching the gospel and organizing branches of the Church in various parts of the Roman Empire, **Acts** 13:1–14:26; 15:36–18:22; 18:23–21:15. When he returned to Jerusalem after his third mission, was arrested and sent to Caesarea, **Acts** 21:7–23:35. Remained a prisoner in Caesarea for two years, **Acts** 24:1–26:32. Was sent to Rome for trial and suffered shipwreck on the way, **Acts** 27:1–28:11.

Pauline Epistles. *See also* Paul; the titles of individual epistles

Fourteen books in the New Testament that were originally letters written by the Apostle Paul to members of the Church. They may be divided into groups as follows:

Peace

1 and 2 Thessalonians (A.D. 50–51)

Paul wrote the epistles to the Thessalonians from Corinth during his second missionary journey. His work in Thessalonica is described in Acts 17. He wanted to return to Thessalonica, but he was unable to do so (1 Thes. 2:18). He therefore sent Timothy to cheer the converts and bring him word about how they were doing. The first epistle is the outcome of his thankfulness on Timothy's return. The second epistle was written a short time later.

1 and 2 Corinthians, Galatians, Romans (A.D. 55–57)

Paul wrote the epistles to the Corinthians during his third missionary journey to answer questions and correct disorder among the Saints in Corinth.

The epistle to the Galatians may have been written to *many* Church units throughout Galatia. Some members of the Church were abandoning the gospel in favor of the Jewish law. In this letter, Paul explained the purpose of the law of Moses and the value of a spiritual religion.

Paul wrote the epistle to the Romans from Corinth, in part to prepare the Roman Saints for a visit he hoped to make to them. This letter also reaffirms doctrines that were being disputed by some Jews who had converted to Christianity.

Philippians, Colossians, Ephesians, Philemon, Hebrews (A.D. 60–62)

Paul wrote these epistles while he was in prison the first time in Rome.

Paul wrote the epistle to the Philippians mainly to express his gratitude and affection for the Philippian Saints and to cheer them from the disappointment of his long imprisonment.

Paul wrote the epistle to the Colossians as a result of a report that the Colossian Saints were falling into serious error. They believed that perfection came by the careful observance of outward ordinances alone rather than the development of Christlike character.

The epistle to the Ephesians is of great importance, for it contains Paul's teachings about the Church of Christ.

The epistle to Philemon is a private letter about Onesimus, a slave who had robbed his master, Philemon, and run away to Rome. Paul sent Onesimus back to his master with the letter asking that Onesimus be forgiven.

Paul wrote the epistle to the Hebrews to Jewish members of the Church to persuade them that the law of Moses had been fulfilled in Christ and that the gospel law of Christ had replaced it.

1 and 2 Timothy, Titus (A.D. 64–65)

Paul wrote these epistles after he was released from prison in Rome the first time.

Paul traveled to Ephesus, where he left Timothy to stop the growth of some forms of speculation, intending afterwards to return. He wrote his first epistle to Timothy, perhaps from Macedonia, to counsel and encourage him in the fulfillment of his duty.

Paul wrote the epistle to Titus during a time when he was free from prison. He may have visited Crete, where Titus was serving. The letter deals mainly with righteous living and discipline within the Church.

Paul wrote his second epistle to Timothy while in prison the second time, shortly before Paul's martyrdom. This epistle contains Paul's last words and shows the wonderful courage and trust with which he faced death.

Peace. *See also* Millennium; Peacemaker; Rest

In the scriptures, peace can mean either freedom from conflict and turmoil or the inner calm and comfort born of the Spirit that God gives to His faithful Saints.

Freedom from conflict and turmoil: He maketh wars to cease, **Ps.** 46:9. Neither shall they learn war any more, **Isa.** 2:4.

Live peaceably with all men; avenge not yourselves, **Rom.** 12:18–21.

There was still peace in the land, **4 Ne.** 1:4, 15–20.

Renounce war and proclaim peace, **D&C** 98:16. Lift up an ensign of peace, **D&C** 105:39.

Peace from God to the obedient: The Savior will be called the Prince of Peace, **Isa.** 9:6. There is no peace unto the wicked, **Isa.** 48:22.

There was a heavenly host, praising God and saying, Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, **Luke** 2:13–14. Peace I leave with you, **John** 14:27. The peace of God passeth all understanding, **Philip.** 4:7.

King Benjamin's people received peace of conscience, **Mosiah** 4:3. How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who publish peace, **Mosiah** 15:14–18 (**Isa.** 52:7). Alma cried unto the Lord and found peace, **Alma** 38:8. The spirits of the righteous are received into a state of peace, **Alma** 40:12.

Did I not speak peace to your mind concerning the matter, **D&C** 6:23. Walk in the meekness of my Spirit, and you shall have peace in me, **D&C** 19:23. He who doeth the works of righteousness shall receive peace, **D&C** 59:23. Clothe yourselves with the bond of charity, which is the bond of perfectness and peace, **D&C** 88:125. My son, peace be unto thy soul, **D&C** 121:7.

Finding there was greater peace, I sought for the blessings of the fathers, **Abr.** 1:2.

Peacemaker. *See also* Peace

A person who brings about or promotes peace (**Matt.** 5:9; **3 Ne.** 12:9). A peacemaker may also be someone who proclaims the gospel (**Mosiah** 15:11–18).

Pearl of Great Price. *See also* Canon; Scriptures; Smith, Joseph, Jr.

The kingdom of God on earth is likened to a “pearl of great price” (**Matt.** 13:45–46).

The Pearl of Great Price is also the name given to one of four volumes of

scripture called the “standard works” of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. The first edition of the Pearl of Great Price was published in 1851 and contained some material that is now in the Doctrine and Covenants. Editions published since 1902 contain (1) excerpts from Joseph Smith's translation of Genesis, called the book of Moses, and of Matthew 24, called Joseph Smith—Matthew; (2) Joseph Smith's translation of some Egyptian papyrus that he obtained in 1835, called the book of Abraham; (3) an excerpt from Joseph Smith's history of the Church that he wrote in 1838, called Joseph Smith—History; and (4) the Articles of Faith, thirteen statements of belief and doctrine.

Peleg

In the Old Testament, the son of Eber and great-great-grandson of Shem. In his day the earth was divided (**Gen.** 10:22–25).

Pentateuch. *See also* Deuteronomy; Exodus; Genesis; Leviticus; Moses; Numbers; Old Testament

A name given to the first five books of the Old Testament—Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. The Jews refer to these books as the Torah or law of Israel. They were written by Moses (**1 Ne.** 5:10–11).

Pentecost. *See also* Law of Moses

As part of the law of Moses, the Feast of Pentecost or Firstfruits was held fifty days after the Feast of the Passover (**Lev.** 23:16). Pentecost was to celebrate the harvest, and in the Old Testament it is called the Feast of Harvest or the Feast of Weeks. It is this feast that was being celebrated when the Apostles in Jerusalem were filled with the Holy Ghost and spoke in tongues (**Acts** 2; **D&C** 109:36–37).

Perdition. *See* Sons of Perdition

Perfect

Perfect

Complete, whole, and fully developed; totally righteous. Perfect can also mean without sin or evil. Only Christ was totally perfect. True followers of Christ may become perfect through His grace and Atonement.

Let your heart be perfect with the Lord, **1 Kgs.** 8:61.

Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father in heaven, **Matt.** 5:48 (3 Ne. 12:48). If any man offend not in word, the same is a perfect man, **James** 3:2.

Faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things, **Alma** 32:21, 26. The Atonement was made so that God might be a perfect God, **Alma** 42:15. Moroni was a man of perfect understanding, **Alma** 48:11–13, 17–18. The Spirit of Christ is given to every man to judge and know with a perfect knowledge whether something is of God or the devil, **Moro.** 7:15–17. Come unto Christ, and be perfected in him, **Moro.** 10:32.

Continue in patience until ye are perfected, **D&C** 67:13. These are they who are just men made perfect through Jesus, **D&C** 76:69. The offices in the Church are for the perfecting of the Saints, **D&C** 124:143 (Eph. 4:11–13). The living are not perfect without their dead, **D&C** 128:15, 18.

Noah was a just man, and perfect in his generation, **Moses** 8:27.

Persecute, Persecution. *See also* Adversity

To cause anguish or pain to others because of their beliefs or social status; to harass or oppress.

Blessed are they which are persecuted for righteousness' sake, **Matt.** 5:10 (3 Ne. 12:10). Pray for them which despitefully use you and persecute you, **Matt.** 5:44 (3 Ne. 12:44).

Because they are rich, they persecute the meek, **2 Ne.** 9:30 (2 Ne. 28:12–13). The righteous that look forward to Christ notwithstanding all persecution shall not perish, **2 Ne.** 26:8.

All these things shall give thee experience, **D&C** 122:7.

Peter

In the New Testament, Peter was originally known as Simeon or Simon (2 Pet. 1:1), a fisherman of Bethsaida living at Capernaum with his wife. Jesus healed Peter's wife's mother (Mark 1:29–31). Peter was called with his brother Andrew to be a disciple of Jesus Christ (Matt. 4:18–22; Mark 1:16–18; Luke 5:1–11). His Aramaic name, Cephas, meaning "a seer" or "stone," was given to him by the Lord (John 1:40–42; JST, John 1:42 [Appendix]). While the New Testament mentions some of Peter's mortal weaknesses, it also illustrates that he overcame them and was made strong by his faith in Jesus Christ.

Peter confessed that Jesus was the Christ and the Son of God (John 6:68–69), and the Lord selected him to hold the keys of the kingdom on earth (Matt. 16:13–19). On the Mount of Transfiguration, Peter saw the transfigured Savior, as well as Moses and Elias (Elijah) (Matt. 17:1–9).

Peter was the chief Apostle of his day. After the death, Resurrection, and Ascension of the Savior, he called the Church together and directed the calling of an Apostle to replace Judas Iscariot (Acts 1:15–26). Peter and John healed a man who was lame from birth (Acts 3:1–16) and were miraculously released from prison (Acts 5:11–29; 12:1–19). It was through Peter's ministry that the gospel was first opened to the Gentiles (Acts 10–11). In the latter days, Peter, with James and John, came from heaven and conferred the Melchizedek Priesthood and the keys thereof upon Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery (**D&C** 27:12–13; 128:20).

First epistle of Peter: The first epistle was written from "Babylon" (probably Rome) and was sent to the Saints in what is now called Asia Minor

soon after Nero began persecuting the Christians.

Chapter 1 speaks of Christ's fore-ordained role as the Redeemer. Chapters 2–3 explain that Christ is the chief cornerstone of the Church, that the Saints hold a royal priesthood, and that Christ preached to the spirits in prison. Chapters 4–5 explain why the gospel is preached to the dead and why the elders must feed the flock.

Second epistle of Peter: Chapter 1 exhorts the Saints to make their calling and election sure. Chapter 2 warns against false teachers. Chapter 3 speaks of the latter days and Christ's Second Coming.

Pharaoh. *See also* Egypt; Egyptus

The eldest son of Egyptus, the daughter of Ham (Abr. 1:25). Also, the title given to the Egyptian kings (Abr. 1:27).

Pharisees. *See also* Jews

In the New Testament, a religious group among the Jews whose name suggests being separate or apart. The Pharisees prided themselves on strictly observing the law of Moses and avoiding anything associated with the Gentiles. They believed in life after death, the Resurrection, and the existence of angels and spirits. They believed that the oral law and tradition were equally as important as the written laws. Their teachings reduced religion to the observance of rules and encouraged spiritual pride. They caused many Jewish people to doubt Christ and His gospel. The Lord denounced the Pharisees and their works in Matthew 23; Mark 7:1–23; and Luke 11:37–44.

Phelps, William W.

An early member and leader in the Church after it was restored in 1830. The Lord called William Phelps to be a printer for the Church (D&C 57:11; 58:40; 70:1).

Philemon. *See also* Paul

A Christian man in the New Testament who owned the slave Onesimus, who ran away and joined Paul. Paul sent Onesimus back to Philemon with a letter asking that Philemon forgive the slave.

Philemon, Epistle to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles

A book in the New Testament, taken from a letter written by Paul. Paul's letter to Philemon is a private letter about Onesimus, a slave who had robbed his master, Philemon, and run away to Rome. Paul sent him back to his master at Colosse in company with Tychicus, the bearer of Paul's letter to the Colossians. Paul asked that Onesimus be forgiven and received back as a fellow Christian. Paul wrote this letter while he was in prison in Rome the first time.

Philip

In the New Testament, Philip, of Bethsaida, was one of the original Twelve Apostles of the Savior (Matt. 10:2–4; John 1:43–45).

Another Philip was one of seven chosen to assist the Twelve Apostles (Acts 6:2–6). He preached in Samaria and to an Ethiopian eunuch (Acts 8).

Philippians, Epistle to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles

A letter that Paul wrote to the Saints in Philippi while he was in prison in Rome the first time. It is now the book of Philippians in the New Testament.

Chapter 1 contains Paul's greetings and his instruction on unity, humility, and perseverance. Chapter 2 emphasizes that all shall bow to Christ and that each person must work out his own salvation. In chapter 3, Paul explained that he has sacrificed all things for Christ. In chapter 4, Paul thanked the Philippian Saints for their assistance.

Philistines

In the Old Testament, a tribe that

Pilate, Pontius

originally came from Caphtor (Amos 9:7) and occupied the rich lowland on the Mediterranean coast from Joppa to the Egyptian desert before the days of Abraham (Gen. 21:32). For many years there was a military struggle between the Philistines and the Israelites. Eventually Palestine, the name of the Philistine territory, became a familiar title for all of the Holy Land.

Israel was in bondage to the Philistines for forty years, **Judg.** 13:1. Samson fought the Philistines, **Judg.** 13–16. Goliath was a Philistine of Gath, **1 Sam.** 17. David defeated the Philistines, **1 Sam.** 19:8.

Pilate, Pontius

A Roman ruler in Judea, A.D. 26–36 (Luke 3:1). He hated the Jewish people and their religion and put at least some Galileans to death (Luke 13:1). Jesus was accused and condemned to be crucified before Pilate (Matt. 27:2, 11–26, 58–66; Mark 15; Luke 23; John 18:28–19:38).

Plan of Redemption. *See also* Atonement; Fall of Adam and Eve; Gospel; Jesus Christ; Salvation

The fulness of the gospel of Jesus Christ, designed to bring about man's immortality and eternal life. It includes the Creation, Fall, and Atonement, along with all God-given laws, ordinances, and doctrines. This plan makes it possible for all people to be exalted and live forever with God (2 Ne. 2; 9). The scriptures also refer to this plan as the plan of salvation, the plan of happiness, and the plan of mercy.

He was wounded for our transgressions, **Isa.** 53:5 (Mosiah 14:5).

There is none other name under heaven by which man can be saved, **Acts** 4:12. As in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive, **1 Cor.** 15:22. By grace are ye saved through faith, **Eph.** 2:8 (2 Ne. 25:23). God promised eternal life before the world began, **Titus** 1:2. Jesus is the author of

eternal salvation, **Heb.** 5:8–9. The plan of redemption was extended to the dead, **1 Pet.** 3:18–20; 4:6 (D&C 138).

Death fulfills the merciful plan of the great Creator, **2 Ne.** 9:6. How great is the plan of our God, **2 Ne.** 9:13. The plan of redemption brings to pass the resurrection and a remission of sins, **Alma** 12:25–34. Aaron taught the plan of redemption to Lamoni's father, **Alma** 22:12–14. Amulek explained the plan of salvation, **Alma** 34:8–16. Alma explained the plan of salvation, **Alma** 42:5–26, 31.

The doctrines of the creation, fall, atonement, and baptism are affirmed in modern revelation, **D&C** 20:17–29. The plan was ordained before the world, **D&C** 128:22.

My work and my glory is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man, **Moses** 1:39. This is the plan of salvation unto all men, **Moses** 6:52–62. We will prove them herewith, **Abr.** 3:22–26.

Plan of Salvation. *See* Plan of Redemption

Plates. *See also* Book of Mormon; Gold Plates

Anciently some cultures wrote their histories and records on metal plates, as was the case with the Book of Mormon. For further information, see "A Brief Explanation about the Book of Mormon" in the introductory pages of the Book of Mormon.

Plural Marriage. *See* Marriage, Marry—Plural marriage

Polygamy. *See* Marriage, Marry—Plural marriage

Ponder. *See also* Prayer; Revelation

To meditate and think deeply, often upon the scriptures or other things of God. When combined with prayer, pondering the things of God may bring revelation and understanding.

Mary pondered these things in her heart, **Luke** 2:19.

As I sat pondering in mine heart I was caught away, **1 Ne.** 11:1. My heart pondereth the scriptures, **2 Ne.** 4:15. Nephi went his way, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown, **Hel.** 10:2–3. Go to your homes and ponder upon the things which I have said, **3 Ne.** 17:3. Remember how merciful the Lord hath been, and ponder it in your hearts, **Moro.** 10:3.

Ponder upon the things which you have received, **D&C** 30:3. While we meditated upon these things, the Lord touched the eyes of our understandings, **D&C** 76:19. I sat in my room pondering over the scriptures, **D&C** 138:1–11.

I reflected on it again and again, **JS—H** 1:12.

Poor. *See also* Alms, Almsgiving; Fast, Fasting; Humble, Humility; Offering; Welfare

In the scriptures, *poor* can refer to (1) people who are without needed material goods, such as food, clothing, and shelter, or (2) people who are humble and without pride.

Poor in material goods: Thou shalt not shut thine hand from thy poor brother, **Deut.** 15:7. The wicked in his pride doth persecute the poor, **Ps.** 10:2. He that giveth unto the poor shall not lack, **Prov.** 28:27. Bring the poor to thy house, **Isa.** 58:6–7.

If thou wilt be perfect, give to the poor, **Matt.** 19:21 (Mark 10:21; Luke 18:22). Hath not God chosen the poor of this world, **James** 2:5.

Because they are rich they despise the poor, **2 Ne.** 9:30. To retain a remission of your sins, impart of your substance to the poor, **Mosiah** 4:26. They did impart of their substance to the poor, **Alma** 1:27. If ye turn away the needy, your prayer is vain, **Alma** 34:28. The Nephites had all things in common; there were not rich and poor, **4 Ne.** 1:3.

Thou wilt remember the poor, **D&C** 42:30 (**D&C** 52:40). Wo unto the poor

whose hearts are not broken, **D&C** 56:17–18. The poor will come unto the marriage of the Lamb, **D&C** 58:6–11. The bishop is to search after the poor, **D&C** 84:112. Gospel law governs the care of the poor, **D&C** 104:17–18.

There was no poor among them, **Moses** 7:18.

Poor in spirit: More blessed are those who humble themselves without being compelled because of poverty, **Alma** 32:4–6, 12–16. Blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, **3 Ne.** 12:3 (**Matt.** 5:3).

The poor and meek shall have the gospel preached unto them, **D&C** 35:15.

Pornography. *See* Adultery; Chastity; Fornication

Power. *See also* Authority; Priesthood

The ability to do something. To have power over someone or something is to have the ability to control or command that person or thing. In the scriptures, power is often connected with the power of God or the power of heaven. It is often closely related to priesthood authority, which is the permission or right to act for God.

For this cause have I raised thee up, to show in thee my power, **Ex.** 9:16. God is my strength and power, **2 Sam.** 22:33. Withhold not good when it is in the power of thine hand to do it, **Prov.** 3:27. Truly I am full of power by the spirit of the Lord, **Micah** 3:8.

All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth, **Matt.** 28:18. They were astonished at his doctrine: for his word was with power, **Luke** 4:32. Tarry ye in the city until ye be endued with power from on high, **Luke** 24:49. As many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, **John** 1:12 (**D&C** 11:30). Ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you, **Acts** 1:8. There is no power but of God, **Rom.** 13:1. You are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation, **1 Pet.** 1:3–5.

I am filled with the power of God, **1 Ne.** 17:48. It has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost, **Jacob** 7:12. A man may have great power given him from God, **Mosiah** 8:16. They taught with power and authority of God, **Alma** 17:2–3. Nephi did minister with power and with great authority, **3 Ne.** 7:15–20 (3 Ne. 11:19–22).

Although a man may have power to do mighty works, if he boasts in his own strength he must fall, **D&C** 3:4. The power to do good is in each person, **D&C** 58:27–28. In the ordinances of the Melchizedek Priesthood the power of godliness is manifest, **D&C** 84:19–22. The rights of the priesthood are inseparably connected with the powers of heaven, **D&C** 121:34–46.

I will lead thee by my hand, and my power shall be over thee, **Abr.** 1:18.

Praise. See Glory; Thankful, Thanks, Thanksgiving

Pratt, Orson

One of the first Twelve Apostles called after the Restoration of the Church in modern times (**D&C** 124:128–129). He had been a member of the Church only six weeks when the Lord gave a revelation to him through Joseph Smith (**D&C** 34). Orson Pratt was also a missionary for the Church (**D&C** 52:26; 75:14) and served as Church historian for several years.

Pratt, Parley Parker

Older brother of Orson Pratt and one of the first Twelve Apostles called after the Restoration of the Church in modern times (**D&C** 124:128–129). Parley Pratt was called on the first of several missionary efforts when the Lord gave a revelation to him through Joseph Smith in October 1830 (**D&C** 32; 50:37).

Prayer. See also Amen; Ask; Ponder; Worship

A reverent communication with God during which a person gives thanks

and asks for blessings. Prayers are addressed to our Heavenly Father in the name of Jesus Christ. Prayers can be either spoken aloud or silent. A person's thoughts may also be a prayer if they are directed to God. A song of the righteous may be a prayer to God (**D&C** 25:12).

The object of prayer is not to change the will of God, but to secure for ourselves and for others blessings that God is already willing to grant, but that we must ask for in order to obtain.

We pray to the Father in Christ's name (**John** 14:13–14; 16:23–24). We are truly able to pray in Christ's name when our wishes are the wishes of Christ (**John** 15:7; **D&C** 46:30). We then ask for things that are right and thus possible for God to grant (3 Ne. 18:20). Some prayers remain unanswered because they in no way represent Christ's desire but spring instead out of the selfishness of man (**James** 4:3; **D&C** 46:9). Indeed, if we ask God for unrighteous things, it will turn to our condemnation (**D&C** 88:65).

Then began men to call upon the name of the Lord, **Gen.** 4:26. At the place of the altar, Abraham called on the name of the Lord, **Gen.** 13:4. Abraham's servant prayed for help in finding a wife for Isaac, **Gen.** 24:10–19. God forbid that I should sin against the Lord in ceasing to pray for you, **1 Sam.** 12:23. The Lord heareth the prayer of the righteous, **Prov.** 15:29. Ye shall find me, when ye shall search for me with all your heart, **Jer.** 29:12–13.

Pray for them which despitefully use you, **Matt.** 5:44 (**Luke** 6:28; 3 Ne. 12:44). Pray to thy Father which is in secret, **Matt.** 6:5–8 (3 Ne. 13:5–8). After this manner therefore pray ye, **Matt.** 6:9–13 (**Luke** 11:2; 3 Ne. 13:9). Ask, and it shall be given you, **Matt.** 7:7 (3 Ne. 14:7; **D&C** 4:7; 6:5; 66:9). Jesus went up into a mountain apart to pray, **Matt.** 14:23. Watch and pray, that ye enter not into temptation, **Matt.** 26:41 (**Mark** 14:38;

3 Ne. 18:15–18; D&C 31:12). Let him ask in faith, nothing wavering, **James** 1:5–6 (D&C 42:68; 46:7). The fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much, **James** 5:16.

Hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray, **2 Ne.** 32:8–9. I cried unto him in mighty prayer, **Enos** 1:4. I have fasted and prayed many days, **Alma** 5:45–46 (**Alma** 26:22). They had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting, **Alma** 17:3. Do ye remember what Zenos said concerning prayer or worship, **Alma** 33:3. Humble yourselves, and continue in prayer, **Alma** 34:18–27. Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, **Alma** 37:37. Ye must always pray unto the Father in my name, **3 Ne.** 18:19–20. Pray in your families, **3 Ne.** 18:21. Jesus prayed unto the Father, **3 Ne.** 19:31–34 (**John** 17; **3 Ne.** 18:16). He commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts, **3 Ne.** 20:1. If he shall pray and not with real intent of heart, it profiteth him nothing, **Moro.** 7:6–9.

Do not ask for that which you ought not, **D&C** 8:10. Pray always, that you may come off conqueror, **D&C** 10:5. I command thee that thou shalt pray vocally as well as in thy heart, **D&C** 19:28. The Spirit shall be given unto you by the prayer of faith, **D&C** 42:14. Go to the house of prayer and offer up thy sacraments, **D&C** 59:9 (**Matt.** 21:13). Parents shall teach their children to pray, **D&C** 68:28. The Lord their God is slow to hearken unto their prayers, **D&C** 101:7–8 (**Mosiah** 21:15). Be thou humble; and the Lord thy God shall give thee answer to thy prayers, **D&C** 112:10.

Adam was commanded to call upon God in the name of the Son, **Moses** 5:8. The Father and the Son appeared to Joseph Smith in answer to his prayer, **JS—H** 1:11–20.

Preach. *See also* Gospel; Missionary Work

To give a message that provides a

better understanding of a gospel principle or doctrine.

The Lord hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek, **Isa.** 61:1 (**Luke** 4:16–21). Arise, go unto Nineveh, and preach unto it, **Jonah** 3:2–10.

From that time Jesus began to preach, **Matt.** 4:17. Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature, **Mark** 16:15. We preach Christ crucified, **1 Cor.** 1:22–24. He went and preached unto the spirits in prison, **1 Pet.** 3:19.

There was nothing save it were preaching and stirring them up continually to keep them in fear of the Lord, **Enos** 1:23. He commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, **Mosiah** 18:20. The preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which is just, **Alma** 31:5.

You need not suppose that you are called to preach until you are called, **D&C** 11:15. It shall not be given to any one to go forth to preach except he be ordained, **D&C** 42:11. This gospel shall be preached to every nation, **D&C** 133:37.

The gospel began to be preached from the beginning, **Moses** 5:58.

Predestination. *See* Foreordination

Premortal Life. *See also* Beginning; Council in Heaven; Man, Men; War in Heaven

The life before earth life. All men and women lived with God as His spirit children before coming to the earth as mortal beings. This is sometimes called the first estate (**Abr.** 3:26).

When God laid the foundations of the earth, all the sons of God shouted for joy, **Job** 38:4–7. The spirit shall return unto God who gave it, **Eccl.** 12:7. Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee, **Jer.** 1:4–5.

We are all his offspring, **Acts** 17:28. God chose us before the foundation of the world, **Eph.** 1:3–4. We are to be

in subjection to the Father of spirits, **Heb.** 12:9. The angels which kept not their first estate, he hath reserved in everlasting chains, **Jude** 1:6 (Abr. 3:26). The Devil and his angels were cast out, **Rev.** 12:9.

They were called and prepared from the foundation of the world, **Alma** 13:3.

Christ looked upon the expanse of eternity and hosts of heaven before the world was made, **D&C** 38:1. Man was also in the beginning with God, **D&C** 93:29 (Hel. 14:17; **D&C** 49:17). Noble spirits were chosen in the beginning to be rulers in the Church, **D&C** 138:53–55. Many received their first lessons in the world of spirits, **D&C** 138:56.

All things were created spiritually before they were on earth, **Moses** 3:5. I made the world, and men before they were in the flesh, **Moses** 6:51. Abraham saw the intelligences that were organized before the world was, **Abr.** 3:21–24.

Presidency. *See* First Presidency

President. *See also* First Presidency; Prophet

A title for the presiding officer of an organization. The President of the Church is a prophet, seer, and revelator (**D&C** 21:1; 107:91–92), and members of the Church are to call the prophet of the Church by the title “President” (**D&C** 107:65). He is the only person on earth authorized to exercise all priesthood keys.

The heads of priesthood quorums and other Church organizations may also have the title of president.

The Lord gave the keys of the kingdom to Joseph Smith, **D&C** 81:1–2. Three presidents form a quorum of the Presidency of the Church, **D&C** 107:21–24. Presidents were ordained after the order of Melchizedek, **D&C** 107:29. The duties of the presidents over deacons, teachers, priests, and elders are described, **D&C** 107:85–89 (**D&C** 124:136–138, 142). There are seven

presidents over all other Seventy, **D&C** 107:93–95. Presidents of stakes were appointed, **D&C** 124:133–135.

Presiding Bishop

A General Authority in the Church. He has general responsibility over the temporal welfare of the Church (**D&C** 107:68). The Presiding Bishop and his counselors, who are also General Authorities, preside over the Aaronic Priesthood of the Church (**D&C** 68:16–17; 107:76, 87–88).

Edward Partridge to be ordained a bishop, **D&C** 41:9. Bishops are to be called and set apart by the First Presidency, **D&C** 68:14–15. Literal descendants of Aaron, who are firstborn, have the right to preside if called, set apart, and ordained by the First Presidency, **D&C** 68:16, 18–20. May be tried only before the First Presidency, **D&C** 68:22–24 (**D&C** 107:82).

Pride. *See also* Humble, Humility; Money; Riches; Vain, Vanity; Worldliness

A lack or absence of humility or teachableness. Pride sets people in opposition to each other and to God. A proud person sets himself above those around him and follows his own will rather than God’s will. Conceit, envy, hardheartedness, and haughtiness are also typical of a proud person.

Beware that thou forget not the Lord lest thine heart be lifted up, **Deut.** 8:11–14. Pride and arrogancy do I hate, **Prov.** 8:13 (**Prov.** 6:16–17). Pride goeth before destruction, **Prov.** 16:18. The day of the Lord shall be upon the proud, **Isa.** 2:11–12 (2 Ne. 12:11–12). The pride of thine heart hath deceived thee, **Obad.** 1:3. All the proud shall be stubble, **Mal.** 4:1 (1 Ne. 22:15; 3 Ne. 25:1; **D&C** 29:9).

Whosoever shall exalt himself shall be abased, **Matt.** 23:12 (**D&C** 101:42). God resisteth the proud, **1 Pet.** 5:5.

The great and spacious building was the pride of the world, **1 Ne.** 11:36

(1 Ne. 12:18). When they are learned they think they are wise, **2 Ne.** 9:28–29. Ye are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, **Jacob** 2:13, 16 (Alma 4:8–12). Are ye stripped of pride, **Alma** 5:28. Exceedingly great pride had gotten into the hearts of the people, **Hel.** 3:33–36. How quick are the children of men lifted up in pride, **Hel.** 12:4–5. The pride of this nation hath proven their destruction, **Moro.** 8:27.

Beware of pride, lest ye become as the Nephites, **D&C** 38:39. Cease from all your pride and light-mindedness, **D&C** 88:121.

Priest, Aaronic Priesthood. *See also* Aaron, Brother of Moses; Aaronic Priesthood; High Priest

An office of the Aaronic Priesthood. Anciently, the highest office in the Levitical Priesthood was held only by Aaron and his descendants. When Christ fulfilled the law of Moses, this restriction was removed.

A priest's duties in the restored Church are described, **D&C** 20:46–52.

Priest, Melchizedek Priesthood. *See also* High Priest; Melchizedek Priesthood

A person who performs religious rites for others and directed to God. Frequently in the scriptures, priests are actually high priests after the order of Melchizedek (Alma 13:2). Those who receive a fulness of God's glory after the Resurrection become priests and kings in the celestial world.

Melchizedek was a priest of the most high God, **Gen.** 14:18. Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchizedek, **Ps.** 110:4 (Heb. 5:6; 7:17, 21).

Christ hath made us kings and priests unto God and his Father, **Rev.** 1:6 (Rev. 5:10; 20:6).

Remember that the Lord God ordained priests after his holy order, **Alma** 13:1–20.

Those who come forth in the

resurrection of the just are priests and kings, **D&C** 76:50, 55–60.

Priestcraft

Men preaching and setting themselves up for a light to the world that they may get gain and praise of the world; they do not seek the welfare of Zion (2 Ne. 26:29).

Feed the flock of God, not for filthy lucre, **1 Pet.** 5:2.

Churches which are built up to get gain must be brought low, **1 Ne.** 22:23 (Morm. 8:32–41). Because of priestcrafts and iniquities, Jesus will be crucified, **2 Ne.** 10:5. Were priestcraft to be enforced among this people it would prove their entire destruction, **Alma** 1:12. The Gentiles shall be filled with all manner of priestcrafts, **3 Ne.** 16:10.

Priesthood. *See also* Aaronic Priesthood; Authority; Keys of the Priesthood; Melchizedek Priesthood; Oath and Covenant of the Priesthood; Ordain, Ordination; Power

The authority and power that God gives to man to act in all things for the salvation of man (**D&C** 50:26–27). Male members of the Church who hold the priesthood are organized into quorums and are authorized to perform ordinances and certain administrative functions in the Church.

Their anointing shall surely be an everlasting priesthood, **Ex.** 40:15 (Num. 25:13).

I have ordained you, **John** 15:16. Ye are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, **1 Pet.** 2:5. Ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, **1 Pet.** 2:9 (Ex. 19:6).

Men are called as high priests because of their exceeding faith and good works, **Alma** 13:1–12. I give unto you power to baptize, **3 Ne.** 11:21. Ye shall have power to give the Holy Ghost, **Moro.** 2:2.

I will reveal unto you the priesthood, by the hand of Elijah, **D&C** 2:1

(JS—H 1:38). The Lord confirmed a priesthood also upon Aaron and his seed, **D&C** 84:18. This greater priesthood administereth the gospel, **D&C** 84:19. He took Moses out of their midst, and the Holy Priesthood, **D&C** 84:25. The oath and covenant of the priesthood is described, **D&C** 84:33–42. The priesthood hath continued through the lineage of your fathers, **D&C** 86:8. There are, in the Church, two priesthoods, **D&C** 107:1. The first priesthood is the Holy Priesthood, after the Order of the Son of God, **D&C** 107:2–4. The rights of the priesthood are inseparably connected with the powers of heaven, **D&C** 121:36. No power or influence can or ought to be maintained by virtue of the priesthood only by persuasion and love unfeigned, **D&C** 121:41. Every faithful, worthy male member of the Church may receive the priesthood, **OD** 2.

We believe that a man must be called of God, **A of F** 1:5.

Priesthood, Aaronic. *See* Aaronic Priesthood

Priesthood, Keys of. *See* Keys of the Priesthood

Priesthood, Melchizedek. *See* Melchizedek Priesthood

Priesthood Ordination. *See* Ordain, Ordination

Principle. *See also* Gospel

A basic doctrine, truth, or law. The first principles of the gospel are faith in the Lord Jesus Christ and repentance (**A of F** 1:4).

Not leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection, **JST**, **Heb.** 6:1.

The elders, priests, and teachers shall teach the principles of my gospel, which are in the scriptures, **D&C** 42:12. Be instructed more perfectly in principle, in doctrine, in all things, **D&C** 88:78 (**D&C** 97:14). Every man may act in doctrine and principle according to the

moral agency I have given him, **D&C** 101:78. Whatever principle of intelligence we attain in this life will rise with us in the resurrection, **D&C** 130:18–19.

Profanity. *See also* Blaspheme, Blasphemy

Disrespect or contempt for sacred things; especially, irreverence for the name of God.

Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain, **Ex.** 20:7 (2 **Ne.** 26:32; **Mosiah** 13:15; **D&C** 136:21). Why do we profane the covenant of our fathers, **Mal.** 2:10.

Every idle word that men shall speak, they shall account for in the judgment, **Matt.** 12:34–37. Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing, which ought not so to be, **James** 3:10.

Our words will condemn us, **Alma** 12:14 (**Mosiah** 4:30).

Let all men beware how they take my name in their lips, **D&C** 63:61–62.

Promised Land

Lands that the Lord promises as an inheritance to His faithful followers, and often also to their descendants. There are many promised lands. Often in the Book of Mormon, the promised land spoken of is the Americas.

Unto thy seed will I give this land, **Gen.** 12:7 (**Abr.** 2:19). I will give unto thee and to thy seed the land of Canaan, **Gen.** 17:8 (**Gen.** 28:13). Moses specified the borders of the land for Israel in Canaan, **Num.** 34:1–12 (**Num.** 27:12).

Ye shall be led to a land of promise, **1 Ne.** 2:20 (1 **Ne.** 5:5). The Lord leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, **1 Ne.** 17:38. If Lehi's descendants keep God's commandments, they will prosper in the land of promise, **2 Ne.** 1:5–9. Israel shall return to their lands of promise, **2 Ne.** 24:1–2 (**Isa.** 14:1–2). Whatsoever nation shall possess this promised land should serve God, or they should be swept off, **Ether** 2:9–12.

This is the land of promise, and the

place for the city of Zion, **D&C 57:2**. Judah may begin to return to the lands of Abraham, **D&C 109:64**.

The New Jerusalem will be built upon the American continent, **A of F 1:10**.

Prophecy, Prophesy. *See also* Prophet; Prophetess; Revelation; Seer

A prophecy consists of divinely inspired words or writings, which a person receives through revelation from the Holy Ghost. The testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy (Rev. 19:10). A prophecy may pertain to the past, present, or future. When a person prophesies, he speaks or writes that which God wants him to know, for his own good or the good of others. Individuals may receive prophecy or revelation for their own lives.

Would God that all the Lord's people were prophets, **Num. 11:29**. Your sons and daughters shall prophesy, **Joel 2:28** (Acts 2:17–18). He revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets, **Amos 3:7**.

No prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation, **2 Pet. 1:20**.

The Nephites had many revelations and the spirit of prophecy, **Jacob 4:6, 13**. Alma and Amulek knew the intents of Zeezrom's heart by the spirit of prophecy, **Alma 12:7**. Wo unto him who says the Lord no longer works by prophecy, **3 Ne. 29:6**. Search the prophecies of Isaiah, **Morm. 8:23**.

The prophecies shall all be fulfilled, **D&C 1:37–38**.

Man must be called of God by prophecy, **A of F 1:5**.

Prophet. *See also* President; Prophecy; Prophesy; Revelation; Seer

A person who has been called by and speaks for God. As a messenger of God, a prophet receives commandments, prophecies, and revelations from God. His responsibility is to make known God's will and true character to mankind and to show the meaning of His dealings with them. A prophet

denounces sin and foretells its consequences. He is a preacher of righteousness. On occasion, prophets may be inspired to foretell the future for the benefit of mankind. His primary responsibility, however, is to bear witness of Christ. The President of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints is God's prophet on earth today. Members of the First Presidency and the Twelve Apostles are sustained as prophets, seers, and revelators.

Would God that all the Lord's people were prophets, **Num. 11:29**. If there be a prophet, I the Lord will make myself known unto him in a vision, **Num. 12:6**. The Lord testified against Israel by all the prophets, **2 Kgs. 17:13** (2 Chr. 36:15–16; Jer. 7:25). I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations, **Jer. 1:5, 7**. He revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets, **Amos 3:7**.

He spake by the mouth of his holy prophets, **Luke 1:70** (Acts 3:21). All the prophets witnessed of Christ, **Acts 10:43**. God hath set prophets in the Church, **1 Cor. 12:28** (Eph. 4:11). The Church is built on a foundation of Apostles and prophets, **Eph. 2:19–20**.

The people have rejected the words of the prophets, **1 Ne. 3:17–18** (2 Ne. 26:3). By the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets, **1 Ne. 22:1–2**. Christ came to the Nephites to fulfill all he had spoken by the mouths of his holy prophets, **3 Ne. 1:13** (D&C 42:39).

Those who will not give heed to the words of prophets shall be cut off, **D&C 1:14**. Those who believe the words of the prophets have eternal life, **D&C 20:26**. The prophet's word ye shall receive, as if from mine own mouth, **D&C 21:4–6**. Revelations and commandments for the Church come only through the one appointed, **D&C 43:1–7**. The duty of the President is to preside over the whole Church and to be like unto Moses, to be prophet, **D&C 107:91–92**.

We believe in prophets, **A of F 1:6**.

Prophetess

Prophetess. *See also* Prophecy, Prophecy

A woman who has received a testimony of Jesus and enjoys the spirit of revelation. A prophetess does not hold the priesthood or its keys. Though only a few women in the scriptures are called prophetesses, many prophesied, such as Rebekah, Hannah, Elisabeth, and Mary.

Miriam was called a prophetess, **Ex.** 15:20. Deborah was called a prophetess, **Judg.** 4:4. Huldah was called a prophetess, **2 Kgs.** 22:14 (2 Chr. 34:22).

Anna was called a prophetess, **Luke** 2:36.

Proverb

A brief moral saying or counsel.

The book of Proverbs: An Old Testament book that contains many parables, sayings, and poems, some of which were written by Solomon. The book of Proverbs is frequently quoted in the New Testament.

Chapters 1–9 contain an explanation of true wisdom. Chapters 10–24 contain a collection of sayings about the right and wrong ways of living. Chapters 25–29 contain the proverbs of Solomon that the men of Hezekiah, king of Judah, recorded. Chapters 30–31 include a description of a virtuous woman.

Psalms. *See also* David; Music

An inspired poem or hymn.

The book of Psalms: An Old Testament book that contains a collection of psalms, many of which are about Christ. The book of Psalms is quoted frequently in the New Testament.

David wrote many of the Psalms. The Psalms were written as praises to God. Many were set to music.

Publican. *See also* Roman Empire

In ancient Rome, a collector of taxes for the government. Publicans were generally hated by the Jews. Some

publicans readily accepted the gospel (**Matt.** 9:9–10; **Luke** 19:2–8).

Pure, Purity. *See also* Clean and Unclean; Sanctification

Free from sin or guilt; blameless. A person becomes pure when his thoughts and actions are clean in every way. A person who has committed sin can become pure through faith in Jesus Christ, repentance, and receiving the ordinances of the gospel.

He that hath clean hands and a pure heart shall receive the Lord's blessings, **Ps.** 24:3–5. Be ye clean, that bear the vessels of the Lord, **Isa.** 52:11 (**D&C** 133:4–5).

Blessed are the pure in heart, **Matt.** 5:8 (3 Ne. 12:8). Whatsoever things are pure, think on these things, **Philip.** 4:8 (**A of F** 1:13).

All ye that are pure in heart, lift up your heads and receive the pleasing word of God, **Jacob** 3:2–3. Can ye look up to God at that day with a pure heart and clean hands, **Alma** 5:19. Being pure and spotless before God, they could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence, **Alma** 13:12. Be purified even as Christ is pure, **Moro.** 7:48 (**Morm.** 9:6).

Christ will reserve unto himself a pure people, **D&C** 43:14. The Lord commanded that a house be built in Zion in which the pure shall see God, **D&C** 97:10–17. This is Zion—the pure in heart, **D&C** 97:21.

Quarrel. *See* Contention

Quicken. *See also* Resurrection

To make alive, to resurrect, or to change a person so that he can be in the presence of God.

God hath quickened us together with Christ, **Eph.** 2:4–5 (**Col.** 2:6, 12–13). Christ was put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit, **1 Pet.** 3:18 (**D&C** 138:7).

No man has seen God, except quickened by the Spirit, **D&C** 67:11.

Redemption is through him that quickeneth all things, **D&C 88:16–17**. The Saints will be quickened and caught up to meet Christ, **D&C 88:96**.

Adam became quickened in the inner man, **Moses 6:65**.

Quorum. *See also* Priesthood

The word *quorum* can be used in two ways: (1) A specified group of men who hold the same office of the priesthood. (2) A majority, or the minimum number of members in a priesthood group that must be in attendance at a meeting to conduct the business of the Church (**D&C 107:28**).

Quorums of the First Presidency, of the Twelve, and of the Seventy and their relationship to each other are described, **D&C 107:22–26, 33–34** (**D&C 124:126–128**). Decisions of these quorums must be unanimous, **D&C 107:27**. Decisions of a quorum are to be made in all righteousness, **D&C 107:30–32**. Duties of presidents of priesthood quorums are described, **D&C 107:85–96**. The quorum of elders is instituted for standing ministers, **D&C 124:137**.

Rachel. *See also* Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, a wife of Jacob (**Gen. 29–31; 35**). She was also the mother of Joseph and Benjamin.

Rainbow. *See also* Ark; Flood at Noah's Time; Noah, Bible Patriarch

The sign or token of God's covenant with Noah (**Gen. 9:13–17**). JST, Genesis 9:21–25 (Appendix) explains that the covenant includes the promises that the earth will never again be covered with a flood of water, that the Zion of Enoch will return, and that the Lord will come again to dwell on the earth.

Rameumptom

In the Book of Mormon, a high stand on which the Zoramites, apostate Nephites, prayed (**Alma 31:8–14, 21**).

Raphael. *See also* Angels

An angel of the Lord who participated in the restoration of all things (**D&C 128:21**).

Rebekah. *See also* Isaac

The wife of Isaac, a patriarch in the Old Testament (**Gen. 24–27**). Rebekah was the mother of Esau and Jacob (**Gen. 25:23–26**).

Rebellion. *See also* Apostasy; Devil; Murmur; Sin

Defying or opposing the Lord, including refusing to follow His chosen leaders and willfully disobeying His commandments.

Rebel not ye against the Lord, **Num. 14:9**. An evil man seeketh only rebellion, **Prov. 17:11**. Woe to the rebellious children, **Isa. 30:1**.

The Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins, **Mosiah 15:26**. The Amlicites came out in open rebellion against God, **Alma 3:18–19**.

The rebellious shall be pierced with much sorrow, **D&C 1:3**. The Lord's anger is kindled against the rebellious, **D&C 56:1** (**D&C 63:1–6**).

Satan rebelled against God, **Moses 4:3**.

Redeem, Redeemed, Redemption.

See also Atone, Atonement; Death, Physical; Death, Spiritual; Fall of Adam and Eve; Jesus Christ; Salvation

To deliver, to purchase, or to ransom, such as to free a person from bondage by payment. *Redemption* refers to the Atonement of Jesus Christ and to deliverance from sin. Jesus' Atonement redeems all mankind from physical death. Through His Atonement, those who have faith in Him and who repent are also redeemed from spiritual death.

I have redeemed thee, **Isa. 44:22**. I will redeem them from death, **Hosea 13:14** (**Ps. 49:15**).

We have redemption through the

Redeemer

blood of Christ, **Eph.** 1:7, 14 (Heb. 9:11–15; 1 Pet. 1:18–19; Alma 5:21; Hel. 5:9–12).

The Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell, **2 Ne.** 1:15. Redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah, **2 Ne.** 2:6–7, 26 (Mosiah 15:26–27; 26:26). They did sing redeeming love, **Alma** 5:9 (Alma 5:26; 26:13). The wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, **Alma** 11:40–41 (Alma 34:16; 42:13; Hel. 14:16–18). Jesus Christ hath brought to pass the redemption of the world, **Morm.** 7:5–7. The power of redemption comes on all who have no law, **Moro.** 8:22 (D&C 45:54).

They that believe not cannot be redeemed from their spiritual fall, **D&C** 29:44. Little children are redeemed from the foundation of the world, **D&C** 29:46. The Lord hath redeemed his people, **D&C** 84:99. Joseph F. Smith saw in vision the redemption of the dead, **D&C** 138.

Adam and Eve rejoiced in their redemption, **Moses** 5:9–11.

Redeemer. *See also* Jesus Christ; Savior

Jesus Christ is the great Redeemer of mankind because He, through His Atonement, paid the price for the sins of mankind and made possible the resurrection of all people.

I know that my redeemer liveth, **Job** 19:25. I will help thee, saith thy redeemer, the Holy One of Israel, **Isa.** 41:14 (Isa. 43:14; 48:17; 54:5; 59:20). I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, **Isa.** 49:26 (Isa. 60:16).

Call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins, **Matt.** 1:21. The Son of man came to give his life as a ransom for many, **Matt.** 20:28 (1 Tim. 2:5–6). The Lord God of Israel hath visited and redeemed his people, **Luke** 1:68. We were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, **Rom.** 5:10. Jesus Christ gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, **Titus** 2:13–14. Jesus Christ washed

us from our sins in his own blood, **Rev.** 1:5.

Redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah, **2 Ne.** 2:6–7, 26. The Son took upon himself men's iniquity and transgressions, redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice, **Mosiah** 15:6–9, 18–27. Christ came to redeem all those who would be baptized unto repentance, **Alma** 9:26–27. He shall come into the world to redeem his people, **Alma** 11:40–41. Redemption comes through repentance, **Alma** 42:13–26. Jesus Christ came to redeem the world, **Hel.** 5:9–12. Christ redeemed mankind from physical and spiritual death, **Hel.** 14:12–17. Redemption cometh by Christ, **3 Ne.** 9:17. I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to redeem my people, **Ether** 3:14.

The Lord your Redeemer suffered death in the flesh, **D&C** 18:11. Christ suffered for all if they repent, **D&C** 19:1, 16–20. Little children are redeemed through the Only Begotten, **D&C** 29:46. I have sent mine Only Begotten Son into the world for the redemption of the world, **D&C** 49:5. Christ is the light and Redeemer of the world, **D&C** 93:8–9. Joseph F. Smith received a vision of the redemption of the dead, **D&C** 138.

We believe that through the atonement of Christ, all mankind may be saved, **A of F** 1:3.

Redemption, Plan of. *See* Plan of Redemption

Red Sea. *See also* Moses

The body of water between Egypt and Arabia. Its two northern gulfs form the coastline of the Sinai Peninsula. The Lord miraculously parted the Red Sea so that the Israelites under Moses' leadership could pass through on dry ground (Ex. 14:13–31; Heb. 11:29). The parting of the sea by Moses is confirmed in latter-day revelation (1 Ne. 4:2; Hel. 8:11; D&C 8:3; Moses 1:25).

Rehoboam. *See also* Solomon

In the Old Testament, the son of King Solomon. He succeeded his father and reigned for seventeen years in Jerusalem (1 Kgs. 11:43; 14:21, 31). During Rehoboam's reign, the kingdom was divided into the kingdom of Israel in the north and the kingdom of Judah in the south (1 Kgs. 11:31–36; 12:19–20). Rehoboam ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

Remission of Sins. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Forgive; Jesus Christ; Repent, Repentance

Forgiveness for wrongdoing upon condition of repentance. Remission of sins is made possible by the Atonement of Jesus Christ. A person obtains a remission of his sins if he has faith in Christ, repents of his sins, receives the ordinances of baptism and laying on of hands for the gift of the Holy Ghost, and obeys God's commandments (A of F 1:3–4).

Though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow, **Isa.** 1:16–18.

This is my blood, which is shed for many for the remission of sins, **Matt.** 26:28 (Heb. 9:22–28; D&C 27:2). Repent, and be baptized for the remission of sins, **Acts** 2:38 (Luke 3:3; D&C 107:20). Those who believe in Jesus shall receive remission of sins, **Acts** 10:43 (Mosiah 3:13).

Christ is the source to whom they may look for a remission of sins, **2 Ne.** 25:26. To retain a remission of our sins, we must care for the poor and needy, **Mosiah** 4:11–12, 26. Whosoever repenteth shall have claim on mercy, unto a remission of his sins, **Alma** 12:34. Fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins, **Moro.** 8:25.

The Aaronic Priesthood holds the keys of baptism by immersion for the remission of sins, **D&C** 13 (D&C 84:64, 74; A of F 1:4). I, the Lord, remember their sins no more, **D&C** 58:42–43 (Ezek. 18:21–22). These were taught vicarious

baptism for the remission of sins, **D&C** 138:33.

Repent, Repentance. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Broken Heart; Confess, Confession; Forgive; Jesus Christ; Remission of Sins

A change of mind and heart that brings a fresh attitude toward God, oneself, and life in general. Repentance implies that a person turns away from evil and turns his heart and will to God, submitting to God's commandments and desires and forsaking sin. True repentance comes from a love for God and a sincere desire to obey His commandments. All accountable persons have sinned and must repent in order to progress toward salvation. Only through the Atonement of Jesus Christ can our repentance become effective and accepted by God.

Make confession unto the Lord, **Ezra** 10:11. Put away the evil of your doings; cease to do evil, **Isa.** 1:16. Repent, and turn yourselves from all your transgressions, **Ezek.** 18:30–31.

Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand, **Matt.** 3:2. There is joy in heaven over one sinner that repenteth, **Luke** 15:7. God commandeth all men every where to repent, **Acts** 17:30 (2 Ne. 9:23; 3 Ne. 11:31–40; D&C 133:16). Godly sorrow worketh repentance to salvation, **2 Cor.** 7:10.

The Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent has wrought a mighty change in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, **Mosiah** 5:2. If he confess his sins and repent, him shall ye forgive, **Mosiah** 26:29. After Alma's preaching, many people began to repent, **Alma** 14:1. Do not procrastinate the day of your repentance, **Alma** 34:33. Alma taught Helaman of his repentance and conversion, **Alma** 36 (Mosiah 27:8–32). Repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, **Alma** 42:16. Let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring you

Rest

down unto repentance, **Alma** 42:29. Ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit, **3 Ne.** 9:20. Whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, **3 Ne.** 9:22. Repent, all ye ends of the earth, **3 Ne.** 27:20. As oft as they repented, they were forgiven, **Moro.** 6:8.

Say nothing but repentance unto this generation, **D&C** 6:9 (**D&C** 11:9). How great is his joy in the soul that repenteth, **D&C** 18:13. Every man must repent or suffer, **D&C** 19:4. He that sinneth and repenteth not shall be cast out, **D&C** 42:28. He who confesses and forsakes his sins is forgiven, **D&C** 58:42–43. The dead who repent will be redeemed, **D&C** 138:58.

We believe in repentance, **A of F** 1:4.

Rest. *See also* Peace; Sabbath Day

The enjoyment of peace and freedom from worry and turmoil. The Lord has promised such rest to His faithful followers during this life. He has also prepared a place of rest for them in the next life.

My presence shall go with thee, and I will give thee rest, **Ex.** 33:14.

Come unto me, all ye that are heavy laden, and I will give you rest, **Matt.** 11:28–29.

We labored that they might enter into his rest, **Jacob** 1:7 (**Heb.** 4:1–11). Whosoever repenteth shall enter into my rest, **Alma** 12:34. There were an exceedingly great many, who were made pure, and entered into the rest of the Lord, **Alma** 13:12–16. Paradise is a state of rest, **Alma** 40:12 (**Alma** 60:13). Nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have washed their garments in my blood, **3 Ne.** 27:19.

Declare repentance unto this people, that you may rest with them in the kingdom of my Father, **D&C** 15:6 (**D&C** 16:6). Those that die shall rest from all their labors, **D&C** 59:2 (**Rev.** 14:13). The Lord's rest is the fulness of his glory, **D&C** 84:24.

Restitution, Restoration. *See also*

Restoration of the Gospel

The return of a thing or condition that has been taken away or lost.

The spirit and the body shall be reunited in its perfect form, **Alma** 11:43–44. Restoration is to bring back evil for evil, righteous for righteous, **Alma** 41:10–15.

We believe in the restoration of the Ten Tribes and that the earth will be renewed and receive its paradisiacal glory, **A of F** 1:10 (**D&C** 133:23–24).

Restoration of the Gospel. *See also*

Apostasy; Dispensation; Gospel; Smith, Joseph, Jr.

God's reestablishment of the truths and ordinances of His gospel among men on earth. The gospel of Jesus Christ was lost from the earth through the apostasy that took place following the earthly ministry of Christ's Apostles. That apostasy made necessary the Restoration of the gospel. Through visions, the ministering of angels, and revelations to men on the earth, God restored the gospel. The Restoration started with the Prophet Joseph Smith (**JS—H** 1; **D&C** 128:20–21) and has continued to the present through the work of the Lord's living prophets.

The Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, **Isa.** 2:2 (**Micah** 4:2; **2 Ne.** 12:2). God will do a marvellous work and a wonder, **Isa.** 29:14 (**2 Ne.** 25:17–18; **D&C** 4:1). God shall set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed, **Dan.** 2:44.

Elias will come, and restore all things, **Matt.** 17:11 (**Mark** 9:12; **D&C** 77:14). There will come times of restitution of all things, **Acts** 3:21 (**D&C** 27:6). In the dispensation of the fulness of times, God will gather together in one all things, **Eph.** 1:10. I saw another angel, having the everlasting gospel to preach, **Rev.** 14:6.

The fulness of the gospel will come unto the Gentiles, **1 Ne.** 15:13–18. The

Jews shall be restored to the true church, **2 Ne.** 9:2. In the latter day shall the truth come, **3 Ne.** 16:7.

Upon you I confer the Priesthood of Aaron, **D&C** 13 (JS—H 1:69). I have committed the keys of the kingdom for the last times, **D&C** 27:6, 13–14 (**D&C** 128:19–21). Gather together the tribes of Israel and restore all things, **D&C** 77:9. The keys of this dispensation are committed, **D&C** 110:16 (**D&C** 65:2). The priesthood is given in the dispensation of the fulness of times, **D&C** 112:30.

I saw two Personages, **JS—H** 1:17. I will reveal unto you the priesthood, by the hand of Elijah, **JS—H** 1:38 (**Mal.** 4:5–6).

Resurrection. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Body; Death, Physical; Immortal, Immortality; Jesus Christ; Spirit

The reuniting of the spirit body with the physical body of flesh and bones after death. After resurrection, the spirit and body will never again be separated, and the person will become immortal. Every person born on earth will be resurrected because Jesus Christ overcame death (1 Cor. 15:20–22).

Jesus Christ was the first person to be resurrected on this earth (**Acts** 26:23; **Col.** 1:18; **Rev.** 1:5). The New Testament gives ample evidence that Jesus rose with His physical body: His tomb was empty, He ate fish and honey, He had a body of flesh and bones, people touched Him, and the angels said He had risen (**Mark** 16:1–6; **Luke** 24:1–12, 36–43; **John** 20:1–18). Latter-day revelation confirms the reality of the Resurrection of Christ and of all mankind (**Alma** 11:40–45; 40; **3 Ne.** 11:1–17; **D&C** 76; **Moses** 7:62).

All people will not be resurrected to the same glory (1 Cor. 15:39–42; **D&C** 76:89–98), nor will all be resurrected at the same time (1 Cor. 15:22–23; **Alma** 40:8; **D&C** 76:64–65, 85; 88:96–102). Many Saints were resurrected after Christ's Resurrection (**Matt.** 27:52). The

righteous will be resurrected before the wicked and will come forth in the First Resurrection (1 Thes. 4:16); the unrepentant sinners will come forth in the last resurrection (**Rev.** 20:5–13; **D&C** 76:85).

Though this body be destroyed, yet in my flesh shall I see God, **Job** 19:26 (**Moses** 5:10). I will open your graves, and cause you to come up, **Ezek.** 37:12.

Graves were opened, and many bodies arose, **Matt.** 27:52–53 (**3 Ne.** 23:9). The Lord is risen, **Luke** 24:34. A spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have, **Luke** 24:39. I am the resurrection and the life, **John** 11:25. The Twelve Apostles taught that Jesus had risen, **Acts** 1:21–22 (**Acts** 2:32; 3:15; 4:33). In Christ shall all be made alive, **1 Cor.** 15:1–22. The dead in Christ shall rise first, **1 Thes.** 4:16. Blessed and holy is he that hath part in the first resurrection, **Rev.** 20:6.

Christ layeth down his life and taketh it again that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, **2 Ne.** 2:8 (**Mosiah** 13:35; 15:20; **Alma** 33:22; 40:3; **Hel.** 14:15). Without resurrection, we would become subject to Satan, **2 Ne.** 9:6–9. Resurrection will pass upon all men, **2 Ne.** 9:22. Abinadi taught about the first resurrection, **Mosiah** 15:21–26. The wicked remain as though there had been no redemption, except for the loosing of the bands of death, **Alma** 11:41–45. Alma explained the state of souls between death and resurrection, **Alma** 40:6, 11–24.

At the Lord's coming, the dead which died in Christ will come forth, **D&C** 29:13 (**D&C** 45:45–46; 88:97–98; 133:56). Weep especially for those who have not hope of a glorious resurrection, **D&C** 42:45. They that knew no law shall have part in this first resurrection, **D&C** 45:54. They shall rise from the dead and shall not die after, **D&C** 63:49. The resurrection from the dead is the redemption of the soul, **D&C** 88:14–16. Spirit and element, inseparably connected, receive a fulness of joy, **D&C** 93:33.

Reuben

Angels who are resurrected beings have bodies of flesh and bones, **D&C** 129:1. Whatsoever intelligence we attain in this life will rise with us in the resurrection, **D&C** 130:18–19.

Reuben. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, the eldest son of Jacob and Leah (Gen. 29:32; 37:21–22, 29; 42:22, 37). Although Reuben was the firstborn, he lost his birthright because of sin (Gen. 35:22; 49:3–4).

The tribe of Reuben: Jacob's blessing to Reuben is found in Genesis 49:3 and Deuteronomy 33:6. The tribe's numbers gradually diminished, and though the tribe continued to exist, it became politically less important. Reuben's birthright went to Joseph and his sons because Joseph was the first-born son of Jacob's second wife, Rachel (1 Chr. 5:1–2).

Reuel. *See* Jethro

Revelation. *See also* Dream; Holy Ghost; Inspiration, Inspire; Light, Light of Christ; Prophecy, Prophecy; Vision; Voice; Word of God

Communication from God to His children on earth. Revelation may come through the Light of Christ and the Holy Ghost by way of inspiration, visions, dreams, or visits by angels. Revelation provides guidance that can lead the faithful to eternal salvation in the celestial kingdom.

The Lord reveals His work to His prophets and confirms to believers that the revelations to the prophets are true (Amos 3:7). Through revelation, the Lord provides individual guidance for every person who seeks it and who has faith, repents, and is obedient to the gospel of Jesus Christ. "The Holy Ghost is a revelator," said Joseph Smith, and "no man can receive the Holy Ghost without receiving revelations."

In the Lord's Church, the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve

Apostles are prophets, seers, and revelators to the Church and to the world. The President of the Church is the only one whom the Lord has authorized to receive revelation for the Church (**D&C** 28:2–7). Every person may receive personal revelation for his own benefit.

By every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live, **Deut.** 8:3 (Matt. 4:4; **D&C** 98:11). The Lord speaks in a still small voice, **1 Kgs.** 19:12. Where there is no vision, the people perish, **Prov.** 29:18. Surely the Lord God will do nothing, but he revealeth his secret unto his servants the prophets, **Amos** 3:7.

Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-jona: for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my Father, **Matt.** 16:15–19. The Spirit will guide you into all truth and will show you things to come, **John** 16:13. If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, **James** 1:5.

All things shall be revealed, **2 Ne.** 27:11. I will give unto the children of men line upon line, **2 Ne.** 28:30. There is nothing secret that will not be revealed, **2 Ne.** 30:17. The Holy Ghost will show unto you all things, **2 Ne.** 32:5. No man knows God's ways save it be revealed unto him, **Jacob** 4:8. Alma fasted and prayed for revelation, **Alma** 5:46. Things never revealed will be revealed to the faithful, **Alma** 26:22. Those who deny revelation know not the gospel of Jesus Christ and do not understand the scriptures, **Morm.** 9:7–8. Ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith, **Ether** 12:6.

My word shall all be fulfilled, **D&C** 1:38. Did I not speak peace to your mind concerning the matter, **D&C** 6:22–23. I will tell you in your mind and in your heart, **D&C** 8:2–3. If it is right I will cause that your bosom shall burn, **D&C** 9:8. Deny not the spirit of revelation, **D&C** 11:25. Those who ask shall receive revelation upon revelation, **D&C** 42:61. Whatsoever they shall speak when moved upon by the Holy Ghost shall

be the voice of the Lord, **D&C** 68:4. God shall give you knowledge, **D&C** 121:26.

Joseph Smith saw the Father and the Son, **JS—H** 1:17. We believe all that God has revealed and will yet reveal, **A of F** 1:7, 9.

Revelation of John. *See also* Apocalypse; John, Son of Zebedee

The last book in the New Testament, consisting of a revelation given to John the Apostle. He was permitted to see the history of the world, especially the last days (Rev. 1:1–2; 1 Ne. 14:18–27; **D&C** 77). The Revelation of John is also known as the Apocalypse.

John received this revelation on the Lord's day on the isle of Patmos (Rev. 1:9–10), off the coast of Asia, not far from Ephesus. The exact date of the revelation is not known.

Keys to understanding the book are included in 1 Nephi 14:18–27 and Doctrine and Covenants 77 (Ether 4:15–16).

Chapters 1–3 are an introduction to the book and letters to the seven churches in Asia. John wrote the letters to help the Saints resolve certain problems. Chapters 4–5 record visions that John received showing the majesty and righteous power of God and Christ. In chapters 6–9, 11, John recorded seeing a book sealed with seven seals, each seal representing one thousand years of the earth's temporal history. These chapters deal primarily with events contained in the seventh seal (see Rev. 8–9; 11:1–15). Chapter 10 describes a book that John ate. The book represents a future mission that he would perform. Chapter 12 records a vision of the evil that began in heaven when Satan rebelled and was cast out. The war that began there continues to be fought on earth. In chapters 13, 17–19, John described the wicked earthly kingdoms controlled by Satan and recorded their fate, including the final destruction of evil. Chapters 14–16 describe the righteousness of the Saints in the midst of evil just before the Second Coming of Christ. Chapters 20–22

describe the Millennium, the beautiful city of New Jerusalem, and the final events of the earth's history.

Reverence. *See also* Fear; Honor

Deep respect for sacred things; wonder.

The Lord commanded Moses to remove his shoes, for he was standing on holy ground, **Ex.** 3:4–5. God is to be feared and had in reverence, **Ps.** 89:7.

Serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear, **Heb.** 12:28.

Moroni bowed himself to the earth, and prayed mightily, **Alma** 46:13. The multitude fell to the earth and worshipped Christ, **3 Ne.** 11:12–19.

Bow down before me, **D&C** 5:24. All things bow in humble reverence before the throne of God, **D&C** 76:93. Your minds have been darkened because you have treated lightly the things you have received, **D&C** 84:54–57. Every knee shall bow and every tongue shall confess, **D&C** 88:104. Out of respect or reverence to the name of the Supreme Being, the Church called that priesthood after Melchizedek, **D&C** 107:4. Blessings will be poured out upon those who reverence the Lord in his house, **D&C** 109:21.

Riches. *See also* Money; Pride

Wealth or abundance. The Lord counsels the Saints not to seek for worldly riches except to do good. The Saints must not put seeking worldly riches before seeking the kingdom of God, which holds the riches of eternity (**Jacob** 2:18–19).

If riches increase, set not your heart upon them, **Ps.** 62:10. Riches profit not in the day of wrath, **Prov.** 11:4. He that trusteth in his riches shall fall, **Prov.** 11:28. A good name is rather to be chosen than great riches, **Prov.** 22:1.

How hardly shall they that have riches enter into the kingdom of God, **Mark** 10:23 (**Luke** 18:24–25). Love of money is the root of all evil, **1 Tim.** 6:10.

Wo unto the rich who despise the

poor and whose treasure is their god, **2 Ne.** 9:30. The righteous did not set their hearts on riches but shared with all, **Alma** 1:30. The people began to be proud because of riches, **Alma** 4:6–8. People were distinguished by ranks, according to their riches, **3 Ne.** 6:12.

Seek not for riches but for wisdom, **D&C** 6:7 (**Alma** 39:14; **D&C** 11:7). The riches of the earth are God's to give, but beware of pride, **D&C** 38:39.

Riches of eternity: Lay up treasures in heaven, **Matt.** 6:19–21.

How oft have I called upon you by the riches of eternal life, **D&C** 43:25. The riches of eternity are mine to give, **D&C** 67:2 (**D&C** 78:18).

Rigdon, Sidney

An early convert and leader in the restored Church in the 1830s and early 1840s. Sidney Rigdon served for a time as First Counselor to Joseph Smith in the First Presidency of the Church (**D&C** 35; 58:50, 57; 63:55–56; 76:11–12, 19–23; 90:6; 93:44; 100:9–11; 124:126). He later fell away and was excommunicated in September 1844.

Righteous, Righteousness. *See also* Commandments of God; Integrity; Unrighteous, Unrighteousness; Walk, Walk with God; Worthy, Worthiness

Being just, holy, virtuous, upright; acting in obedience to God's commands; avoiding sin.

The Lord will bless the righteous, **Ps.** 5:12. The eyes of the Lord are upon the righteous, **Ps.** 34:15, 17 (1 **Pet.** 3:12). When the righteous are in authority, the people rejoice, **Prov.** 29:2 (**D&C** 98:9–10).

Blessed are they who hunger and thirst after righteousness, **Matt.** 5:6 (3 **Ne.** 12:6). Seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, **Matt.** 6:33. The righteous go into life eternal, **Matt.** 25:46. The fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much, **James** 5:16.

He that is righteous is favored of God,

1 Ne. 17:35. He will preserve the righteous; they need not fear, **1 Ne.** 22:17, 22. Satan will have no power because of the righteousness of the Lord's people, **1 Ne.** 22:26. If there be no righteousness there be no happiness, **2 Ne.** 2:13. The righteous shall inherit the kingdom of God, **2 Ne.** 9:18. The righteous fear not the words of truth, **2 Ne.** 9:40. All men must be changed to a state of righteousness, **Mosiah** 27:25–26. The names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, **Alma** 5:58. Ye have sought happiness in doing iniquity, which is contrary to the nature of righteousness, **Hel.** 13:38.

The song of the righteous is a prayer unto me, **D&C** 25:12. Stand, having on the breastplate of righteousness, **D&C** 27:16 (**Eph.** 6:14). The death of the righteous is sweet unto them, **D&C** 42:46. The righteous shall be gathered out from among all nations, **D&C** 45:71. Men should bring to pass much righteousness of their own free will, **D&C** 58:27. He who does the works of righteousness shall receive peace in this world and eternal life in the world to come, **D&C** 59:23. At the Second Coming, there will be an entire separation of the righteous and the wicked, **D&C** 63:54. The powers of heaven can be controlled only upon the principles of righteousness, **D&C** 121:36. Among the righteous there was peace, **D&C** 138:22.

The people of Zion dwelt in righteousness, **Moses** 7:18. Abraham was a follower of righteousness, **Abr.** 1:2.

Rock. *See also* Gospel; Jesus Christ; Revelation

Figuratively, Jesus Christ and His gospel, which are a strong foundation and support (**D&C** 11:24; 33:12–13). *Rock* can also refer to revelation, by which God makes His gospel known to man (**Matt.** 16:15–18).

He is the rock, his work is perfect, **Deut.** 32:4. The Lord is my rock; in him

will I trust, **2 Sam.** 22:2–3. A stone was cut out without hands, **Dan.** 2:34–35.

It was founded upon a rock, **Matt.** 7:25 (3 Ne. 14:25). Jesus Christ is the stone that was set at nought, **Acts** 4:10–11. That rock was Christ, **1 Cor.** 10:1–4 (Ex. 17:6).

He that is built upon the rock receiveth the truth, **2 Ne.** 28:28. The Jews will reject the stone [Christ] upon which they might build, **Jacob** 4:15–17. It is upon the rock of our Redeemer that we must build our foundation, **Hel.** 5:12. Whoso builds on Christ's doctrines builds upon his rock and will not fall when the floods come, **3 Ne.** 11:39–40 (**Matt.** 7:24–27; 3 Ne. 18:12–13). A wise man built his house upon a rock, **3 Ne.** 14:24.

If ye are built upon my rock, earth and hell cannot prevail, **D&C** 6:34. He that buildeth upon this rock shall never fall, **D&C** 50:44.

I am Messiah, the King of Zion, the Rock of Heaven, **Moses** 7:53.

Roman Empire. *See also* Rome

The empire of ancient Rome. In the apostolic age, the Roman Empire was the one great power of the world. It included everything between the Euphrates, the Danube, the Rhine, the Atlantic, and the Sahara desert. Palestine became a client state in 63 B.C., when Pompey took Jerusalem. Although the Romans granted the Jews many privileges, the Jews hated Roman rule and were constantly in rebellion.

Paul, a Roman citizen, used Greek, the most commonly used language of the empire, to spread the gospel throughout the empire.

Render unto Caesar the things which are Caesar's, **Matt.** 22:17–22. Paul pleaded his rights as a Roman citizen, **Acts** 16:37–39 (**Acts** 22:25–29).

Romans, Epistle to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles

In the New Testament, a letter that Paul wrote to the Saints in Rome. He

was contemplating a visit to Jerusalem, which was certain to be dangerous. If he escaped with his life, he hoped afterwards to visit Rome. The letter was meant in part to prepare the Church there to receive him when he came. It may also be regarded as containing a statement of certain doctrines that had been in dispute and that Paul now regarded as finally established.

Chapter 1 contains Paul's greeting to the Romans. Chapters 2–11 include several declarations on the doctrine of faith, works, and grace. Chapters 12–16 contain practical teachings on love, duty, and holiness.

Rome. *See also* Roman Empire

In the New Testament, the capital city of the Roman Empire, located on the Tiber River in Italy (**Acts** 18:2; 19:21; 23:11). Paul taught the gospel in Rome when he was a prisoner of the Roman government (**Acts** 28:14–31; **Rom.** 1:7, 15–16).

Rumor. *See also* Evil Speaking; Gossip

Satan spreads rumors and contentions—sometimes based partially on truth—to turn people against God and all good (**Hel.** 16:22; **JS—H** 1:1). One of the signs of the Second Coming of Jesus Christ is that people will hear of wars and rumors of wars (**Matt.** 24:6; **D&C** 45:26; **JS—M** 1:23).

Ruth. *See also* Boaz

In the Old Testament, the Moabite daughter-in-law of Naomi and Elimelech, who were Israelites. After the death of her husband, Ruth married Naomi's kinsman Boaz. Their son Obed was the ancestor of David and Christ. The story of Ruth beautifully illustrates the conversion of a non-Israelite into the fold of Israel. Ruth gave up her former god and former life to unite with the household of faith in serving the God of Israel (**Ruth** 1:16).

The book of Ruth: Chapter 1 describes

the life of Elimelech and his family in Moab. After the deaths of their husbands, Naomi and Ruth went to Bethlehem. Chapter 2 explains that Ruth gleaned in the fields of Boaz. Chapter 3 tells how Naomi instructed Ruth to go to the threshing floor and lie at the feet of Boaz. Chapter 4 is the story of Ruth's marriage to Boaz. They had a son, Obed, through whose lineage David and Christ came.

Sabbath Day. *See also* Create, Creation; Rest

A holy day set apart each week for rest and worship. After God created all things, He rested on the seventh day and commanded that one day each week be a day of rest to help people remember Him (Ex. 20:8–11).

Before the Resurrection of Christ, the members of the Church observed the last day of the week as the Sabbath, as did the Jews. After the Resurrection, the members of the Church, whether Jews or Gentiles, observed the first day of the week (the Lord's day) to remember the Lord's Resurrection. The Church today continues to observe one day each week as a holy sabbath day on which to worship God and rest from the labors of the world.

The Sabbath reminds people of their need for spiritual nourishment and of their duty to obey God. When a nation grows careless in observing the Sabbath, all aspects of life are affected and its religious life becomes decayed (Neh. 13:15–18; Jer. 17:21–27).

God rested on the seventh day, **Gen.** 2:1–3. The children of Israel did not gather manna on the sabbath, **Ex.** 16:22–30. Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy, **Ex.** 20:8–11 (Mosiah 13:16–19). The sabbath was given as a sign between God and man, **Ex.** 31:12–17 (Ezek. 20:12, 20). We should not buy or sell on the sabbath, **Neh.** 10:31. Call the sabbath a delight, honoring the Lord

and not finding thine own pleasure, **Isa.** 58:13–14.

The sabbath was made for man and not man for the sabbath, **Mark** 2:23–28. The Son of man is Lord of the sabbath, **Luke** 6:1–10. Jesus taught in a synagogue and healed on the sabbath, **Luke** 13:10–14.

The Nephites kept the sabbath day holy, **Jarom** 1:5. Observe the sabbath day to keep it holy, **Mosiah** 18:23.

Offer up thy sacraments on my holy day, **D&C** 59:9–13. The inhabitants of Zion are to observe the sabbath day, **D&C** 68:29.

I, God, rested on the seventh day from all my work, **Moses** 3:1–3 (Gen. 2:1–3; Abr. 5:1–3).

Sacrament. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Baptism, Baptize; Bread of Life; Cross; Jesus Christ; Last Supper; Living Water; Sacrifice

For Latter-day Saints, *sacrament* refers to the ordinance of partaking of bread and water in remembrance of Christ's atoning sacrifice. The broken bread represents His broken flesh; the water represents the blood that He shed to atone for our sins (1 Cor. 11:23–25; D&C 27:2). When worthy Church members take the sacrament, they promise to take upon them the name of Christ, to always remember Him, and to keep His commandments. Through this ordinance, Church members renew their baptismal covenants.

At the Last Supper, Jesus explained the ordinance of the sacrament as He ate with the Twelve Apostles (Matt. 26:17–28; Luke 22:1–20).

Jesus took bread, and blessed it; and he took the cup, and gave thanks, **Matt.** 26:26–28 (Mark 14:22–24; Luke 22:19–20). Whoso eateth my flesh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life, **John** 6:54. He that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul, **1 Cor.** 11:29 (3 Ne. 18:29).

Jesus taught his twelve Nephite

disciples about the sacrament, **3 Ne.** 18:1–11. Jesus taught these disciples to forbid unworthy people from partaking of the sacrament, **3 Ne.** 18:28–29 (Morm. 9:29). The sacrament prayers are given, **Moro.** 4–5 (**D&C** 20:75–79).

The sacrament is to be administered by a priest or elder, **D&C** 20:46, 76. Teachers and deacons do not have authority to bless the sacrament, **D&C** 20:58. Liquids other than wine may be used for the sacrament, **D&C** 27:1–4.

Sacred. *See* Holiness; Holy

Sacred Grove. *See* First Vision

Sacrifice. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Blood; Broken Heart; Jesus Christ; Sacrament

In ancient days, *sacrifice* meant to make something or someone holy. It has now come to mean to give up or suffer the loss of worldly things for the Lord and His kingdom. Members of the Lord's Church should be willing to sacrifice all things for the Lord. Joseph Smith taught that "a religion that does not require the sacrifice of all things never has the power sufficient to produce the faith necessary unto life and salvation." In the eternal perspective, the blessings obtained by sacrifice are greater than anything that is given up.

After Adam and Eve were cast out of the Garden of Eden, the Lord gave them the law of sacrifice. This law included offering the firstborn of their flocks. This sacrifice symbolized the sacrifice that would be made by the Only Begotten Son of God (Moses 5:4–8). This practice continued until the death of Jesus Christ, which ended animal sacrifice as a gospel ordinance (**Alma** 34:13–14). In the Church today members partake of the sacrament of the bread and the water in remembrance of the sacrifice of Jesus Christ. Members of Christ's Church today are also asked to offer the sacrifice of a broken heart and a contrite spirit (**3 Ne.** 9:19–22). This means that

they are humble, repentant, and willing to obey God's commandments.

Abraham bound Isaac his son and laid him on an altar, **Gen.** 22:1–18 (**Jacob** 4:5). Thou shalt sacrifice thy burnt offerings, **Ex.** 20:24. Animals to be sacrificed must be without blemish, **Deut.** 15:19–21. To obey is better than sacrifice, **1 Sam.** 15:22.

To love is more than all burnt offerings and sacrifices, **Mark** 12:32–33. We are sanctified through the sacrifice of Christ, **Heb.** 10:10–14.

Christ offered himself as a sacrifice for sin, **2 Ne.** 2:6–7. That great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite and eternal, **Alma** 34:8–14. Offer no more burnt offerings; sacrifice unto God a broken heart and a contrite spirit, **3 Ne.** 9:19–20 (**Ps.** 51:16–17; **D&C** 59:8).

Today is a day of sacrifice, **D&C** 64:23 (**D&C** 97:12). All who are willing to observe their covenants by sacrifice are accepted of the Lord, **D&C** 97:8. Joseph F. Smith saw the spirits of the just, who had offered sacrifices in similitude of the Savior's sacrifice, **D&C** 138:13. Redemption came through the sacrifice of the Son of God upon the cross, **D&C** 138:35.

Sadducees. *See also* Jews

A small but politically powerful group among the Jews. They were perhaps best known for their rigid belief in obeying the letter of the Mosaic law and for rejecting the reality of spirits and angels and also the doctrines of Resurrection and eternal life (**Mark** 12:18–27; **Acts** 4:1–3; 23:7–8).

Saint. *See also* Christians; Church of Jesus Christ; Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, The

A faithful member of the Church of Jesus Christ.

Gather my Saints together unto me, **Ps.** 50:5.

Saul did much evil to the Saints at Jerusalem, **Acts** 9:1–21. Peter came

down also to the Saints which dwelt at Lydda, **Acts** 9:32. Grace and peace to all that be in Rome, called to be Saints, **Rom.** 1:7. Ye are fellowcitizens with the Saints, **Eph.** 2:19–21.

I beheld the Church of the Lamb, who were the Saints of God, **1 Ne.** 14:12. The natural man is an enemy to God unless he becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ, **Mosiah** 3:19.

I, the Lord, have blessed the land for the use of my Saints, **D&C** 61:17. Satan maketh war with the Saints of God, **D&C** 76:28–29. Labor diligently to prepare the Saints for the judgment which is to come, **D&C** 88:84–85. Saints should impart of their substance to the poor and afflicted, **D&C** 105:3. The above offices I have given for the work of the ministry and the perfecting of my Saints, **D&C** 124:143 (**Eph.** 4:12).

Salem. *See also* Jerusalem; Melchizedek

The city in the Old Testament where Melchizedek ruled. It may have been located at the site of present-day Jerusalem. The name *Salem* is very similar to a Hebrew word meaning “peace.”

Melchizedek king of Salem brought forth bread and wine, **Gen.** 14:18.

Melchisedec, king of Salem, was a priest of the most high God, **Heb.** 7:1–2.

Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem, **Alma** 13:17–18.

Salt

Used as an important preservative of food in the ancient world; it was considered essential for life.

Lot’s wife became a pillar of salt, **Gen.** 19:26.

Ye are the salt of the earth, **Matt.** 5:13 (**Luke** 14:34; **3 Ne.** 12:13).

The Lord’s covenant people are accounted as the salt of the earth, **D&C** 101:39–40. If the Saints are not the saviors of men, they are as salt that has lost its savor, **D&C** 103:9–10.

Salvation. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Death, Physical; Death, Spiritual; Exaltation; Grace; Jesus Christ; Plan of Redemption; Redeem, Redeemed, Redemption

To be saved from both physical and spiritual death. All people will be saved from physical death by the grace of God, through the death and Resurrection of Jesus Christ. Each individual can also be saved from spiritual death by the grace of God, through faith in Jesus Christ. This faith is manifested in a life of obedience to the laws and ordinances of the gospel and service to Christ.

The Lord is my light and my salvation, **Ps.** 27:1. He only is my rock and my salvation, **Ps.** 62:2.

The gospel is the power of God unto salvation, **Rom.** 1:16 (**D&C** 68:4). Work out your own salvation with fear, **Philip.** 2:12. God hath chosen you to salvation through sanctification, **2 Thes.** 2:13.

Salvation is free, **2 Ne.** 2:4.

There is no gift greater than the gift of salvation, **D&C** 6:13.

Jesus Christ is the only name whereby salvation shall come, **Moses** 6:52 (**Acts** 4:10–12). We believe that through the atonement of Christ, all mankind may be saved, **A of F** 1:3.

Salvation of children: Except ye become as little children, ye shall not enter into the kingdom of heaven, **Matt.** 18:3.

Little children also have eternal life, **Mosiah** 15:25. Infant baptism is an abomination, and little children are alive in Christ because of the Atonement, **Moro.** 8:8–24.

Little children are redeemed through the Only Begotten; Satan cannot tempt them, **D&C** 29:46–47. Children are to be taught the gospel and baptized when eight years old, **D&C** 68:25–28. Little children are sanctified through Jesus Christ, **D&C** 74:7. Men become again, in their infant state, innocent, **D&C** 93:38. All children who die before the age of accountability are saved in the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 137:10.

Children are whole from the foundation of the world, **Moses** 6:54.

Salvation, Plan of. *See* Plan of Redemption

Salvation for the Dead. *See also* Book of Remembrance; Genealogy; Plan of Redemption; Salvation

The opportunity for those who have died without receiving the saving ordinances of the gospel to have these ordinances performed for them in temples by worthy living members of the Church. The dead are taught the gospel in the spirit world and may accept the ordinances performed for them in mortality.

Faithful members of the Church research and prepare family histories to determine the names and birth dates of ancestors so that the saving ordinances may be performed for them.

Say to the prisoners, Go forth, **Isa.** 49:9 (**Isa.** 24:22; 1 **Ne.** 21:9). Proclaim liberty to the captives, **Isa.** 61:1 (**Luke** 4:18). He shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, **Mal.** 4:5–6 (3 **Ne.** 25:5–6; **D&C** 110:13–16).

The dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God, **John** 5:25. Why are they then baptized for the dead, **1 Cor.** 15:29. Christ preached unto the spirits in prison, **1 Pet.** 3:18–20. For this cause was the gospel preached also to them that are dead, **1 Pet.** 4:6.

The Son visited the spirits in prison, **D&C** 76:73. Then cometh the redemption of those who have received their part in that prison, **D&C** 88:99. A baptismal font is not upon the earth that my Saints may be baptized for those who are dead, **D&C** 124:29. All those who have died who would have accepted the gospel will be heirs to the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 137:7–10. The Son of God appeared declaring liberty to the captives who had been faithful, **D&C** 138:18.

As many of the spirits as were in prison came forth, **Moses** 7:57.

Salvation of Children. *See* Child, Children; Salvation—Salvation of children

Sam. *See also* Lehi, Father of Nephi

In the Book of Mormon, the third son of Lehi (1 **Ne.** 2:5). He was a just and holy man who chose to follow the Lord (1 **Ne.** 2:17; 2 **Ne.** 5:5–6; **Alma** 3:6).

Samaria. *See also* Samaritans

In the Old Testament, the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel (1 **Kgs.** 16:23–24). Because of its strong military position on a hill, the Assyrians could not capture it until after a siege of three years (2 **Kgs.** 17:5–6). Herod rebuilt it and called it Sebaste. In New Testament times, Samaria was the name of the entire central district of Palestine west of the Jordan.

Samaritans. *See also* Samaria

The biblical people who lived in Samaria after the northern kingdom of Israel was captured by the Assyrians. The Samaritans were partly Israelite and partly Gentile. Their religion was a mixture of Jewish and pagan beliefs and practices. The parable of the good Samaritan in **Luke** 10:25–37 shows the hatred that the Jews had developed for the Samaritans because the Samaritans had apostatized from the Israelite religion. The Lord directed the Apostles to teach the gospel to the Samaritans (**Acts** 1:6–8). Philip successfully preached the gospel of Christ to the people of Samaria and performed many miracles among them (**Acts** 8:5–39).

Samson

In the Old Testament, the twelfth of the “judges” of Israel. He was known for his great physical strength, but he was not wise in some moral choices and actions (**Judg.** 13:24–16:31).

Samuel, Old Testament Prophet

Son of Elkanah and Hannah, Samuel was born in answer to his mother’s

prayers (1 Sam. 1). As a child he was placed in the care of Eli, high priest at the tabernacle at Shiloh (1 Sam. 2:11; 3:1). The Lord called Samuel at a young age to become a prophet (1 Sam. 3). After Eli's death, Samuel became the great prophet and judge of Israel and restored law, order, and regular religious worship in the land (1 Sam. 4:15–18; 7:3–17).

1 Samuel 28:5–20 contains an account of Samuel being brought back from the dead by the witch of Endor at King Saul's request. This could not have been a vision from God, because a witch or other spiritual medium cannot influence a prophet to appear at his or her request.

The books of 1 and 2 Samuel: In some Bibles, the books of 1 and 2 Samuel are one book. In others they are two books. The books cover a period of about 130 years, from the birth of Samuel until just before the death of King David.

The book of 1 Samuel: Chapters 1–3 describe that the Lord cursed and punished Eli's family and called Samuel as high priest and judge. Chapters 4–6 tell how the ark of the covenant fell into the hands of the Philistines. Chapters 7–8 record Samuel's warnings about having false gods and a wicked king. Chapters 9–15 describe the crowning of Saul and his reign as king. Chapters 16–31 tell the history of David and his gaining of power—Samuel anointed David who had slain Goliath. Saul hated David, but David refused to kill Saul though he had opportunity to do so.

The book of 2 Samuel: The book contains the details of the reign of David as king of Judah and finally of all Israel. Chapters 1–4 show a long struggle between the followers of David, after he was crowned by Judah, and the followers of Saul. Chapters 5–10 show David becoming powerful throughout many lands. Chapters 11–21 show the decline of David's spiritual strength because of his sins and the rebellion within his own family. Chapters 22–24 describe

David's attempts to make reconciliation with the Lord.

Samuel the Lamanite

A Lamanite prophet in the Book of Mormon sent by the Lord to teach and warn the Nephites just before the Savior's birth. Samuel prophesied of signs relating to the birth and death of Jesus Christ and of the destruction of the Nephites (Hel. 13–16).

Sanctification. *See also* Atonement; Jesus Christ; Justification, Justify

The process of becoming free from sin, pure, clean, and holy through the Atonement of Jesus Christ (Moses 6:59–60).

God hath chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit, **2 Thes.** 2:13. We are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus, **Heb.** 10:10. Jesus suffered that he might sanctify the people with his own blood, **Heb.** 13:12.

High priests were sanctified and their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb, **Alma** 13:10–12. Sanctification cometh to those who yield their hearts unto God, **Hel.** 3:33–35. Repent that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost, **3 Ne.** 27:20.

Sanctification through the grace of Jesus Christ is just and true, **D&C** 20:31. Jesus came to sanctify the world, **D&C** 76:41. Sanctify yourselves that your minds become single to God, **D&C** 88:68.

Sanhedrin. *See also* Jews

The Jewish senate and the highest Jewish court in both civil and ecclesiastical matters. The Sanhedrin consisted of seventy-one members drawn from among the chief priests, scribes, and elders. In the scriptures, it is often called the council (Matt. 26:59; Mark 14:55; Acts 5:34).

Sarah. *See also* Abraham

In the Old Testament, the first wife of Abraham. In her old age she became the mother of Isaac (Gen. 18:9–15; 21:2).

Sariah. *See also* Lehi, Father of Nephi

In the Book of Mormon, the wife of Lehi (1 Ne. 5:1–8; 8:14–16; 18:19) and the mother of Laman, Lemuel, Sam, Nephi, Jacob, Joseph, and daughters (1 Ne. 2:5; 2 Ne. 5:6).

Satan. *See* Devil

Saul, King of Israel

In the Old Testament, the first king of Israel before it was divided. Although he was righteous at the beginning of his reign, he eventually became filled with pride and was disobedient to God (1 Sam. 9–31).

Saul of Tarsus. *See* Paul

Savior. *See also* Jesus Christ

One who saves. Jesus Christ, through His Atonement, offered redemption and salvation to all mankind. “Savior” is a name and title of Jesus Christ.

The Lord is my light and my salvation, **Ps.** 27:1 (Ex. 15:1–2; 2 Sam. 22:2–3). I am the Lord; and beside me there is no savior, **Isa.** 43:11 (D&C 76:1).

Call his name Jesus: for he shall save his people from their sins, **Matt.** 1:21. Unto you is born this day a Savior, which is Christ the Lord, **Luke** 2:11. God so loved the world that the Only Begotten Son came to save men, **John** 3:16–17. There is no other name beside Christ’s whereby man may be saved, **Acts** 4:10–12 (2 Ne. 25:20; Mosiah 3:17; 5:8; D&C 18:23; Moses 6:52). From heaven we look for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, **Philip.** 3:20. The Father sent the Son to be the Savior of the world, **1 Jn.** 4:14.

The Lord raised up a Messiah, a Savior of the world, **1 Ne.** 10:4. The Lamb of God is the Savior of the world, **1 Ne.** 13:40. The knowledge of a Savior shall spread throughout every nation,

kindred, tongue, and people, **Mosiah** 3:20. Christ had to die that salvation could come, **Hel.** 14:15–16.

Justification and sanctification through the Savior are just and true, **D&C** 20:30–31. I am Jesus Christ, the Savior of the world, **D&C** 43:34.

Mine Only Begotten is the Savior, **Moses** 1:6. As many as believe in the Son and repent of their sins will be saved, **Moses** 5:15.

Scattering of Israel. *See* Israel—The scattering of Israel

School of the Prophets. *See also* Smith, Joseph, Jr.

In Kirtland, Ohio (United States of America), during the winter of 1832–1833, the Lord commanded Joseph Smith to organize a school for the purpose of training the brethren in all things pertaining to the gospel and the kingdom of God. From this school came many of the early leaders of the Church. Another school of the prophets or the elders was conducted by Parley P. Pratt in Jackson County, Missouri (D&C 97:1–6). Similar schools were held shortly after the Saints migrated to the West; however, these were soon discontinued. Gospel teaching today is done in the home, priesthood quorums, and the various auxiliary organizations, and through Church schools and seminary and institute classes.

Sanctify yourselves and teach one another the doctrines of the kingdom, **D&C** 88:74–80. Seek ye diligently, and teach one another, **D&C** 88:118–122. Order of the school of the prophets was set forth, **D&C** 88:127–141. The First Presidency hold the keys to the school of prophets, **D&C** 90:6–7.

Scribe

The Old and New Testaments use the term in slightly different ways: (1) In the Old Testament, the scribe’s primary responsibility was to copy the scriptures (Jer. 8:8). (2) Scribes are

Scriptures

frequently mentioned in the New Testament and are sometimes called lawyers or doctors of the law. They developed the law in detail and applied it to the circumstances of their time (Matt. 13:52; Mark 2:16–17; 11:17–18; Luke 11:44–53; 20:46–47).

Scriptures. *See also* Bible; Book of Mormon; Canon; Doctrine and Covenants; Pearl of Great Price; Word of God

Words, both written and spoken, by holy men of God when moved upon by the Holy Ghost. The official canonized scriptures of the Church today consist of the Bible, Book of Mormon, Doctrine and Covenants, and Pearl of Great Price. Jesus and the writers of the New Testament regarded the books of the Old Testament as scripture (Matt. 22:29; John 5:39; 2 Tim. 3:15; 2 Pet. 1:20–21). *See also* Chronology in the appendix.

Did not our hearts burn within us, while he opened to us the scriptures, **Luke** 24:32. Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me, **John** 5:39.

The words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do, **2 Ne.** 32:3. As many as are led to believe the holy scriptures are firm and steadfast in the faith, **Hel.** 15:7–8.

Men err in wresting the scriptures and do not understand them, **D&C** 10:63. These words are not of men nor of man, but of me, **D&C** 18:34–36. The coming forth of the Book of Mormon proves to the world that the scriptures are true, **D&C** 20:2, 8–12. Let your time be devoted to the studying of the scriptures, **D&C** 26:1. The scriptures are given for the Saints' instruction, **D&C** 33:16. The scriptures are given to the salvation of the elect, **D&C** 35:20. Teach the principles of my gospel, which are in the Bible and the Book of Mormon, **D&C** 42:12. My laws concerning these things are given in my scriptures, **D&C**

42:28. Whatever is spoken under the influence of the Holy Ghost is scripture, **D&C** 68:4.

Lost scriptures: There are many sacred writings mentioned in the scriptures that we do not have today, among which are these books and writers: the covenant (Ex. 24:7), the wars of the Lord (Num. 21:14), Jasher (Josh. 10:13; 2 Sam. 1:18), the acts of Solomon (1 Kgs. 11:41), Samuel the seer (1 Chr. 29:29), Nathan the prophet (2 Chr. 9:29), Shemaiah the prophet (2 Chr. 12:15), Iddo the prophet (2 Chr. 13:22), Jehu (2 Chr. 20:34), the sayings of the seers (2 Chr. 33:19), Enoch (Jude 1:14), and the words of Zenock, Neum, and Zenos (1 Ne. 19:10), Zenos (Jacob 5:1), Zenock and Ezias (Hel. 8:20), and a book of remembrance (Moses 6:5); and epistles to the Corinthians (1 Cor. 5:9), to the Ephesians (Eph. 3:3), from Laodicea (Col. 4:16), and from Jude (Jude 1:3).

Scriptures to be preserved: We should obtain these records that we may preserve the words spoken by the prophets, **1 Ne.** 3:19–20. I should preserve these plates, **Jacob** 1:3. These things have been kept and preserved by the hand of God, **Mosiah** 1:5. Take care of these sacred things, **Alma** 37:47.

The scriptures shall be preserved in safety, **D&C** 42:56.

Use all endeavors to preserve them, **JS—H** 1:59.

Value of the scriptures: Thou shalt read this law before all Israel, **Deut.** 31:10–13. This book of the law shall not depart out of thy mouth, **Josh.** 1:8. The law of the Lord is perfect, converting the soul, **Ps.** 19:7. Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, **Ps.** 119:105.

The scriptures testify of me, **John** 5:39. All scripture is given by inspiration of God and is profitable for doctrine and instruction, **2 Tim.** 3:15–16.

I did liken all scriptures unto us, that it might be for our profit and learning, **1 Ne.** 19:23. My soul delighteth in the scriptures, **2 Ne.** 4:15–16. We labor

diligently to write, to persuade our children, and also our brethren, to believe in Christ, **2 Ne.** 25:23. They searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man, **Jacob** 7:23 (**Alma** 14:1). If not for these plates, we must have suffered in ignorance, **Mosiah** 1:2–7. They had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God, **Alma** 17:2–3. The scriptures are preserved to bring souls to salvation, **Alma** 37:1–19 (**2 Ne.** 3:15). The word of God shall lead the man of Christ, **Hel.** 3:29.

Whatsoever they speak by the Holy Ghost shall be scripture and the power of God unto salvation, **D&C** 68:4. Print the fulness of my scriptures for the purpose of building up my Church and to prepare my people, **D&C** 104:58–59.

Whoso treasureth up my word shall not be deceived, **JS—M** 1:37.

Scriptures prophesied to come forth: Isaiah foretold the coming forth of the Book of Mormon, **Isa.** 29:11–14. Take thee one stick, and write upon it, for Judah, **Ezek.** 37:15–20.

Other books will come forth, **1 Ne.** 13:39. Ye need not suppose that the Bible contains all my words, **2 Ne.** 29:10–14. Lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before you in the records that shall come forth, **Morm.** 7:8–9. Blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light, **Morm.** 8:16. Write these things and I will show them in my own due time, **Ether** 3:27 (**Ether** 4:7).

We believe that he will yet reveal many things, **A of F** 1:9.

Scriptures, Lost. *See* Scriptures—Lost scriptures

Seal, Sealing. *See also* Elijah; Ordinances; Priesthood

To make valid in heaven the ordinances performed by priesthood authority on earth. Ordinances are sealed when they receive the approval of the Holy Spirit of Promise, which is the Holy Ghost.

Whatsoever thou shalt bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, **Matt.** 16:19 (**Matt.** 18:18; **D&C** 124:93; 132:46). Ye were sealed with that Holy Spirit of Promise, **Eph.** 1:13.

I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth shall be sealed in heaven, **Hel.** 10:7.

To them is power given to seal both on earth and in heaven, **D&C** 1:8. Those in the celestial glory are sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise, **D&C** 76:50–70. Elijah commits the keys of the sealing power into Joseph Smith's hands, **D&C** 110:13–16. This is the sealing and binding power, **D&C** 128:14. The more sure word of prophecy means knowing that one is sealed up unto eternal life, **D&C** 131:5. All covenants not sealed by the Holy Spirit of Promise end when men are dead, **D&C** 132:7. The great work to be done in the temples includes the sealing of children to their parents, **D&C** 138:47–48.

Second Comforter. *See* Comforter

Second Coming of Jesus Christ. *See also* Armageddon; Gog; Jesus Christ; Magog; Signs of the Times

At the beginning of the Millennial Era, Christ will return to the earth. This event will mark the end of the mortal probation of this earth. The wicked will be removed from the earth and the righteous will be caught up in a cloud while the earth is cleansed. While no man knows exactly when Christ will come for the second time, He has given us signs to watch for that indicate the time is drawing near (**Matt.** 24; **JS—M** 1).

I know that my Redeemer shall stand at the latter day upon the earth, **Job** 19:25. Unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue swear, **Isa.** 45:23 (**D&C** 88:104). The Son of Man came with the clouds of heaven, **Dan.** 7:13 (**Matt.** 26:64; **Luke** 21:25–28). They shall look upon me whom they have pierced, **Zech.** 12:10. One shall say, What are these wounds in thine hands, **Zech.** 13:6 (**D&C** 45:51).

Second Estate

Who may abide the day of his coming? for he is like a refiner's fire, **Mal.** 3:2 (3 **Ne.** 24:2; **D&C** 128:24).

The Son of Man shall come in the glory of his Father, **Matt.** 16:27 (**Matt.** 25:31). Of that day and hour knoweth no man, but my Father only, **Matt.** 24:36 (**D&C** 49:7; **JS—M** 1:38–48). This same Jesus shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven, **Acts** 1:11. The Lord himself shall descend from heaven, **1 Thes.** 4:16. The day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night, **2 Pet.** 3:10. The Lord cometh with ten thousands of his Saints, **Jude** 1:14. He cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, **Rev.** 1:7.

Jesus will stand to judge the world, **3 Ne.** 27:14–18.

Prepare ye, prepare ye, for the Lord is nigh, **D&C** 1:12. I will reveal myself from heaven with power, and dwell on earth a thousand years, **D&C** 29:9–12. Lift up your voice and cry repentance, preparing the way of the Lord for his second coming, **D&C** 34:5–12. I am Jesus Christ, and I will suddenly come to my temple, **D&C** 36:8 (**D&C** 133:2). The day soon cometh that ye shall see me, and know that I am, **D&C** 38:8. He that feareth me shall be looking for the signs of the coming of the Son of Man, **D&C** 45:39. The face of the Lord shall be unveiled, **D&C** 88:95. The great and dreadful day of the Lord is near, **D&C** 110:16. When the Savior shall appear we shall see him as he is, **D&C** 130:1. The Savior shall stand in the midst of his people and shall reign, **D&C** 133:25. Who is this that cometh down from God in heaven with dyed garments, **D&C** 133:46 (**Isa.** 63:1).

Second Estate. *See* Mortal, Mortality

Secret Combinations. *See also* Cain; Gadianton Robbers

An organization of people bound together by oaths to carry out the evil purposes of the group.

The father of lies stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations, **2 Ne.** 9:9. I must needs destroy the

secret works of darkness, **2 Ne.** 10:15. Judgments of God did come upon these workers of secret combinations, **Alma** 37:30. Gadianton did prove almost the entire destruction of the people of Nephi, **Hel.** 2:4–13. Satan put it into the hearts of the people to form secret oaths and covenants, **Hel.** 6:21–31. The Lord worketh not in secret combinations, **Ether** 8:19. Nations that uphold secret combinations shall be destroyed, **Ether** 8:22–23. They did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society, **Ether** 11:22.

From the days of Cain, there was a secret combination, **Moses** 5:51.

Seed of Abraham. *See* Abraham—The seed of Abraham

Seer. *See also* Prophet; Urim and Thummim

A person authorized of God to see with spiritual eyes things that God has hidden from the world (**Moses** 6:35–38). He is a revelator and a prophet (**Mosiah** 8:13–16). In the Book of Mormon, Ammon taught that only a seer could use special interpreters, or a Urim and Thummim (**Mosiah** 8:13; 28:16). A seer knows the past, present, and future. Anciently, a prophet was often called a seer (**1 Sam.** 9:9; **2 Sam.** 24:11).

Joseph Smith is the great seer of the latter days (**D&C** 21:1; 135:3). In addition, the First Presidency and the Council of the Twelve are sustained as prophets, seers, and revelators.

This is a rebellious people that say to the seers, See not; and to the prophets, Prophesy not, **Isa.** 30:9–10.

A false seer will I raise up out of the fruit of thy loins, **2 Ne.** 3:6–15.

Here is wisdom; yea, to be a seer, a revelator, a translator, and a prophet, **D&C** 107:92. The Lord appointed Hyrum Smith to be a prophet, seer, and revelator to the Church, **D&C** 124:91–94.

Sensual, Sensuality. *See also*

Adultery; Chastity; Fornication;
Lust; Sexual Immorality

A fondness or desire for unrighteous physical pleasure, especially sexual immorality.

His master's wife cast her eyes upon Joseph, **Gen.** 39:7.

Whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery, **Matt.** 5:28 (3 **Ne.** 12:28). Abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul, **1 Pet.** 2:11. The lust of the flesh and the lust of the eyes are not of the Father, **1 Jn.** 2:16.

Go no more after the lusts of your eyes, **Alma** 39:9.

By transgression of holy laws, man became sensual, **D&C** 20:20. If any commit adultery in their hearts, they shall not have the Spirit, **D&C** 63:16. Cease from all your lustful desires, **D&C** 88:121.

Men began to be carnal, sensual, devilish, **Moses** 5:13 (Mosiah 16:3; Moses 6:49).

Sermon on the Mount. *See also*

Beatitudes; Jesus Christ

A discourse by the Lord Jesus Christ to His disciples who were about to be sent forth on missions (**Matt.** 5–7; **Luke** 6:20–49). The Lord gave the sermon soon after the calling of the Twelve.

The sermon is clarified by the Joseph Smith Translation of the Bible and by a similar sermon recorded in 3 Nephi 12–14 that show that important parts of the sermon have been lost from the account in Matthew.

Serpent, Brazen. *See also* Jesus Christ; Moses

A brass serpent made by Moses at God's command to heal the Israelites who had been bitten by fiery serpents (poisonous snakes) in the wilderness (**Num.** 21:8–9). This brass serpent was attached to a pole and "raised up that whosoever would look upon it might

live" (**Alma** 33:19–22). The Lord referred to the lifting up of the serpent in the wilderness as a symbol of Himself being lifted up on the cross (**John** 3:14–15). Latter-day revelation confirms the account of the fiery serpents and how the people were healed (1 **Ne.** 17:41; 2 **Ne.** 25:20; **Hel.** 8:14–15).

Service. *See also* Love; Welfare

Care given or work done for the benefit of God and others. As we serve others, we also serve God.

Choose you this day whom ye will serve, **Josh.** 24:15.

Inasmuch as ye have done it unto the least of these, ye have done it unto me, **Matt.** 25:35–45. Present your bodies a living sacrifice, which is your reasonable service, **Rom.** 12:1. By love serve one another, **Gal.** 5:13.

Thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God, **2 Ne.** 2:3. When ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God, **Mosiah** 2:17. Those who possess the land of promise must serve God or be swept off, **Ether** 2:8–12.

Those who embark in the service of God should serve with their whole hearts, **D&C** 4:2. The Lord gave commandments that mankind should love and serve him, **D&C** 20:18–19. In the name of Jesus Christ thou shalt serve God, **D&C** 59:5. I, the Lord, delight to honor those who serve me, **D&C** 76:5.

Worship God, for him only shalt thou serve, **Moses** 1:15.

Seth. *See also* Adam

In the Old Testament, a righteous son of Adam and Eve.

Seth was a perfect man, and his likeness was the express likeness of his father, **D&C** 107:42–43 (**Gen.** 5:3). Seth was among the mighty ones in the spirit world, **D&C** 138:40.

God revealed himself unto Seth, **Moses** 6:1–3, 8–14.

Setting Apart

Setting Apart. *See also* Call, Called of God, Calling; Hands, Laying on of

To be selected and consecrated for holy purposes. This appointment is to a specific service within the Church organization by the laying on of hands by someone who has the proper authority. Only those who preside over priesthood quorums receive keys when they are set apart. People set apart to positions other than presidents of priesthood quorums may receive a priesthood blessing, but no keys are given with that blessing.

Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work, **Acts** 13:2–3.

Other bishops to be set apart, **D&C** 68:14. The bishop, a common judge, shall be set apart unto this ministry, **D&C** 107:17, 74.

A man must be called of God by prophecy and by the laying on of hands, **A of F** 1:5.

Seventy. *See also* Apostle; Melchizedek Priesthood

An office to which men are ordained in the Melchizedek Priesthood. Today, the quorums of Seventy include General Authorities and Area Seventies. The Seventy serve in the name of the Lord under the direction of the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles (see **D&C** 107:34). They devote their full time to the ministry.

The Lord appointed other seventy, **Luke** 10:1.

The Seventy are called to preach the gospel and be especial witnesses of Jesus Christ, **D&C** 107:25–26. The Seventy act in the name of the Lord, under the direction of the Twelve, building up the Church and regulating all the affairs of the same in all nations, **D&C** 107:34. Choose other seventy, even seven times seventy, if the labor requires it, **D&C** 107:93–97. The quorum of seventies is instituted for traveling elders to bear record of my name in all the world, **D&C** 124:138–139.

Sexual Immorality. *See also* Adultery; Fornication; Sensual, Sensuality

Willful participation in adultery, fornication, homosexual and lesbian behavior, incest, or any other unholy, unnatural, or impure sexual activity.

Let us make our father drink wine, and we will lie with him, **Gen.** 19:30–36. Reuben went and lay with Bilhah his father's concubine, **Gen.** 35:22 (**Gen.** 49:4; 1 **Chr.** 5:1). Homosexual behavior and other sexual perversions are an abomination, **Lev.** 18:22–23. If a man forces a woman to lie with him, only the man is guilty of sin, **Deut.** 22:25–27.

Whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery with her already in his heart, **Matt.** 5:28 (3 **Ne.** 12:28). Fornication, uncleanness, inordinate affection are idolatry, **Col.** 3:5. In the last days men shall be without natural affection, **2 Tim.** 3:1–3.

Sexual sin is an abomination, **Alma** 39:3–5.

Shadrach. *See also* Daniel

In the Old Testament, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were three Israelite youths who, along with Daniel, were brought into the palace of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon. Shadrach's Hebrew name was Haniah. The four young men refused to defile themselves by partaking of the king's meat and wine (**Dan.** 1). Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were thrown into a fiery furnace by the king but were miraculously preserved (**Dan.** 3).

Shem. *See also* Noah, Bible Patriarch

In the Old Testament, a righteous son of Noah and, according to tradition, the forefather of the Shemite, or Semite, peoples, including the Arabs, Hebrews, Babylonians, Syrians, Phoenicians, and Assyrians (**Gen.** 5:29–32; 6:10; 7:13; 9:26; 10:21–32; **Moses** 8:12). In latter-day revelation Shem is referred to as “the great high priest” (**D&C** 138:41).

Shepherd. *See also* Good Shepherd; Jesus Christ

Symbolically, a person who cares for the Lord's children.

The Lord is my shepherd, **Ps.** 23:1. Shepherds should feed the flock, **Ezek.** 34:2–3.

Sherem. *See also* Antichrist

A man in the Book of Mormon who denied Christ and demanded a sign (Jacob 7:1–20).

Shiblon. *See also* Alma, Son of Alma

In the Book of Mormon, a son of Alma the Younger. Shiblon taught the gospel to the Zoramites and was persecuted for his righteousness. The Lord delivered him from his persecution because of his faithfulness and patience (Alma 38). Shiblon also took care of the Nephite records for a time (Alma 63:1–2, 11–13).

Shiz. *See also* Jaredites

A Jaredite military leader in the Book of Mormon. He died at the end of a great battle that destroyed the entire Jaredite nation (Ether 14:17–15:31).

Sick, Sickness

To have an illness or disease. In the scriptures, physical illness sometimes serves as a symbol for a lack of spiritual well-being (Isa. 1:4–7; 33:24).

I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will heal thee, **2 Kgs.** 20:1–5 (2 Chr. 32:24; Isa. 38:1–5).

Jesus went about healing all manner of sickness and all manner of disease, **Matt.** 4:23–24 (1 Ne. 11:31; Mosiah 3:5–6). They that be whole need not a physician, but they that are sick, **Matt.** 9:10–13 (Mark 2:14–17; Luke 5:27–32). Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders, **James** 5:14–15.

Christ will take upon him the pains and sicknesses of his people, **Alma** 7:10–12. Jesus healed all the sick among the Nephites, **3 Ne.** 26:15.

Nourish the sick with tenderness,

herbs, and mild food, **D&C** 42:43 (Alma 46:40). Remember in all things the sick and the afflicted, **D&C** 52:40. Lay your hands upon the sick, and they shall recover, **D&C** 66:9.

Sign. *See also* Church, Signs of the True; Miracle; Signs of the Times

An event or experience that people understand to be evidence or proof of something. A sign is usually a miraculous manifestation from God. Satan also has power to show signs under certain conditions. Saints should seek for the gifts of the Spirit but should not seek for signs to satisfy curiosity or sustain faith. Rather, the Lord will give signs as He sees fit to those who believe (**D&C** 58:64).

The Lord himself shall give you a sign, **Isa.** 7:14 (2 Ne. 17:14). God worketh signs and wonders in heaven and in earth, **Dan.** 6:27.

An evil and adulterous generation seeketh after a sign, **Matt.** 12:39 (Matt. 16:4; Luke 11:29). These signs shall follow them that believe, **Mark** 16:17 (Morm. 9:24; Ether 4:18; **D&C** 84:65).

Sherem asked for a sign, **Jacob** 7:13–20. Korihor asked for a sign, **Alma** 30:48–60. Show unto us a sign then we shall believe, **Alma** 32:17. The more part of the people did believe the signs and wonders, **3 Ne.** 1:22. People forgot the signs and wonders, **3 Ne.** 2:1. Ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith, **Ether** 12:6.

Require not miracles, except I shall command, **D&C** 24:13. Faith cometh not by signs, but signs follow those that believe, **D&C** 63:7–11.

In those days there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders, **JS—M** 1:22.

Signs of the Birth and Death of Jesus Christ. *See also* Jesus Christ

Events that accompanied the birth and death of Jesus Christ.

Birth: A virgin shall conceive and bear a son, **Isa.** 7:14. Out of Bethlehem shall come forth a ruler in Israel, **Micah** 5:2.

Samuel the Lamanite prophesied a day, a night, and a day of light; a new star; and other signs, **Hel.** 14:2–6. The signs were fulfilled, **3 Ne.** 1:15–21.

Death: Samuel the Lamanite prophesied darkness, thunderings and lightnings, and shaking of the earth, **Hel.** 14:20–27. The signs were fulfilled, **3 Ne.** 8:5–23.

Signs of the Times. *See also* Last Days, Latter Days; Second Coming of Jesus Christ; Sign

Events or experiences that God gives to people to show that something important in His work has happened or will soon happen. In the latter days, many signs for the Second Coming of the Savior have been prophesied. These signals allow faithful people to recognize God's plan, be warned, and prepare.

The mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, **Isa.** 2:2–3. The Lord shall lift an ensign and gather Israel, **Isa.** 5:26 (2 **Ne.** 15:26–30). The sun shall be darkened and the moon shall not cause her light to shine, **Isa.** 13:10 (**Joel** 3:15; **D&C** 29:14). Men shall transgress the law and break the everlasting covenant, **Isa.** 24:5. The Nephites shall speak as a voice from the dust, **Isa.** 29:4 (2 **Ne.** 27). Israel shall be gathered with power, **Isa.** 49:22–23 (1 **Ne.** 21:22–23; 3 **Ne.** 20–21). God shall set up a kingdom which shall not be destroyed, **Dan.** 2:44 (**D&C** 65:2). War, dreams, and visions shall precede the Second Coming, **Joel** 2. All nations will gather against Jerusalem to battle, **Zech.** 14:2 (**Ezek.** 38–39). The day cometh that shall burn as an oven, **Mal.** 4:1 (3 **Ne.** 25:1; **D&C** 133:64; **JS—H** 1:37).

Great calamities shall precede the Second Coming, **Matt.** 24 (**JS—M** 1).

Paul described apostasy and perilous times of the last days, **2 Tim.** 3–4. Two prophets will be slain and resurrected in Jerusalem, **Rev.** 11 (**D&C** 77:15). The gospel shall be restored in the last days by angelic ministry, **Rev.** 14:6–7 (**D&C** 13; 27; 110:11–16; 128:8–24). Babylon will be established and fall, **Rev.** 17–18.

Israel shall be gathered with power, **1 Ne.** 21:13–26 (**Isa.** 49:13–26; 3 **Ne.** 20–21). This is a sign, that ye may know the time, **3 Ne.** 21:1. The Book of Mormon shall come forth by the power of God, **Morm.** 8.

Lamanites to blossom, **D&C** 49:24–25. The wicked to slay the wicked, **D&C** 63:32–35 (**Rev.** 9). War will be poured out upon all nations, **D&C** 87:2. Signs, upheavals of the elements, and angels prepare the way for the coming of the Lord, **D&C** 88:86–94. Darkness to cover the earth, **D&C** 112:23–24. The Lord commanded the Saints to prepare for the Second Coming, **D&C** 133.

Signs of the True Church. *See* Church, Signs of the True

Simeon. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob and his wife Leah (**Gen.** 29:33; 35:23; **Ex.** 1:2). He joined Levi in the massacre of the Shechemites (**Gen.** 34:25–31). Jacob's prophecy concerning Simeon is found in **Genesis** 49:5–7.

The tribe of Simeon: The descendants of Simeon often dwelt with the tribe of Judah and within the borders of the kingdom of Judah (**Josh.** 19:1–9; 1 **Chr.** 4:24–33). The tribe of Simeon joined Judah in battle against the Canaanites (**Judg.** 1:3, 17). They also later joined David's armies (1 **Chr.** 12:25).

Simon Peter. *See* Peter

Simon the Canaanite

In the New Testament, one of the original Twelve Apostles of Jesus Christ (**Matt.** 10:2–4).

Sin. *See also* Abominable, Abomination; Filth, Filthiness; Offend; Rebellion; Ungodly; Unrighteous, Unrighteousness; Wicked, Wickedness

Willful disobedience to God's commandments.

He that covereth his sins shall not prosper, **Prov.** 28:13. Though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow, **Isa.** 1:18. Sinners shall die, and the righteous shall be saved, **Ezek.** 18.

The Lamb of God taketh away the sins of the world, **John** 1:29. Be baptized, and wash away thy sins, **Acts** 22:16. The wages of sin is death, **Rom.** 6:23. To him that knoweth to do good, and doeth it not, to him it is sin, **James** 4:17.

Wilt thou make me that I may shake at the appearance of sin, **2 Ne.** 4:31. Wo unto all those who die in their sins, **2 Ne.** 9:38. They could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence, **Alma** 13:12. Do not suppose ye will be restored from sin to happiness, **Alma** 41:9–10. The Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance, **Alma** 45:16 (**D&C** 1:31). Little children are not capable of committing sin, **Moro.** 8:8.

To repent, men must confess and forsake their sins, **D&C** 58:42–43. The greater sin remains in him who forgives not, **D&C** 64:9. He who sins against the greater light shall receive the greater condemnation, **D&C** 82:3. Unto that soul who sinneth shall the former sins return, **D&C** 82:7. When we undertake to cover our sins, the heavens withdraw themselves, **D&C** 121:37.

Sinai, Mount. *See also* Law of Moses; Moses

A mountain on the Sinai Peninsula near which Moses and the Israelites camped three months after their exodus from Egypt; it is also called Mount Horeb (**Ex.** 3:1). Here God gave His law to Moses for the house of Israel; here

also the tabernacle was built (**Ex.** 19:2; 20:18; 24:12; 32:15).

Sing. *See also* Hymn; Music

To worship and praise God in song and musical verse.

Sing unto the Lord, **1 Chr.** 16:23–36 (**Ps.** 96). Sing unto the Lord, and give thanks, **Ps.** 30:4. Make a joyful noise unto the Lord, **Ps.** 100:1.

When they had sung an hymn, they went out into the mount of Olives, **Matt.** 26:30.

The Holy Ghost led them to sing, **Moro.** 6:9.

The song of the righteous is a prayer unto me, **D&C** 25:12. If thou art merry, praise the Lord with singing, **D&C** 136:28.

Sister. *See also* Brethren, Brother; Man, Men; Woman, Women

As children of our Heavenly Father, all men and women are spiritually brothers and sisters. In the Church, female members and friends of the Church are often addressed as sisters.

Those who do the will of my Father, the same is my brother and sister, **Matt.** 12:50 (**Mark** 3:35).

Laws governing confession of sins between brothers and sisters in the Church are set forth, **D&C** 42:88–93.

Sleep

A state of rest in which a person is inactive and unconscious. The Lord has counseled His Saints to not sleep longer than is needful (**D&C** 88:124). Sleep can also be a symbol for spiritual death (**1 Cor.** 11:30; **2 Ne.** 1:13) or for physical death (**Morm.** 9:13).

Smith, Emma Hale. *See also* Smith, Joseph, Jr.

Wife of the Prophet Joseph Smith. The Lord commanded Emma to make a selection of hymns for the Church. She also served as the first president of the Relief Society.

Revelation was given concerning the will of the Lord to Emma Smith, **D&C 25**. The Lord counseled Emma Smith regarding marriage, **D&C 132:51–56**.

Smith, Hyrum. *See also* Smith, Joseph, Jr.

An older brother and faithful associate of Joseph Smith. Hyrum was born February 9, 1800. He served as an assistant to Joseph in the Church presidency, as well as being the second Patriarch to the Church. On June 27, 1844, he became a fellow martyr with Joseph in Carthage Jail.

God revealed instructions to Hyrum through his brother Joseph, **D&C 11:23–3**. Blessed is my servant Hyrum Smith because of the integrity of his heart, **D&C 124:15**. Hyrum was commanded to take the office of Church patriarch, **D&C 124:91–96**, 124. Joseph and Hyrum were martyred in Carthage Jail, **D&C 135**. Hyrum and other choice spirits were reserved to come forth in the fullness of times, **D&C 138:53**.

Smith, Joseph, Jr. *See also* Book of Mormon; Doctrine and Covenants; First Vision; Joseph Smith Translation (JST); Pearl of Great Price; Restoration of the Gospel

The prophet chosen to restore the true Church of Jesus Christ to the earth. Joseph Smith was born in the state of Vermont in the United States of America and lived from 1805 to 1844.

In 1820, God the Father and Jesus Christ appeared to Joseph, and he learned that none of the churches on the earth was true (JS—H 1:1–20). He was later visited by the angel Moroni, who revealed the hiding place of gold plates that contained the record of ancient peoples on the American continent (JS—H 1:29–54).

Joseph translated the gold plates and in 1830 published them as the Book of Mormon (JS—H 1:66–67, 75). In 1829, he received priesthood authority from John the Baptist and from Peter,

James, and John (**D&C 13; 27:12; 128:20; JS—H 1:68–70**).

As directed by God, on April 6, 1830, Joseph and several others organized the restored Church of Jesus Christ (**D&C 20:1–4**). Under Joseph's leadership, the Church grew in Canada, England, and the eastern portion of the United States, especially in Ohio, Missouri, and Illinois. Serious persecution followed Joseph and the Saints wherever they settled. On June 27, 1844, Joseph and his brother Hyrum were martyred in Carthage, Illinois, in the United States of America.

Joseph, son of Jacob, prophesied of Joseph Smith, **2 Ne. 3:6–15**.

Because of His knowledge of coming calamity, the Lord called his servant Joseph Smith, **D&C 1:17** (**D&C 19:13**). Joseph Smith was ordained an Apostle of Jesus Christ and first elder of this Church, **D&C 20:2**. Joseph was ordained to the apostleship by Peter, James, and John, **D&C 27:12**. Joseph and Sidney Rigdon testified that they saw the Only Begotten of the Father, **D&C 76:23**. With Oliver Cowdery, Joseph Smith saw the Lord in vision, **D&C 110:1–4**. The Lord called Joseph as presiding elder, translator, revelator, seer, and prophet, **D&C 124:125**. Joseph Smith has done more for the salvation of men than any other man, save Jesus only, **D&C 135:3**.

Scripture brought forth by the Prophet Joseph Smith: Joseph translated portions of the gold plates that were given him by the angel Moroni, which translation was published in 1830 as the Book of Mormon. He also received many revelations from the Lord outlining the basic doctrines and organization of the Church. Many of these revelations were compiled in what is now known as the Doctrine and Covenants. He was also responsible for bringing forth the Pearl of Great Price, containing inspired translations of some of the writings of Moses,

Abraham, and Matthew, excerpts from his personal history and testimony, and thirteen statements of doctrine and belief held by the Church.

Smith, Joseph, Sr. *See also* Smith, Joseph, Jr.; Smith, Lucy Mack

Father of the Prophet Joseph Smith. He was born July 12, 1771. He married Lucy Mack, and they had nine children (JS—H 1:4). Joseph became a faithful believer in the latter-day Restoration and the first Patriarch to the Church. He died September 14, 1840.

God revealed instructions to him through his son Joseph, **D&C** 4; 23:5. Let mine aged servant continue with his family, **D&C** 90:20. My aged servant Joseph sitteth with Abraham at his right hand, **D&C** 124:19. Joseph Smith Jr. saw his father in a vision of the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 137:5.

An angel commanded Joseph Smith Jr. to tell his father of the vision he had received, **JS—H** 1:49–50.

Smith, Joseph F.

The sixth President of the Church; the only son of Hyrum and Mary Fielding Smith. He was born November 13, 1838, and died November 19, 1918.

Joseph F. Smith received a vision of the redemption of the dead, **D&C** 138.

Smith, Lucy Mack. *See also* Smith, Joseph, Jr.; Smith, Joseph, Sr.

The mother of the Prophet Joseph Smith and wife of Joseph Smith Sr. (JS—H 1:4, 7, 20). She was born July 8, 1776, and died May 5, 1856.

Joseph saw his mother in a vision of the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 137:5.

Smith, Samuel H. *See also* Smith, Joseph, Jr.

A younger brother of the Prophet Joseph Smith (JS—H 1:4). Samuel was born in 1808 and died in 1844. He was one of the Eight Witnesses of the Book of Mormon and served as one of the first

missionaries for the restored Church (**D&C** 23:4; 52:30; 61:33–35; 66:7–8; 75:13).

Sodom. *See also* Gomorrah

In the Old Testament, a wicked city that was destroyed by the Lord (**Gen.** 19:12–29).

Solomon. *See also* Bathsheba; David

In the Old Testament, a son of David and Bathsheba (2 Sam. 12:24). Solomon was for a time king of Israel.

David named Solomon as king, **1 Kgs.** 1:11–53. David charged Solomon to walk in the ways of the Lord, **1 Kgs.** 2:1–9. The Lord promised him an understanding heart, **1 Kgs.** 3:5–15. Judged between two mothers and ascertained the child's real mother, **1 Kgs.** 3:16–28. Spake proverbs and songs, **1 Kgs.** 4:32. Built the temple, **1 Kgs.** 6; 7:13–51. Dedicated the temple, **1 Kgs.** 8. Visited by the queen of Sheba, **1 Kgs.** 10:1–13. Solomon married outside Israel, and his wives turned his heart to the worship of false gods, **1 Kgs.** 11:1–8. The Lord was angry with Solomon, **1 Kgs.** 11:9–13. Died, **1 Kgs.** 11:43. David prophesied of the glory of Solomon's reign, **Ps.** 72.

Solomon received many wives and concubines, but some were not received of the Lord, **D&C** 132:38 (Jacob 2:24).

Song of Solomon

A book in the Old Testament. The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that the Song of Solomon is not an inspired writing.

Son of God. *See* God, Godhead; Jesus Christ

Son of Man. *See also* God, Godhead; Jesus Christ

A title that Jesus Christ used when speaking of Himself (Luke 9:22; 21:36). It meant the Son of the Man of Holiness. Man of Holiness is one of the names of God the Father. When Jesus called Himself the Son of Man, it was an open declaration of His divine relationship with

the Father. This title is found frequently in the Gospels. Latter-day revelation confirms the special meaning and sacredness of this name of the Savior (D&C 45:39; 49:6, 22; 58:65; Moses 6:57).

Sons and Daughters of God. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Begotten; Born Again, Born of God; Children of Christ; Man, Men

The scriptures use these terms in two ways. In one sense, we are all literal spirit children of our Heavenly Father. In another sense, God's sons and daughters are those who have been born again through the Atonement of Christ.

Spirit children of the Father: Ye are gods, children of the most High, **Ps.** 82:6.

We are the offspring of God, **Acts** 17:29. Be in subjection unto the Father of spirits, **Heb.** 12:9.

I am a son of God, **Moses** 1:13.

Children born again through the Atonement: As many as received him gave he power to become the sons of God, **John** 1:12 (Rom. 8:14; 3 Ne. 9:17; D&C 11:30). Now are we the sons of God, **1 Jn.** 3:1–2.

You shall be called the children of Christ, his sons and his daughters, **Mosiah** 5:7. All people must be born again, becoming his sons and daughters, **Mosiah** 27:25. They shall become my sons and my daughters, **Ether** 3:14. Ye certainly will become a child of Christ, **Moro.** 7:19.

All those who receive my gospel are sons and daughters, **D&C** 25:1. They are gods, even the sons of God, **D&C** 76:58.

Thus may all become my sons, **Moses** 6:68. Many have believed and become the sons of God, **Moses** 7:1.

Sons of Helaman. *See* Helaman, Sons of

Sons of Mosiah. *See* Mosiah, Sons of

Sons of Perdition. *See also*

Damnation; Death, Spiritual; Devil; Hell; Unpardonable Sin

The followers of Satan who will suffer with him in eternity. Sons of

perdition include (1) those who followed Satan and were cast out of heaven for rebellion during premortality and (2) those who were permitted to be born to this world with physical bodies but then served Satan and turned utterly against God. Those in this second group will be resurrected from the dead but will not be redeemed from the second (spiritual) death and cannot dwell in a kingdom of glory (D&C 88:32, 35).

None of them is lost but the son of perdition, **John** 17:12. It is impossible to renew them again unto repentance, **Heb.** 6:4–6 (Heb. 10:26–29).

Mercy hath no claim on that man and his final doom is never-ending torment, **Mosiah** 2:36–39. He is as though there was no redemption made, **Mosiah** 16:5. Those who deny Christ's miracles to get gain shall become like the son of perdition, **3 Ne.** 29:7.

They will receive no forgiveness in this world or the next, **D&C** 76:30–34 (D&C 84:41; 132:27). They are the only ones who will not be redeemed from the second death, **D&C** 76:34–48. Sons of perdition deny the Holy Spirit after receiving it, **D&C** 76:35. Sons of perdition deny the Son after the Father has revealed him, **D&C** 76:43.

Cain shall be called Perdition, **Moses** 5:22–26.

Soul. *See also* Body; Spirit

The scriptures speak of souls in three ways: (1) spirit beings, both premortal and postmortal (Alma 40:11–14; Abr. 3:23); (2) a spirit and a body united in mortality (D&C 88:15; Abr. 5:7); and (3) an immortal, resurrected person whose spirit and body have become inseparably connected (2 Ne. 9:13; D&C 88:15–16).

The blood maketh an atonement for the soul, **Lev.** 17:11. He restoreth my soul, **Ps.** 23:1–3.

Thou shalt love the Lord thy

God with all thy soul, **Matt.** 22:37 (Mark 12:30).

The devil cheateth their souls, **2 Ne.** 28:21. Offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, **Omni** 1:26. The word beginneth to enlarge my soul, **Alma** 32:28. His soul shall never hunger nor thirst, **3 Ne.** 20:8. The bread and water of the sacrament are sanctified to the souls of those who partake of it, **Moro.** 4–5 (D&C 20:77–79).

Laborers in the kingdom bring salvation to their souls through their service, **D&C** 4:2, 4. The worth of souls is great, **D&C** 18:10.

Ye were born into the world by water, blood, and spirit, and so became a living soul, **Moses** 6:59.

Worth of souls: All persons are spirit children of God. He cares about each of His children and considers each one important. Because they are His children, they have the potential to become like Him. Therefore, they are of great worth.

There is joy over one sinner that repenteth, **Luke** 15:10. God so loved the world that he gave his Only Begotten Son, **John** 3:16.

They could not bear that any human soul should perish, **Mosiah** 28:3. Is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul at the time of his coming, **Alma** 39:17.

The thing of most worth unto you is to bring souls unto me, **D&C** 15:6. Remember the worth of souls is great in the sight of God, **D&C** 18:10–15.

This is my work and my glory—to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man, **Moses** 1:39.

Spirit. See also Death, Physical; Man, Men; Resurrection; Soul

That part of a living being that exists before mortal birth, dwells in the physical body during mortality, and exists after death as a separate being until the Resurrection. All living things—man-kind, animals, and plants—were spirits

before any form of life existed upon the earth (Gen. 2:4–5; Moses 3:4–7). The spirit body looks like the physical body (1 Ne. 11:11; Ether 3:15–16; D&C 77:2; 129). Spirit is matter, but it is more fine or pure than mortal element or matter (D&C 131:7).

Every person is literally a son or a daughter of God, having been born as a spirit to Heavenly Parents before being born to mortal parents on the earth (Heb. 12:9). Each person on earth has an immortal spirit body in addition to a body of flesh and bone. As sometimes defined in scripture, the spirit and the physical body together constitute the soul (Gen. 2:7; D&C 88:15; Moses 3:7, 9, 19; Abr. 5:7). A spirit can live without a physical body, but the physical body cannot live without the spirit (James 2:26). Physical death is the separation of the spirit from the body. In the Resurrection, the spirit is reunited with the same physical body of flesh and bone it possessed as a mortal, with two major differences: they will never be separated again, and the physical body will be immortal and perfected (Alma 11:45; D&C 138:16–17).

A spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have, **Luke** 24:39. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God, **Rom.** 8:16. Glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, **1 Cor.** 6:20.

This body is the body of my spirit, **Ether** 3:16.

Man is spirit, **D&C** 93:33. Christ ministered to the righteous spirits in paradise, **D&C** 138:28–30 (1 Pet. 3:18–19).

Ye were born into the world by water, and blood, and the spirit, **Moses** 6:59. He stood among those that were spirits, **Abr.** 3:23.

Evil spirits: Jesus cast out many devils, **Mark** 1:27, 34, 39. Come out of the man, thou unclean spirit, **Mark** 5:2–13.

The evil spirit teacheth a man that he must not pray, **2 Ne.** 32:8. In the name of

Spirit, Holy

Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits, **3 Ne.** 7:19.

Many false spirits have gone forth deceiving the world, **D&C** 50:2, 31–32. Joseph Smith explained three keys for determining whether a spirit is of God or the devil, **D&C** 129.

Spirit, Holy. *See* Holy Ghost

Spirit Creation. *See* also Create, Creation; Man, Men

The Lord created all things spiritually before He created them physically (Moses 3:5).

The Lord made every plant before it was in the earth, **Gen.** 2:4–6 (Abr. 5:5).

By the power of my Spirit created I all things—first spiritual, secondly temporal, **D&C** 29:31–32. That which is temporal is in the likeness of that which is spiritual, **D&C** 77:2.

I made the world and men before they were in the flesh, **Moses** 6:51.

Spirit Prison. *See* Hell

Spirit World. *See* Hell; Paradise; Premortal Life

Spiritual Death. *See* Death, Spiritual

Spiritual Gifts. *See* Gifts of the Spirit

Stake

One of the organizational and administrative units of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. A stake is composed of a number of wards or branches. It generally has a set of geographical boundaries and conforms to the tent image described in Isaiah 54:2: “Lengthen thy cords, and strengthen thy stakes.” Each stake of Zion supports and helps to hold up the Church the way a tent or tabernacle is held up by its stakes. A stake is the gathering place for the remnants of scattered Israel (**D&C** 82:13–14; 101:17–21).

Strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders, **Moro.** 10:31 (**D&C** 82:14).

Appoint unto Zion other stakes

besides this one, **D&C** 109:59. The gathering together upon Zion, and upon her stakes, may be for a defense, **D&C** 115:6 (**D&C** 101:21). Other places should be appointed for stakes, **D&C** 115:18. High priests quorum president instituted to qualify those who shall be appointed stake presidents, **D&C** 124:133–134. Go ye forth unto the land of Zion, that her stakes may be strengthened, **D&C** 133:9.

Standard Works. *See* Canon

Steal, Stealing

To take something from another dishonestly or unlawfully. The Lord has always commanded His children to not steal (Ex. 20:15; Matt. 19:18; 2 Ne. 26:32; Mosiah 13:22; **D&C** 59:6).

Lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where thieves do not break through nor steal, **Matt.** 6:19–21.

The Nephites’ defeats came because of pride, riches, plundering, stealing, **Hel.** 4:12.

He that stealeth and will not repent shall be cast out, **D&C** 42:20. Those who steal shall be delivered up unto the law of the land, **D&C** 42:84–85.

Stephen

Stephen was a martyr for the Savior and His Church in New Testament times. His preaching foreshadowed and possibly influenced the great work of Paul, who was present when Stephen defended himself before the Sanhedrin (Acts 8:1; 22:20).

Stephen was one of seven men appointed to assist the Twelve Apostles, **Acts** 6:1–8. Stephen did great wonders and miracles, **Acts** 6:8. Stephen engaged in disputations with the Jews, **Acts** 6:9–10. Charges were brought against him and he was tried before the Sanhedrin, **Acts** 6:11–15. Stephen presented his defense, **Acts** 7:2–53. Being full of the Holy Ghost, he saw the Father and Son in vision, **Acts** 7:55–56.

Stephen was martyred for his testimony, **Acts** 7:54–60.

Steward, Stewardship. *See also* Call, Called of God, Calling

A person who takes care of the affairs or property of another. That which a steward cares for is called a stewardship. All things on earth belong to the Lord; we are His stewards. We are accountable to the Lord, but we may report on our stewardship to God's authorized representatives. When we receive a calling of service from the Lord or His authorized servants, that stewardship may include both spiritual and temporal affairs (**D&C** 29:34).

Thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things, **Matt.** 25:14–23. Unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required, **Luke** 12:48 (**D&C** 82:3). Jesus gave the parable of the unjust steward, **Luke** 16:1–8.

Whoso is found a faithful steward shall enter into the joy of his Lord, **D&C** 51:19. Every man is to give an account of his stewardship, **D&C** 72:3–5. He that is a faithful and wise steward shall inherit all things, **D&C** 78:22. The Lord will make every man accountable as a steward over earthly blessings, **D&C** 104:11–17 (**D&C** 42:32). Be diligent that thou mayest be a wise steward, **D&C** 136:27.

Stick of Ephraim. *See* Ephraim—The stick of Ephraim or Joseph

Stick of Joseph. *See* Ephraim—The stick of Ephraim or Joseph

Stick of Judah. *See* Judah—The stick of Judah

Storehouse. *See also* Welfare

A place where a bishop receives, holds in trust, and dispenses to the poor consecrated offerings of Latter-day Saints. Each storehouse may be as large or as small as circumstances require. Faithful Saints donate talents,

skills, materials, and financial means to the bishop to take care of the poor in time of need. Therefore, a storehouse may include a list of available services, money, food, or other commodities. The bishop is the agent of the storehouse and distributes goods and services according to need and as directed by the Spirit of the Lord (**D&C** 42:29–36; 82:14–19).

Let them gather food for store against the seven years of famine, **Gen.** 41:34–36, 46–57. Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, **Mal.** 3:10 (3 Ne. 24:10).

Let the bishop appoint a storehouse unto this Church, **D&C** 51:13. Excess goods shall be given into my storehouse, **D&C** 70:7–8. The Saints should organize and establish a storehouse, **D&C** 78:1–4. Children have claim upon the Lord's storehouse if their parents have not, **D&C** 83:5.

Sunday. *See* Sabbath Day

Sustaining Church Leaders. *See also* Common Consent

To pledge support to those serving in general and local Church leadership positions.

Set Joshua before all the congregation, and give him a charge in their sight, **Num.** 27:18–19. All the people shouted, and said, God save the king, **1 Sam.** 10:24. Believe his prophets, so shall ye prosper, **2 Chr.** 20:20.

Obey them that have the rule over you, **Heb.** 13:17.

Thou shalt be favored of the Lord, because thou hast not murmured, **1 Ne.** 3:6. They who received the prophets were spared, **3 Ne.** 10:12–13. Give heed unto the words of these twelve, **3 Ne.** 12:1.

By mine own voice or by the voice of my servants, it is the same, **D&C** 1:38. His word ye shall receive, as if from mine own mouth, **D&C** 21:5. He that receiveth my servants, receiveth me, **D&C** 84:35–38. Whoso receiveth me, receiveth those whom I have sent,

Swear

D&C 112:20. If my people will not hearken to the voice of these men whom I have appointed, they shall not be blest, D&C 124:45–46.

Swear. *See* Blaspheme, Blasphemy; Oath; Profanity

Symbolism

To use something as a likeness or image of another thing. Symbolism in the scriptures uses a familiar object, event, or circumstance to represent a principle or teaching of the gospel. For example, the Book of Mormon prophet Alma used a seed to represent the word of God (Alma 32).

Prophets throughout the scriptures used symbolism to teach about Jesus Christ. Some of these symbols include ceremonies and ordinances (Moses 6:63), sacrifices (Heb. 9:11–15; Moses 5:7–8), the sacrament (JST, Mark 14:20–24 [Appendix]; Luke 22:13–20), and baptism (Rom. 6:1–6; D&C 128:12–13). Many biblical names are symbolic. The Old Testament tabernacle ceremony and the law of Moses represented eternal truths (Heb. 8–10; Mosiah 13:29–32; Alma 25:15; Hel. 8:14–15). For other examples, see Matthew 5:13–16; John 3:14–15; Jacob 4:5; Alma 37:38–45.

Synagogue. *See also* Jews

A meetingplace used for religious purposes. In New Testament times, the furniture generally was simple, consisting of an ark containing the rolls of the law and other sacred writings, a reading desk, and seats for the worshippers.

A local council of elders managed each synagogue. They decided who should be admitted and who should be excluded (John 9:22; 12:42). The most important official was the ruler of the synagogue (Mark 5:22; Luke 13:14). He generally was a scribe, had care of the building, and supervised the services. An attendant performed clerical duties (Luke 4:20).

There was a synagogue in every town

where Jews were living, both in Palestine and elsewhere. This was a great help in spreading the gospel of Jesus Christ because early missionaries of the Church usually could speak in the synagogues (Acts 13:5, 14; 14:1; 17:1, 10; 18:4). This same practice existed among missionaries in the Book of Mormon (Alma 16:13; 21:4–5; 32:1) as well as among early missionaries in this dispensation (D&C 66:7; 68:1).

Tabernacle. *See also* Ark of the Covenant; Holy of Holies; Temple, House of the Lord

A house of the Lord, the center of Israel's worship during the Exodus from Egypt. The tabernacle was actually a portable temple and could be taken apart and reassembled. The children of Israel used a tabernacle until they built the temple of Solomon (D&C 124:38).

God revealed the pattern of the tabernacle to Moses (Ex. 26–27), and the children of Israel built it according to that pattern (Ex. 35–40). When the tabernacle was complete, a cloud covered the tent, and the glory of the Lord filled the tabernacle (Ex. 40:33–34). The cloud was a sign of God's presence. At night, it had the appearance of a fire. When the cloud stayed over the tent, the children of Israel camped. When it moved, they moved with it (Ex. 40:36–38; Num. 9:17–18). The children of Israel carried the tabernacle with them during their wanderings in the desert and in their conquest of the land of Canaan. After that conquest, the tabernacle was located in Shiloh, the place that the Lord had chosen (Josh. 18:1). After the children of Israel built the temple of Solomon, the tabernacle entirely disappeared from history.

The Lord and Isaiah used the tabernacle as a symbol of the cities of Zion and Jerusalem at the time of the Lord's Second Coming (Isa. 33:20; Moses 7:62).

Talent

An ancient measure of weight or sum of money that was of great worth. It also serves as a symbol for something of great value, such as the gospel of Jesus Christ (Matt. 25:14–29; Ether 12:35; D&C 60:2, 13).

Tares

A grass or poisonous weed that is similar in appearance to wheat. It cannot be distinguished from wheat until it is fully grown (Matt. 13:24–30; D&C 86:1–7).

Taylor, John

The third President of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

Was called to the Council of the Twelve, **D&C** 118:6 (D&C 124:128–129). Was wounded at the martyrdom, **D&C** 135:2. Was among the mighty ones seen by Joseph F. Smith in the spirit world, **D&C** 138:53–56.

Teach, Teacher. *See also* Holy Ghost

To give knowledge to others, especially about gospel truths, and guide them to righteousness. Those who teach the gospel should be directed by the Spirit. All parents are teachers within their own families. Saints should seek and be willing to accept instructions from the Lord and His leaders.

Teach them to thy sons, **Deut.** 4:8–9. Thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, **Deut.** 6:7 (Deut. 11:18–19). Train up a child in the way he should go, **Prov.** 22:6. Thy children shall be taught of the Lord, **Isa.** 54:13 (3 Ne. 22:13).

We know thou art a teacher come from God, **John** 3:2. Thou which teachest another, teachest thou not thyself, **Rom.** 2:21.

I was taught somewhat in all the learning of my father, **1 Ne.** 1:1 (Enos 1:1). Priests and teachers must teach diligently or answer the sins of the people upon their own heads, **Jacob** 1:18–19. Hearken unto me, and open your ears,

Mosiah 2:9. Ye will teach your children to love and serve one another, **Mosiah** 4:15. Trust no one to be your teacher except he be a man of God, **Mosiah** 23:14. The Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the land to prepare their hearts to receive the word, **Alma** 16:16. They taught with power and authority of God, **Alma** 17:2–3. They had been taught by their mothers, **Alma** 56:47 (Alma 57:21).

Inasmuch as they sought wisdom they might be instructed, **D&C** 1:26. Teach one another according to the office wherewith I have appointed you, **D&C** 38:23. Teach the principles of my gospel, which are in the Bible and the Book of Mormon, **D&C** 42:12. Ye are to be taught from on high, **D&C** 43:15–16. Parents shall teach their children, **D&C** 68:25–28. Teach one another the doctrine of the kingdom, **D&C** 88:77–78, 118. Appoint among yourselves a teacher, **D&C** 88:122. You have not taught your children light and truth, and this is the cause of your affliction, **D&C** 93:39–42.

Teach these things freely unto your children, **Moses** 6:57–61.

Teaching with the Spirit: It is not ye that speak, but the Spirit which speaketh in you, **Matt.** 10:19–20. Did not our hearts burn within us while he opened to us the scriptures, **Luke** 24:32. The gospel is preached by the power of the Spirit, **1 Cor.** 2:1–14.

He spake with power and authority from God, **Mosiah** 13:5–9 (Alma 17:3; Hel. 5:17).

You shall have my Spirit unto the convincing of men, **D&C** 11:21. Thou shalt be heard in all things thou shalt teach by the Comforter, **D&C** 28:1 (D&C 52:9). If ye receive not the Spirit ye shall not teach, **D&C** 42:14 (D&C 42:6). Teach the children of men the things by the power of my Spirit, **D&C** 43:15. Elders are to preach the gospel by the Spirit, **D&C** 50:13–22. It shall be given you in the very hour what ye shall say, **D&C** 84:85 (D&C 100:5–8).

Teacher, Aaronic Priesthood. *See also* Aaronic Priesthood

An office in the Aaronic Priesthood.

The teacher's duty is to watch over the Church, **D&C** 20:53–60. The office of teacher is a necessary appendage to the lesser priesthood, **D&C** 84:30, 111. The president of a teachers quorum presides over twenty-four teachers, **D&C** 107:86.

Teancum

A great Nephite military leader in the Book of Mormon (Alma 50:35; 51–52; 61–62).

Telestial Glory. *See also* Degrees of Glory

The lowest of the three degrees of glory in which people will dwell after the Final Judgment.

Paul saw a glory of the stars, **1 Cor.** 15:40–41.

Joseph Smith and Sidney Rigdon saw the telestial glory, **D&C** 76:81–90. The inhabitants of the telestial world were as innumerable as the stars, **D&C** 76:109–112. He who cannot abide the law of a telestial kingdom cannot abide a telestial glory, **D&C** 88:24, 31, 38.

Temper. *See* Anger

Temple, House of the Lord. *See also* Endowment; Holy of Holies; Ordinances; Tabernacle

Literally the house of the Lord. The Lord has always commanded His people to build temples, holy buildings in which worthy Saints perform sacred ceremonies and ordinances of the gospel for themselves and for the dead. The Lord visits His temples, and they are the most holy of all places of worship.

The tabernacle erected by Moses and the children of Israel was a portable temple. The Israelites used it during their exodus from Egypt.

The best-known temple mentioned in the Old Testament is the one built by Solomon in Jerusalem (2 Chr. 2–5). It

was destroyed in 587 B.C. by the Babylonians and was restored by Zerubbabel about 70 years later (Ezra 1–6). Part of this temple was burned in 37 B.C., and Herod the Great later rebuilt it. The Romans destroyed the temple in A.D. 70.

In the Book of Mormon, the righteous followers of God were led to build and worship in temples (2 Ne. 5:16; Mosiah 1:18; 3 Ne. 11:1). Building and using a temple properly are signs of the true Church in any dispensation, including the restored Church in our day. The Kirtland Temple was the first temple built and dedicated to the Lord in this dispensation. Since that time temples have been dedicated in many lands across the earth.

Who shall stand in his holy place, **Ps.** 24:3–5. Let us go up to the house of the God of Jacob, **Isa.** 2:2–3 (Micah 4:1–2; 2 Ne. 12:2–3). The Lord shall suddenly come to his temple, **Mal.** 3:1 (3 Ne. 24:1; **D&C** 36:8; 42:36).

Jesus cleansed the temple, **Matt.** 21:12–16 (Mark 11:15–18; Luke 19:45–48).

The Saints were commanded to build a temple in Missouri, **D&C** 57:3 (**D&C** 84:3–5). Establish a house of God, **D&C** 88:119 (**D&C** 109:8). The Lord chastened the Saints for failing to build a temple, **D&C** 95:1–12. I will not come into unholy temples, **D&C** 97:15–17. I have accepted this house, and my name shall be here, **D&C** 110:7–8. The Lord's people are always commanded to build a house unto his name, **D&C** 124:39. The great work to be done in the temples includes the sealing of children to their parents, **D&C** 138:47–48. The great latter-day work includes the building of temples, **D&C** 138:53–54.

Temple Marriage. *See* Marriage, Marry

Tempt, Temptation. *See also* Agency; Devil; Endure

A test of a person's ability to choose good instead of evil; an enticement to sin and follow Satan instead of God.

Lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil, **Matt.** 6:13 (3 **Ne.** 13:12). God will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able to bear, **1 Cor.** 10:13. Christ was tempted like as we are, **Heb.** 4:14–15. Blessed is the man that endureth temptation, **James** 1:12–14.

The temptations of the adversary cannot overpower those who hearken unto the word of God, **1 Ne.** 15:24 (**Hel.** 5:12). Man could not act for himself save he was enticed by the one or the other, **2 Ne.** 2:11–16. Watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear, **Alma** 13:28. Teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their faith on the Lord Jesus Christ, **Alma** 37:33. Pray always lest ye enter into temptation, **3 Ne.** 18:15, 18 (**D&C** 20:33; 31:12; 61:39).

Beware of pride, lest thou shouldst enter into temptation, **D&C** 23:1. Adam became subject to the will of the devil because he yielded to temptation, **D&C** 29:39–40.

I was left to all kinds of temptations, **JS—H** 1:28.

Ten Commandments. *See* Commandments, the Ten

Ten Tribes. *See* Israel

Terrestrial Glory. *See also* Degrees of Glory

The second of the three degrees of glory in which people will dwell after the Final Judgment.

Paul saw a terrestrial glory, likened to the glory of the moon, **1 Cor.** 15:40–41.

Joseph Smith and Sidney Rigdon saw the terrestrial glory, **D&C** 76:71–80. The glory of the terrestrial excels that of the testial, **D&C** 76:91. Those who cannot abide the law of a terrestrial kingdom cannot abide a terrestrial glory, **D&C** 88:23, 30, 38.

Testament. *See* New Testament; Old Testament

Testify. *See also* Testimony

To bear witness by the power of the Holy Ghost; to make a solemn declaration of truth based on personal knowledge or belief.

The Comforter shall testify of me, **John** 15:26. He commanded us to preach and to testify, **Acts** 10:42.

Three witnesses shall testify to the truth, **2 Ne.** 27:12. The power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men, **2 Ne.** 33:1. The scriptures testify of Christ, **Jacob** 7:10–11 (**John** 5:39). I testify unto you that I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true, **Alma** 5:45 (**Alma** 34:8).

Ye shall testify of them by the power of God, **D&C** 17:3–5. That which the Spirit testifies unto you, ye should do, **D&C** 46:7. I sent you out to testify and warn, **D&C** 88:81.

Testimony. *See also* Holy Ghost; Testify; Witness

Knowledge and a spiritual witness given by the Holy Ghost. A testimony can also be an official or legal declaration of what a person perceives as truth (**D&C** 102:26).

I know that my redeemer liveth, **Job** 19:25–26.

Be not ashamed of the testimony of our Lord, **2 Tim.** 1:8. The testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy, **Rev.** 19:10.

Stand as witnesses of God at all times, **Mosiah** 18:9. There was no way to reclaim the people save by bearing down in pure testimony against them, **Alma** 4:19–20. I have all things as a testimony that these things are true, **Alma** 30:41–44. Ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith, **Ether** 12:6.

Did I not speak peace to your mind? What greater witness can you have than from God, **D&C** 6:22–23. And now, after the many testimonies which have been given of him, this is the testimony which we give of him, **D&C** 76:22–24. I sent you out to testify and warn the

people, **D&C 88:81–82**. The testators are now dead, and their testament is in force, **D&C 135:4–5**.

Enoch beheld angels bearing testimony of the Father and Son, **Moses 7:27**. Though I was hated and persecuted for saying that I had seen a vision, yet it was true, **JS—H 1:24–25**.

Thankful, Thanks, Thanksgiving.

See also Bless, Blessed, Blessing; Worship

Gratitude for blessings received from God. Expressing gratitude is pleasing to God, and true worship includes thanking Him. We should give thanks to the Lord for all things.

It is a good thing to give thanks unto the Lord, **Ps. 92:1**. Come before his presence with thanksgiving, **Ps. 95:1–2**. Be thankful unto him, and bless his name, **Ps. 100**.

Cease not to give thanks, **Eph. 1:15–16**. Be ye thankful, **Col. 3:15**. Blessing, and glory, and thanksgiving, and honor be unto our God, **Rev. 7:12**.

O how you ought to thank your heavenly King, **Mosiah 2:19–21**. Live in thanksgiving daily, **Alma 34:38**. When thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks unto God, **Alma 37:37**.

Ye should do all things with prayer and thanksgiving, **D&C 46:7**. Ye must give thanks unto God, **D&C 46:32**. Do these things with thanksgiving, **D&C 59:15–21**. Receive this blessing from the hand of the Lord, with a thankful heart, **D&C 62:7**. He who receives all things with thankfulness shall be made glorious, **D&C 78:19**. In everything give thanks, **D&C 98:1** (1 Thes. 5:18). Praise the Lord with a prayer of praise and thanksgiving, **D&C 136:28**.

Thessalonians, Epistles to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles

Two books in the New Testament. They were originally letters that Paul wrote to the Thessalonians while he was in Corinth during his first visit to Europe around A.D. 50. His work in

Thessalonica is described in Acts 17. Paul wanted to return to Thessalonica but was unable to do so (1 Thes. 2:18). He therefore sent Timothy to cheer the converts and bring him word of how they were doing. Paul wrote the first epistle as a result of his thankfulness on Timothy's return.

First Thessalonians: Chapters 1–2 contain Paul's greeting and his prayer for the Saints; chapters 3–5 give instruction on spiritual growth, love, chastity, diligence, and the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

Second Thessalonians: Chapter 1 contains a prayer for the Saints. Chapter 2 speaks of the coming apostasy. Chapter 3 contains Paul's prayer for the triumph of the gospel cause.

Thomas

In the New Testament, one of the original Twelve Apostles chosen by the Savior during His mortal ministry (Matt. 10:2–3; John 14:5). In Greek the name is Didymus (John 20:24–29; 21:2). Though Thomas doubted Jesus' Resurrection until he personally saw the Savior, his strength of character made him willing to face persecution and death with his Lord (John 11:16; 20:19–25).

Thoughts. *See also* Agency; Ponder

Ideas, concepts, and images in a person's mind. The power to think is a gift from God, and we are free to choose how we use our power to think. The way we think greatly affects attitudes and behavior, as well as our standing after this life. Righteous thoughts lead to salvation; wicked thoughts lead to damnation.

The Lord understands all the imaginations of the thoughts, **1 Chr. 28:9**. As he thinketh in his heart, so is he, **Prov. 23:7**. My thoughts are not your thoughts, **Isa. 55:7–9**.

Jesus knew their thoughts, **Matt. 12:25** (Luke 5:22; 6:8). From within, out of the heart of men, proceed evil

thoughts, **Mark** 7:20–23. Bring into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ, **2 Cor.** 10:5. Whatsoever things are true, honest, pure, or lovely, think on these things, **Philip.** 4:8.

Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal, **2 Ne.** 9:39. If ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, ye must perish, **Mosiah** 4:30. Our thoughts will condemn us, **Alma** 12:14.

Only God knows the thoughts and intents of thy heart, **D&C** 6:16 (**D&C** 33:1). Look unto me in every thought, **D&C** 6:36. Treasure up in your minds the words of life, **D&C** 84:85. Cast away your idle thoughts, **D&C** 88:69. The thoughts of men's hearts will be revealed, **D&C** 88:109. Let virtue garnish thy thoughts unceasingly, **D&C** 121:45.

Every man's thoughts were evil continually, **Moses** 8:22.

Three Nephite Disciples. *See also* Disciple; Nephites; Translated Beings

Three of Christ's chosen Nephite disciples referred to in the Book of Mormon.

The Lord granted to these disciples the same blessing granted to John the Beloved—that they might stay on the earth to bring souls to Christ until the Lord comes again. They were translated so that they would feel no pain and would not die (**3 Ne.** 28).

Christ granted the three disciples' desire to tarry until his coming, **3 Ne.** 28:1–9. They will never suffer the pains of death or sorrow, **3 Ne.** 28:7–9. They shall have fulness of joy, **3 Ne.** 28:10. They were temporarily caught up into heaven, **3 Ne.** 28:13–17. They ministered unto the people and endured persecution, **3 Ne.** 28:18–23. They ministered unto Mormon, **3 Ne.** 28:24–26 (**Morm.** 8:10–11). They will minister to the Gentiles, Jews, scattered tribes, and

all nations, **3 Ne.** 28:27–29. Satan has no power over them, **3 Ne.** 28:39.

Timothy. *See also* Paul

In the New Testament, a young missionary companion of Paul during Paul's ministry (**Acts** 16:1–3; **2 Tim.** 1:1–5); the son of a Greek father and Jewish mother; he and his parents lived in Lystra.

Paul spoke of Timothy as his "own son in the faith" (**1 Tim.** 1:2, 18; **2 Tim.** 1:2). Timothy was perhaps Paul's most trusted and capable assistant (**Philip.** 2:19–23).

Timothy, Epistles to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles; Timothy

Two books in the New Testament. Both were originally letters that Paul wrote to Timothy.

First Timothy: Paul wrote the first epistle after his first imprisonment. He had left Timothy at Ephesus, intending afterwards to return (**1 Tim.** 3:14). However, Paul felt that he might be delayed, so he wrote to Timothy, perhaps from Macedonia (**1 Tim.** 1:3), to give him counsel and encouragement in fulfilling his duty.

Chapter 1 contains Paul's greeting and also his instructions about foolish speculations that were finding their way into the Church. Chapters 2–3 give directions about public worship and about the character and conduct of ministers. Chapters 4–5 contain a description of the latter-day apostasy and advice to Timothy on how to minister to those he was leading. Chapter 6 is an exhortation to prove faithful and avoid worldly riches.

Second Timothy: Paul wrote the second letter during his second imprisonment, shortly before his martyrdom. It contains the Apostle's last words and shows the wonderful courage and trust with which he faced death.

Chapter 1 contains Paul's greeting and charge to Timothy. Chapters 2–3

Tithes, Tithing

give various warnings and directions, with a challenge to face the dangers ahead. Chapter 4 is a message to Paul's friends, containing advice about how to handle apostates.

Tithes, Tithing. *See also* Money; Offering

A tenth part of a person's annual increase given to the Lord through the Church. Tithing funds are used to build churches and temples, to sustain missionary work, and to build the kingdom of God on earth.

Abraham gave tithes of all he possessed to Melchizedek, **Gen.** 14:18–20 (Heb. 7:1–2, 9; Alma 13:15). All the tithe is the Lord's: it is holy unto the Lord, **Lev.** 27:30–34. Thou shalt truly tithe all the increase, **Deut.** 14:22, 28. The tithe of all things brought they in abundantly, **2 Chr.** 31:5. Will a man rob God? Wherein have we robbed thee? In tithes and offerings, **Mal.** 3:8–11 (3 Ne. 24:8–11).

He that is tithed shall not be burned at his coming, **D&C** 64:23 (**D&C** 85:3). The Lord's house will be built by the tithing of his people, **D&C** 97:11–12. The Lord revealed the law of tithing, **D&C** 119. Tithing shall be disposed of by a council, **D&C** 120.

Title of Liberty. *See also* Moroni, Captain

A banner raised by Moroni, chief commander of the Nephite armies in the Book of Mormon. Moroni made the banner to inspire the Nephite people to defend their religion, freedom, peace, and families.

Moroni made the title of liberty out of his torn coat, **Alma** 46:12–13. Those who would maintain the title entered into a covenant, **Alma** 46:20–22. Moroni caused the title to be hoisted upon every tower, **Alma** 46:36 (**Alma** 51:20).

Titus. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles; Titus, Epistle to

In the New Testament, a trusted

Greek convert who traveled to Jerusalem with Paul and later became a missionary (**Gal.** 2:1–4; **2 Tim.** 4:10). Titus delivered Paul's first epistle to the Saints at Corinth (**2 Cor.** 7:5–8, 13–15).

Titus, Epistle to. *See also* Paul; Pauline Epistles; Titus

While Paul was temporarily free from Roman imprisonment, he wrote the epistle to Titus, who was in Crete. The letter mainly addresses questions relating to the internal discipline and organization of the Church.

Chapter 1 contains Paul's greeting as well as instructions and general qualifications for bishops. Chapters 2–3 contain general teachings and personal messages to Titus about the treatment of various groups in the Cretan Church. Paul encouraged the Saints to overcome perversity, be sober and faithful, and maintain good works.

Tobacco. *See* Word of Wisdom

Tongue. *See also* Tongues, Gift of

A symbol for speech. The Saints are to control their tongues, meaning that they are to control their speech. *Tongue* also refers to languages and peoples. Eventually, every knee shall bow and every tongue confess to God (**Isa.** 45:23; **Rom.** 14:11).

Keep thy tongue from evil, **Ps.** 34:13 (**1 Pet.** 3:10). Whoso keepeth his mouth and his tongue keepeth his soul from troubles, **Prov.** 21:23.

If any man brideth not his tongue, this man's religion is vain, **James** 1:26. If any man offend not in word, the same is a perfect man, **James** 3:1–13. The gospel will be preached to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, **Rev.** 14:6–7 (**2 Ne.** 26:13; **Mosiah** 3:13, 20; **D&C** 88:103; 112:1).

The Lord grants unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word, **Alma** 29:8. These plates shall go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, **Alma** 37:4.

Obtain my word, and then shall your tongue be loosed, **D&C 11:21**. Every man shall hear the fulness of the gospel in his own tongue, **D&C 90:11**.

Tongues, Gift of. *See also* Gifts of the Spirit; Tongue

A gift of the Holy Ghost that allows inspired individuals to speak in, understand, or interpret unfamiliar languages. We believe in the gift of tongues (A of F 1:7).

They were all filled with the Holy Ghost, and began to speak with other tongues, **Acts 2:4**. He that speaks in an unknown tongue speaks not to men, but to God, **1 Cor. 14:1–5, 27–28**. Tongues are for a sign to them that believe not, **1 Cor. 14:22–28**.

Then cometh the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost; and then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, **2 Ne. 31:13–14**. Amaleki exhorted all men to believe in the gift of speaking with tongues, **Omni 1:25**.

It is given to some to speak with tongues; and to another the interpretation of tongues, **D&C 46:24–25** (**1 Cor. 12:10**; **Moro. 10:8, 15–16**). Let the gift of tongues be poured out, **D&C 109:36**.

Traditions

Beliefs and practices that are passed on from one generation to another (**2 Thes. 2:15**). In the scriptures, the Lord consistently warns the righteous to avoid the evil traditions of men (**Lev. 18:30**; **Mark 7:6–8**; **Mosiah 1:5**; **D&C 93:39–40**).

Transfiguration. *See also* Jesus Christ; Keys of the Priesthood

The condition of persons who are temporarily changed in appearance and nature—that is, lifted to a higher spiritual level—so that they can endure the presence and glory of heavenly beings.

Transfiguration of Christ: Peter, James, and John saw the Lord glorified and

transfigured before them. The Savior had before promised that Peter would receive the keys of the kingdom of heaven (**Matt. 16:13–19**; **17:1–9**; **Mark 9:2–10**; **Luke 9:28–36**; **2 Pet. 1:16–18**). At this important event, the Savior, Moses, and Elias (Elijah) gave the promised keys of the priesthood to Peter, James, and John. With these priesthood keys, the Apostles had the power to continue the work of the kingdom after the Ascension of Jesus.

Joseph Smith taught that on the Mount of Transfiguration, Peter, James, and John were also transfigured. They saw a vision of the earth as it will appear in its future glorified condition (**D&C 63:20–21**). They saw Moses and Elijah, two translated beings, and heard the voice of the Father. The Father said, “This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him” (**Matt. 17:5**).

Transfigured beings: They saw the God of Israel, **Ex. 24:9–11**. The skin of his face shone while he talked with God, **Ex. 34:29** (**Mark 9:2–3**).

Jesus’ face did shine, **Matt. 17:2** (**Mark 9:2–3**). Israel could not steadfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory, **2 Cor. 3:7**.

Abinadi’s face shown with exceeding luster, **Mosiah 13:5–9**. They were encircled about as if by fire, **Hel. 5:23, 36, 43–45** (**3 Ne. 17:24**; **19:14**). They were as white as the countenance of Jesus, **3 Ne. 19:25**. It did seem unto them like a transfiguration, **3 Ne. 28:15**.

No man has seen God in the flesh, except quickened by the Spirit, **D&C 67:10–12**. By the power of the Spirit our eyes were opened, **D&C 76:12**.

The glory of God was upon Moses, **Moses 1:2**. His glory was upon me; and I beheld his face, for I was transfigured, **Moses 1:11**. I beheld the heavens open, and I was clothed upon with glory, **Moses 7:3–4**.

Translate

To express the meaning of an idea

given in one language in equal terms in another language (Mosiah 8:8–13; A of F 1:8). In the scriptures it is often referred to as a gift from God (Alma 9:21; D&C 8; 9:7–9). It sometimes can mean to improve or correct an existing translation in a language or to restore a lost text (D&C 45:60–61). Joseph Smith was commanded to undertake an inspired translation of the King James Bible (D&C 42:56; 76:15).

Joseph Smith had the power to translate through the mercy of God, by the power of God, **D&C 1:29**. You have a gift to translate, **D&C 5:4**. I grant unto you a gift, if you desire of me, to translate, **D&C 6:25**. God gave Joseph Smith power from on high to translate the Book of Mormon, **D&C 20:8**.

By the means of the Urim and Thummim I translated some of the characters, **JS—H 1:62** (Mosiah 8:13; 28:13).

Translated Beings

Persons who are changed so that they do not experience pain or death until their resurrection to immortality.

Enoch walked with God: and he was not; for God took him, **Gen. 5:24** (Heb. 11:5; D&C 107:48–49). No man knoweth of Moses' sepulchre unto this day, **Deut. 34:5–6** (Alma 45:19). Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven, **2 Kgs. 2:11**.

If I will that he tarry till I come, what is that to thee, **John 21:22–23** (D&C 7:1–3).

You shall never taste of death, **3 Ne. 28:7**. That they might not taste of death there was a change wrought upon their bodies, **3 Ne. 28:38** (4 Ne. 1:14; Morm. 8:10–11).

John the Beloved will live until the Lord comes, **D&C 7**. I have taken the Zion of Enoch into mine own bosom, **D&C 38:4** (Moses 7:21, 31, 69). Enoch and his brethren are a city reserved until a day of righteousness, **D&C 45:11–12**. Elijah was taken to heaven without tasting death, **D&C 110:13**.

The Holy Ghost fell on many,

and they were caught up into Zion, **Moses 7:27**.

Tree of Life. *See also* Eden

A tree in the Garden of Eden and the paradise of God (**Gen. 2:9**; **Rev. 2:7**). In Lehi's dream the tree of life represents the love of God and is referred to as the greatest of all the gifts of God (1 Ne. 8; 11:21–22, 25; 15:36).

Cherubim and a flaming sword keep the way of the tree of life, **Gen. 3:24** (Alma 12:21–23; 42:2–6).

John saw the tree of life, and the leaves had healing power for the nations, **Rev. 22:2**.

Lehi beheld the tree of life, **1 Ne. 8:10–35**. Nephi saw the tree his father saw, **1 Ne. 11:8–9**. The iron rod leads to the tree of life, **1 Ne. 11:25** (1 Ne. 15:22–24). An awful gulf separates the wicked from the tree of life, **1 Ne. 15:28, 36**. It must needs be that there was a forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life, **2 Ne. 2:15**. Come unto the Lord and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, **Alma 5:34, 62**. If our first parents had partaken of the tree of life, they would have been forever miserable, **Alma 12:26**. If ye will not nourish the word, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life, **Alma 32:40**.

The Lord planted the tree of life in the midst of the garden, **Moses 3:9** (Abr. 5:9). God sent Adam from Eden lest he partake of the tree of life and live forever, **Moses 4:28–31**.

Trust. *See also* Confidence; Faith

To rely upon or place confidence in someone or something. In spiritual matters, trust includes relying on God and His Spirit.

Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him, **Job 13:15**. Trust in the Lord with all thine heart, **Prov. 3:5**. God delivered his servants that trusted in him, **Dan. 3:19–28**.

I will trust in thee forever, **2 Ne. 4:34**. Rejoice and put your trust in God,

Mosiah 7:19. Whoever puts his trust in God shall be lifted up at the last day, **Mosiah** 23:22. Whoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in their trials, **Alma** 36:3, 27.

Trust not in the arm of flesh, **D&C** 1:19. Put your trust in that Spirit which leadeth to do good, **D&C** 11:12. Let him trust in me and he shall not be confounded, **D&C** 84:116.

Truth. *See also* Intelligence, Intelligences; Knowledge; Light, Light of Christ

Knowledge of things as they are, and as they were, and as they are to come (**D&C** 93:24). Truth also refers to light and revelation from heaven.

Truth shall spring out of the earth, **Ps.** 85:11 (**Moses** 7:62).

Ye shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free, **John** 8:32. I am the way, the truth, and the life, **John** 14:6. If we say that we have no sin, the truth is not in us, **1 Jn.** 1:8.

The guilty take the truth to be hard, **1 Ne.** 16:2. The righteous love the truth, **2 Ne.** 9:40. The Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not, **Jacob** 4:13. Thou art a God of truth and cannot lie, **Ether** 3:12. By the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things, **Moro.** 10:5.

Truth abideth forever and ever, **D&C** 1:39. Thou hast been enlightened by the Spirit of truth, **D&C** 6:15. The Book of Mormon contains the truth and the word of God, **D&C** 19:26. The Comforter was sent forth to teach the truth, **D&C** 50:14. He that receiveth the word by the Spirit of truth receiveth it as it is preached by the Spirit of truth, **D&C** 50:17–22. Proclaim the truth according to the revelations I have given you, **D&C** 75:3–4. Whatsoever is truth is light, **D&C** 84:45. The light of Christ is the light of truth, **D&C** 88:6–7, 40. My Spirit is truth, **D&C** 88:66. Intelligence, or the light of truth, was not created, **D&C** 93:29. The glory of God

is intelligence, or light and truth, **D&C** 93:36. I have commanded you to bring up your children in light and truth, **D&C** 93:40.

Mine Only Begotten is full of grace and truth, **Moses** 1:6.

Twelve, Quorum of the. *See* Apostle

Twelve Tribes of Israel. *See* Israel—
The twelve tribes of Israel

Unbelief. *See also* Belief, Believe

Lack of faith in God and His gospel.

He did not many mighty works there because of their unbelief, **Matt.** 13:58. Because of their unbelief Jesus' disciples could not cast out a devil, **Matt.** 17:14–21. Help thou mine unbelief, **Mark** 9:23–24. Jesus upbraided his Apostles with their unbelief and hardness of heart, **Mark** 16:14. Shall unbelief make the faith of God without effect, **Rom.** 3:3.

It is better that one man should perish than that a nation should dwindle and perish in unbelief, **1 Ne.** 4:13. When the time cometh that they dwindle in unbelief, he will cause them to be scattered and smitten, **2 Ne.** 1:10–11 (**D&C** 3:18). Because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God, **Mosiah** 26:1–5. I could not show unto the Jews so great miracles, because of their unbelief, **3 Ne.** 19:35.

Your minds in times past have been darkened because of unbelief, **D&C** 84:54–58.

Unclean. *See* Clean and Unclean

Understanding. *See also* Knowledge; Truth; Wisdom

To gain a knowledge of or to perceive the meaning of some truth, including its application to life.

Lean not unto thine own understanding, **Prov.** 3:5. With all thy getting get understanding, **Prov.** 4:7.

Jesus spoke in parables and some

Ungodly

did not understand, **Matt.** 13:12–17. The Lord opened their understanding, **Luke** 24:45.

If ye cannot understand these words, it will be because ye ask not, **2 Ne.** 32:4 (3 **Ne.** 17:3). The records were preserved so that we might read and understand, **Mosiah** 1:2–5. Because of their unbelief, they could not understand the word of God, **Mosiah** 26:3. They were men of a sound understanding, **Alma** 17:2–3. The word beginneth to enlighten my understanding, **Alma** 32:28.

Let us reason together that ye may understand, **D&C** 50:10–12, 19–23. Parents must teach their children to understand, **D&C** 68:25. The works and mysteries of God can only be understood by the Holy Spirit, **D&C** 76:114–116. Satan seeks to turn men's hearts from understanding, **D&C** 78:10. The Light of Christ quickens our understandings, **D&C** 88:11.

Ungodly. *See also* Filth, Filthiness; Sin; Unrighteous, Unrighteousness; Wicked, Wickedness

Someone or something that is not in accordance with the will or commandments of God; wicked and unholy.

The way of the ungodly shall perish, **Ps.** 1:6.

If the righteous scarcely be saved, where shall the ungodly appear, **1 Pet.** 4:18.

Deny yourselves of all ungodliness, **Moro.** 10:32.

Vengeance comes speedily upon the ungodly, **D&C** 97:22. Among the ungodly, the Savior's voice was not raised, **D&C** 138:20.

Unholy. *See* Ungodly

United Order. *See also* Consecrate, Law of Consecration

An organization through which the Saints in the early days of the restored Church sought to live the law of consecration. Individuals shared property,

goods, and profits, receiving these things according to their wants and needs (**D&C** 51:3; 78:1–15; 104).

In your temporal things you shall be equal, **D&C** 70:14. The Saints were to be organized to be equal in all things, **D&C** 78:3–11 (**D&C** 82:17–20). The Lord gave unto the united order a revelation and a commandment, **D&C** 92:1. John Johnson should become a member of the united order, **D&C** 96:6–9. The Lord gave general instructions for operating the united order, **D&C** 104. My people are not united according to the union required by the celestial kingdom, **D&C** 105:1–13.

Unity. *See also* God, Godhead

To become one in thought, desire, and purpose first with our Father in Heaven and Jesus Christ, and then with other Saints.

It is good for brethren to dwell together in unity, **Ps.** 133:1.

I and my Father are one, **John** 10:30 (**D&C** 50:43). Jesus prayed that all may be one as he and his Father are one, **John** 17:11–23 (3 **Ne.** 19:23). I beseech you that there be no divisions among you, but that ye be perfectly joined together, **1 Cor.** 1:10.

Be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, **2 Ne.** 1:21. Saints should have their hearts knit together in unity, **Mosiah** 18:21. Jesus prayed for unity among his Nephite disciples, **3 Ne.** 19:23. The disciples were united in mighty prayer and fasting, **3 Ne.** 27:1.

The Father, Son, and Holy Ghost are one, **D&C** 20:27–28 (**D&C** 35:2; 50:43). It is your duty to unite with the true church, **D&C** 23:7. Whatsoever ye shall ask in faith, being united in prayer, ye shall receive, **D&C** 29:6. If ye are not one ye are not mine, **D&C** 38:27.

The Lord called his people Zion because they were of one heart and one mind, **Moses** 7:18.

Unpardonable Sin. *See also*

Blasphemy; Blasphemy; Holy Ghost; Murder; Sons of Perdition

The sin of denying the Holy Ghost, a sin that cannot be forgiven.

Blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men, **Matt.** 12:31–32 (Mark 3:29; Luke 12:10). It is impossible for those who were made partakers of the Holy Ghost to renew them again unto repentance, **Heb.** 6:4–6. If we sin wilfully after we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, **Heb.** 10:26.

If ye deny the Holy Ghost and know that ye deny it, this is a sin which is unpardonable, **Alma** 39:5–6 (Jacob 7:19).

They have no forgiveness, having denied the Only Begotten Son, having crucified him unto themselves, **D&C** 76:30–35. The blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven, which is shedding innocent blood after ye have received my new and everlasting covenant, **D&C** 132:26–27.

Unrighteous, Unrighteousness. *See*

also Filth, Filthiness; Righteous, Righteousness; Sin; Ungodly; Wicked, Wickedness

Wicked, unjust; people who do not love God or the things of God and who do not support His cause.

The unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God, **1 Cor.** 6:9–10. Those who have pleasure in unrighteousness are damned, **2 Thes.** 2:12. Jesus Christ can cleanse us from all unrighteousness, **1 Jn.** 1:9.

An unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness, **Mosiah** 29:23. The foundation of destruction is laid by the unrighteousness of lawyers and judges, **Alma** 10:27.

I send you out to reprove the world

of unrighteous deeds, **D&C** 84:87. The soul must be sanctified from all unrighteousness, **D&C** 88:17–18. The disposition of almost all men is to begin to exercise unrighteous dominion, **D&C** 121:39.

Ur

In the Old Testament, Ur of the Chaldees was the original home of Abram (Gen. 11:27–28, 31; 15:7; Neh. 9:7; Abr. 2:1, 4).

Urim and Thummim. *See also*

Breastplates; Seer

Instruments prepared by God to assist man in obtaining revelation and in translating languages. In the Hebrew language the words mean “lights and perfections.” The Urim and Thummim consist of two stones set in silver bows and sometimes used with a breastplate (**D&C** 17:1; JS—H 1:35, 42, 52). This earth will become a great Urim and Thummim in its sanctified and immortal state (**D&C** 130:6–9).

Thou shalt put in the breastplate of judgment the Urim and the Thummim, **Ex.** 28:30.

To him that overcometh will I give a white stone, **Rev.** 2:17.

He has wherewith that he can look, and translate, **Mosiah** 8:13. These two stones will I give unto thee, **Ether** 3:23–24, 28 (Ether 4:5).

Joseph Smith received revelations through the Urim and Thummim, **D&C** headings to sections 6; 11; 14–16. You had power given unto you to translate by the means of the Urim and Thummim, **D&C** 10:1. The Three Witnesses were to see the Urim and Thummim, which were given to the brother of Jared upon the mount, **D&C** 17:1. The place where God resides is a great Urim and Thummim. The white stone will become a Urim and Thummim to each individual who receives one, **D&C** 130:6–11.

Vain, Vanity

I, Abraham, had the Urim and Thummim, **Abr.** 3:1, 4.

Vain, Vanity. *See also* Pride;

Worldliness

Falsehood or deceit; pride. *Vain* and *vanity* can also mean empty or without value.

He who has not lifted up his soul unto vanity will stand in the Lord's holy place, **Ps.** 24:3–4.

When ye pray, use not vain repetitions, **Matt.** 6:7.

The large and spacious building is vain imaginations and pride, **1 Ne.** 12:18. Will ye persist in setting your hearts upon the vain things of the world, **Alma** 5:53. Seek not after the vain things of this world, for you cannot carry them with you, **Alma** 39:14.

Vanity and unbelief have brought the Church under condemnation, **D&C** 84:54–55. When we try to gratify our vain ambition, the heavens withdraw, **D&C** 121:37.

Veil

A word used in the scriptures to mean (1) a divider separating areas of the tabernacle or temple, (2) a symbol for a separation between God and man, (3) a thin cloth worn by people to cover their face or head, or (4) a God-given forgetfulness that blocks people's memories of the premortal existence.

The veil divides the holy of holies from the holy place, **Ex.** 26:33.

The veil of the temple was rent in twain at the crucifixion of Christ, **Matt.** 27:51 (Mark 15:38; Luke 23:45). Now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face, **1 Cor.** 13:12.

The dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, **Alma** 19:6. The brother of Jared could not be kept from beholding within the veil, **Ether** 3:19 (Ether 12:19).

The veil shall be rent and you shall

see me, **D&C** 67:10 (D&C 38:8). The veil of the covering of my temple shall be taken off, **D&C** 101:23. The veil was taken from our minds, **D&C** 110:1.

A veil of darkness shall cover the earth, **Moses** 7:61.

Vengeance. *See also* Enmity

Revenge or retaliation for an injury or offense.

Your God will come with vengeance, **Isa.** 35:4.

Vengeance is mine; I will repay, **Rom.** 12:19 (Morm. 3:15; 8:20).

The sword of vengeance hangeth over you, **Morm.** 8:40–41.

I will take vengeance upon the wicked, for they will not repent, **D&C** 29:17.

The Savior came in the days of wickedness and vengeance, **Moses** 7:45–46.

Vicarious. *See* Ordinances—Vicarious ordinance; Salvation for the Dead

Vineyard of the Lord. *See also* Field; Israel

A symbol for a field of spiritual labor. In the scriptures, the vineyard of the Lord usually refers to the house of Israel or the kingdom of God on the earth. It sometimes refers to the peoples of the world in general.

The vineyard of the Lord of hosts is the house of Israel, **Isa.** 5:7 (2 Ne. 15:7).

Jesus gave the parable of the laborers in the vineyard, **Matt.** 20:1–16.

Israel is like unto a tame olive tree that is nourished in the Lord's vineyard, **Jacob** 5. Servants of the Lord shall prune his vineyard for the last time, **Jacob** 6.

The Lord will bless all who labor in his vineyard, **D&C** 21:9 (Alma 28:14). Labor ye in my vineyard for the last time, **D&C** 43:28.

Virgin. *See also* Mary, Mother of Jesus

A man or woman of marriageable age who has never had sexual intercourse. In the scriptures, a virgin may

represent someone who is morally clean (Rev. 14:4).

A virgin shall conceive and bear a son, **Isa.** 7:14 (Matt. 1:23; 2 Ne. 17:14).

The kingdom of heaven is likened unto ten virgins, **Matt.** 25:1–13.

In the city of Nazareth I beheld a virgin, who was the mother of the Son of God, **1 Ne.** 11:13–18. Mary was a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, **Alma** 7:10.

Virgin Mary. *See* Mary, Mother of Jesus

Virtue. *See also* Chastity; Integrity; Power

Integrity and moral excellence, power and strength (Luke 8:46), or sexual purity (Moro. 9:9).

Thou art a virtuous woman, **Ruth** 3:11. He that has clean hands and a pure heart shall stand in the Lord's holy place, **Ps.** 24:3–4. A virtuous woman is a crown to her husband, **Prov.** 12:4. The price of a virtuous woman is far above rubies, **Prov.** 31:10–31.

Add to your faith virtue, **2 Pet.** 1:5 (D&C 4:6).

Try the virtue of the word of God, **Alma** 31:5.

Let virtue garnish thy thoughts unceasingly, **D&C** 121:45.

We believe in being virtuous, **A of F** 1:13 (Philip. 4:8).

Vision. *See also* Dream; First Vision; Revelation

A visual revelation of some event, person, or thing through the power of the Holy Ghost.

Examples of important visions include the following: Ezekiel's vision of the last days (Ezek. 37–39), Stephen's vision of Jesus standing on the right hand of God (Acts 7:55–56), John's revelation concerning the last days (Rev. 4–21), Lehi and Nephi's vision of the tree of life (1 Ne. 8; 10–14), Alma the Younger's vision of an angel of the Lord (Mosiah 27), the brother of Jared's vision of all the inhabitants of the earth (Ether

3:25), the vision of the glories (D&C 76), visions given Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery in the Kirtland Temple (D&C 110), Joseph F. Smith's vision of the redemption of the dead (D&C 138), Moses' vision of God and His creations (Moses 1), Enoch's vision of God (Moses 6–7), and Joseph Smith's First Vision (JS—H 1).

Where there is no vision, the people perish, **Prov.** 29:18. Young men shall see visions, **Joel** 2:28 (Acts 2:17).

He has given me knowledge by visions, **2 Ne.** 4:23.

He was a messenger sent from the presence of God, **JS—H** 1:33. We believe in prophecy, revelation, visions, **A of F** 1:7.

Voice. *See also* Revelation

As used in the scriptures, sometimes an audible message spoken by the Lord or His messengers. The voice of the Spirit may also be inaudible and directed to the heart or mind.

Adam and Eve heard the voice of the Lord God, **Gen.** 3:8 (Moses 4:14). The Lord spoke to Elijah in a still small voice, **1 Kgs.** 19:11–13.

The righteous follow the voice of the Good Shepherd, **John** 10:1–16. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice, **John** 18:37.

I did obey the voice of the Spirit, **1 Ne.** 4:6–18. There came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven, **Enos** 1:5. It was a still voice of perfect mildness and did pierce even to the very soul, **Hel.** 5:29–33 (3 Ne. 11:3–7).

Whether by mine own voice or by the voice of my servants, it is the same, **D&C** 1:38. Whatsoever they shall speak when moved upon by the Holy Ghost shall be the voice of the Lord, **D&C** 68:2–4. Every soul who obeyeth my voice shall see my face and know that I am, **D&C** 93:1.

Vote. *See* Common Consent

Walk, Walk with God. *See also* Obedience, Obedient, Obey; Righteous, Righteousness; Way

To be in harmony with God's teachings and to live as God would have His people live; to be receptive and obedient to the promptings of the Holy Ghost.

I may prove them, whether they will walk in my law, or not, **Ex.** 16:4. No good thing will be withheld from them that walk uprightly, **Ps.** 84:11. Those who walk in my statutes and keep my ordinances shall be my people, **Ezek.** 11:20–21 (**Deut.** 8:6). What does the Lord require of you but that you walk humbly with God, **Micah** 6:8 (**D&C** 11:12).

Walk in the light, as God is in the light, **1 Jn.** 1:7 (2 **Jn.** 1:6; 3 **Jn.** 1:4; 4 **Ne.** 1:12).

Walk in the strait path which leads to life, **2 Ne.** 33:9. King Benjamin walked with a clear conscience before God, **Mosiah** 2:27. Your duty is to walk blameless after the holy order of God, **Alma** 7:22.

Members of the Church shall manifest a godly walk and conversation, **D&C** 20:69. Give heed to the prophet and walk in all holiness before the Lord, **D&C** 21:4. Teach children to pray and to walk uprightly before the Lord, **D&C** 68:28.

Abide in me, and I in you; therefore walk with me, **Moses** 6:34.

War. *See also* Peace

A battle or armed conflict; fighting with weapons. The Lord approves of war only as a last means for His Saints to defend their families, property, rights, privileges, and freedoms (**Alma** 43:9, 45–47).

Moroni sought to defend his people, his rights, his country, and his religion, **Alma** 48:10–17.

Joseph Smith received a revelation and prophecy on war, **D&C** 87. Renounce war and proclaim peace, **D&C** 98:16, 34–46. We believe that men are justified in defending themselves,

their friends, and property, and the government, **D&C** 134:11.

We believe in obeying, honoring, and sustaining the law, **A of F** 1:12.

War in Heaven. *See also* Council in Heaven; Premortal Life

The conflict that took place in the premortal life among the spirit children of God.

Satan was cast out of heaven and into the earth, **Rev.** 12:4, 7–9.

The devil and a third part of heaven were thrust down, **D&C** 29:36–37. Lucifer rebelled against the Only Begotten Son, **D&C** 76:25–26.

Satan sought the glory of the Father and to destroy the agency of man, **Moses** 4:1–4 (**Isa.** 14:12–15; **Abr.** 3:27–28). Those who followed God kept their first estate, came to earth, and received bodies, **Abr.** 3:26.

Warn, Warning. *See also* Watch, Watchmen

To give notice or caution. Prophets, leaders, and parents warn and teach others to be obedient to the Lord and His teachings.

Jacob warned the people of Nephi against every kind of sin, **Jacob** 3:12.

The voice of warning is to all people, **D&C** 1:4. Let your preaching be the warning voice, **D&C** 38:41. This is a day of warning, **D&C** 63:58. Every man who has been warned should warn his neighbor, **D&C** 88:81. I have warned you, and forewarn you, by giving you this word of wisdom, **D&C** 89:4.

Wash, Washed, Washings. *See also* Atone, Atonement; Baptism, Baptize

To cleanse, physically or spiritually. Symbolically, a repentant person may be cleansed from a life burdened with sin and its consequences through the atoning sacrifice of Jesus Christ. Certain washings performed under proper priesthood authority serve as sacred ordinances.

The priest shall wash his clothes and bathe in water, **Num.** 19:7. Wash me thoroughly from my sin, **Ps.** 51:2, 7. Wash you, make you clean, cease to do evil, **Isa.** 1:16–18.

Jesus washed the feet of his Apostles, **John** 13:4–15 (**D&C** 88:138–139). Be baptized, and wash away your sins, **Acts** 22:16 (**Alma** 7:14; **D&C** 39:10).

No man can be saved except his garments are washed white, **Alma** 5:21 (3 Ne. 27:19). Their garments were washed white through the blood of Christ, **Alma** 13:11 (**Ether** 13:10).

By keeping the commandments they might be washed and cleansed from all their sins, **D&C** 76:52. Your anointings and your washings are ordained by the ordinance of my holy house, **D&C** 124:39–41.

Watch, Watchmen. *See also* Warn, Warning

To be vigilant, to guard. A person who watches and obeys is ready and prepared. Watchmen are leaders who are called by the Lord's representatives to have specific responsibility for the welfare of others. Those called as leaders have a special responsibility to also be watchmen to the rest of the world.

I have made thee a watchman, **Ezek.** 3:17–21. Watchmen who raise the warning voice save their own souls, **Ezek.** 33:7–9.

Watch therefore: for you do not know the hour your Lord will come, **Matt.** 24:42–43 (**Matt.** 25:13; **Mark** 13:35–37; **D&C** 133:10–11). Watch and pray that ye do not enter into temptation, **Matt.** 26:41 (3 Ne. 18:15, 18).

If ye do not watch yourselves, your thoughts, your words, your deeds, ye must perish, **Mosiah** 4:30. Alma ordained priests and elders to preside and watch over the Church, **Alma** 6:1.

He that does not watch for the Savior will be cut off, **D&C** 45:44. The bishop and others are called and ordained of God to watch over the Church, **D&C**

46:27. The Lord set watchmen over the vineyard, **D&C** 101:44–58.

Way. *See also* Jesus Christ; Walk, Walk with God

The path or course a person follows. Jesus said He was the way (**John** 14:4–6).

Keep the commandments of the Lord to walk in his ways, **Deut.** 8:6. Train up a child in the way he should go, **Prov.** 22:6 (2 Ne. 4:5). The Lord said his ways are higher than our ways, **Isa.** 55:8–9.

Strait is the gate and narrow is the way that leads to life, **Matt.** 7:13–14 (3 Ne. 14:13–14; 27:33; **D&C** 132:22, 25). God will make a way for you to escape temptation, **1 Cor.** 10:13.

The Lord gives no commandment that he does not prepare a way for his children to keep, **1 Ne.** 3:7 (1 Ne. 9:6; 17:3, 13). There is none other way except it be by the gate, **2 Ne.** 9:41. Ye are free to act for yourselves—to choose the way of everlasting death or the way of eternal life, **2 Ne.** 10:23. This is the way and there is no other way nor name, **2 Ne.** 31:21 (**Mosiah** 3:17; **Alma** 38:9; **Hel.** 5:9). In the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way, **Ether** 12:11 (1 Cor. 12:31).

Every man walketh in his own way, **D&C** 1:16. It must be done in my own way, **D&C** 104:16.

Weakness. *See also* Humble, Humility

The condition of being mortal and lacking ability, strength, or skill. Weakness is a state of being. All people are weak, and it is only by God's grace that they receive power to do righteous acts (**Jacob** 4:6–7). This weakness is manifest in part in the individual weaknesses or frailties that each person has.

Strengthen ye the weak hands, **Isa.** 35:3–4.

The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak, **Matt.** 26:41 (**Mark** 14:38).

Because of the weakness which is in me, according to the flesh, I would

Wealth

excuse myself, **1 Ne.** 19:6. I have been commanded to write these things, notwithstanding my weakness, **2 Ne.** 33:11. Do not be angry with thy servant because of his weakness, **Ether** 3:2. The Gentiles will mock at these things because of our weakness in writing, **Ether** 12:23–25, 40. I will show unto them their weakness, **Ether** 12:27–28. Because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, **Ether** 12:37.

He that is weak among you hereafter shall be made strong, **D&C** 50:16. Jesus Christ knows the weakness of man, **D&C** 62:1.

Wealth. *See* Riches

Welfare. *See also* Alms, Almsgiving; Fast, Fasting; Offering; Poor; Service

The process of and means for taking care of people's spiritual and temporal needs.

Open your hand wide to thy brother, to thy poor, and to thy needy in thy land, **Deut.** 15:11. He that giveth to the poor shall not lack, **Prov.** 28:27. Is this not the fast that I have chosen? to give thy bread to the hungry, to bring the poor into thy house, **Isa.** 58:6–7.

I was hungry and ye gave me meat; I was a stranger and ye took me in. When you do it to one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it to me, **Matt.** 25:35–40.

Administer your substance to him that stands in need, **Mosiah** 4:16–26. They gave to one another temporally and spiritually according to their needs and wants, **Mosiah** 18:29. They were commanded to join in fasting and prayer for the welfare of those who did not know God, **Alma** 6:6. Pray for your welfare and for the welfare of those around you, **Alma** 34:27–28. They had all things common among them, **4 Ne.** 1:3.

Remember the poor, **D&C** 42:30–31. Visit the poor and needy, **D&C** 44:6. Remember in all things the poor and needy, **D&C** 52:40. Wo to you rich who

will not give your substance to the poor, and wo to you poor who are not satisfied, who are greedy and will not labor, **D&C** 56:16–17.

In Zion there were no poor among them, **Moses** 7:18.

Whitmer, David

An early leader in the restored Church and one of the Three Witnesses to the divine origin and truthfulness of the Book of Mormon (**D&C** 14; 17–18). The Lord gave him personal instructions in Doctrine and Covenants 14 and 30:1–4.

Whitmer, John

An early leader in the restored Church and one of the Eight Witnesses to the Book of Mormon. See “The Testimony of Eight Witnesses” in the introductory pages of the Book of Mormon. He was also called to preach the gospel (**D&C** 30:9–11).

Whitmer, Peter, Jr.

An early leader in the restored Church and one of the Eight Witnesses to the Book of Mormon. See “The Testimony of Eight Witnesses” in the introductory pages of the Book of Mormon. The Lord gave him personal instructions in Doctrine and Covenants 16 and 30:5–8.

Whitney, Newel K.

An early leader in the restored Church. Newel K. Whitney was the bishop in Kirtland, Ohio (United States of America), and later served as Presiding Bishop of the Church (**D&C** 72:1–8; 104; 117).

Wicked, Wickedness. *See also*

Darkness, Spiritual; Filth, Filthiness; Sin; Ungodly; Unrighteous, Unrighteousness

Evil, iniquity; to be disobedient to God's commandments.

How then can I do this great wickedness, and sin against God, **Gen.** 39:7–9. The Lord is far from the wicked: but he heareth the prayer of the righteous,

Prov. 15:29. When the wicked rule, the people mourn, **Prov.** 29:2 (D&C 98:9).

Put away from among yourselves that wicked person, **1 Cor.** 5:13. We wrestle against spiritual wickedness in high places, **Eph.** 6:12.

Come ye out from the wicked, and touch not their unclean things, **Alma** 5:56–57 (D&C 38:42). This is the final state of the wicked, **Alma** 34:35 (Alma 40:13–14). Wickedness never was happiness, **Alma** 41:10. It is by the wicked that the wicked are punished, **Morm.** 4:5 (D&C 63:33).

At that hour cometh an entire separation of the righteous and the wicked, **D&C** 63:54.

Thus cometh the end of the wicked, **JS—M** 1:55.

Widow. *See also* Welfare

A woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried.

The fatherless and the widow shall come and shall eat, **Deut.** 14:29.

This poor widow has cast all that she had, **Mark** 12:41–44. Visit the fatherless and widows in their affliction, **James** 1:27.

The Lord will be a swift witness against those that oppress the widow, **3 Ne.** 24:5 (Zech. 7:10).

Widows and orphans shall be provided for, **D&C** 83:6 (D&C 136:8).

Wife. *See* Family; Marriage, Marry

Williams, Frederick G.

An early leader in the restored Church who served for a time as a counselor in the Presidency of the High Priesthood (D&C 81; 90:6, 19; 102:3).

Wisdom. *See also* Knowledge; Truth; Understanding

The ability or gift from God to judge correctly. A person gains wisdom through experience and study and by following God's counsel. Without God's help, man does not have true wisdom (2 Ne. 9:28; 27:26).

God gave Solomon wisdom, **1 Kgs.** 4:29–30. Wisdom is the principal thing; therefore get wisdom, **Prov.** 4:7. He that gets wisdom loveth his own soul, **Prov.** 19:8.

Jesus increased in wisdom, **Luke** 2:40, 52. If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, **James** 1:5 (D&C 42:68; JS—H 1:11).

I tell you these things that ye may learn wisdom, **Mosiah** 2:17. Learn wisdom in thy youth, **Alma** 37:35.

Saints shall find wisdom and great treasures of knowledge, **D&C** 89:19. Let him that is ignorant learn wisdom by humbling himself and calling upon the Lord, **D&C** 136:32.

Witness. *See also* Testimony

A statement or other evidence that something is true; a testimony. A witness can also be someone who gives such a statement or evidence based on personal knowledge; that is, someone who bears testimony.

Thou shalt not bear false witness, **Ex.** 20:16.

The gospel will be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations, **Matt.** 24:14 (JS—M 1:31). Ye shall be witnesses unto me, **Acts** 1:8. The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, **Rom.** 8:16 (1 Jn. 5:6).

Ye are willing to stand as witnesses of God at all times, **Mosiah** 18:8–9. We partake of the sacrament to witness unto the Father that we will keep the commandments and always remember Jesus, **3 Ne.** 18:10–11 (Moro. 4–5; D&C 20:77–79). Ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith, **Ether** 12:6.

Law of witnesses: in the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established, **D&C** 6:28 (Deut. 17:6; Matt. 18:16; 2 Cor. 13:1; Ether 5:4; D&C 128:3). I have ordained you to be Apostles and especial witnesses of my name, **D&C** 27:12 (D&C 107:23). The Seventy are called to be especial witnesses unto

the Gentiles and in all the world, **D&C** 107:25. Let there be a recorder, and let him be eye-witness of your baptisms, **D&C** 127:6 (**D&C** 128:2–4).

Witnesses of the Book of Mormon.

See also Book of Mormon; Witness

The Lord commanded others besides the Prophet Joseph Smith to bear record of the divinity of the Book of Mormon (**D&C** 17; 128:20). See the testimonies of these witnesses in the “Introduction” at the front of the Book of Mormon.

By the words of three I will establish my word, **2 Ne.** 11:3. Witnesses to bear testimony of his word unto the children of men, **2 Ne.** 27:12–13. In the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be established, **Ether** 5:4.

By faith the Three Witnesses shall see the plates, **D&C** 17.

Woman, Women. *See also* Brethren, Brother; Man, Men; Sister

An adult female person, a daughter of God. The term *Woman* is sometimes used in scripture as a title of respect (**John** 19:26; **Alma** 19:10).

God created male and female, **Gen.** 1:27 (**Moses** 2:27; 6:9; **Abr.** 4:27). A virtuous woman is priced above rubies, **Prov.** 31:10–31.

Woman is the glory of the man, **1 Cor.** 11:7. Neither is the man without the woman, neither the woman without the man, in the Lord, **1 Cor.** 11:11. Women should adorn themselves in modest apparel, **1 Tim.** 2:9–10.

I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women, **Jacob** 2:28.

Thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou art an elect lady, **D&C** 25:3. Women have claim on their husbands for maintenance, **D&C** 83:2.

Woodruff, Wilford. *See also* Manifesto; Official Declaration 1

The fourth President of the Church following the Restoration of the gospel

through the Prophet Joseph Smith. He was born in 1807 and died in 1898.

Was called to fill a position in the Council of the Twelve, **D&C** 118:6. Was among the choice spirits reserved to come forth in the fulness of times, **D&C** 138:53. Received a revelation to stop plural marriage in the Church, **OD** 1.

Word. *See* Jesus Christ—Premortal existence of Christ

Word of God. *See also* Commandments of God; Revelation; Scriptures

Instructions, commandments, or a message from God. God’s children may receive His word directly by revelation through the Spirit or from His chosen servants (**D&C** 1:38).

By every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of the Lord doth man live, **Deut.** 8:3 (**Matt.** 4:4; **D&C** 84:43–44). Thy word is a lamp unto my feet, and a light unto my path, **Ps.** 119:105.

They were all filled with the Holy Ghost and spake the word of God with boldness, **Acts** 4:31–33.

The iron rod was the word of God that led to the tree of life, **1 Ne.** 11:25 (**1 Ne.** 15:23–25). Ye were past feeling, that ye could not feel his words, **1 Ne.** 17:45–46. Wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God, **2 Ne.** 27:14 (**2 Ne.** 28:29; **Ether** 4:8). Press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, **2 Ne.** 31:20 (**2 Ne.** 32:3). Because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God, **Mosiah** 26:3 (**Alma** 12:10). They had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might know the word of God, **Alma** 17:2. Try the virtue of the word of God, **Alma** 31:5. Alma compared the word of God to a seed, **Alma** 32:28–43.

Whatsoever they speak when moved upon by the Holy Ghost shall be the word of the Lord, **D&C** 68:4. Live by every word that proceedeth from the mouth of God, **D&C** 84:44–45.

Whoso treasureth up my word shall not be deceived, **JS—M** 1:37.

Word of Wisdom

A law of health revealed by the Lord for the physical and spiritual benefit of the Saints (D&C 89). It has become commonly referred to as the Word of Wisdom. The Lord has always taught His followers principles of health. The Lord revealed to Joseph Smith which types of foods to eat and which to avoid, along with a promise of temporal and spiritual blessings for obeying the Word of Wisdom.

Do not drink wine nor strong drink, **Lev.** 10:9. Wine is a mocker, and strong drink is raging, **Prov.** 20:1. Strong drink shall be bitter to them that drink it, **Isa.** 24:9. Daniel would not defile himself with the king's meat and wine, **Dan.** 1:8.

If any man defile the temple of God, him shall God destroy, **1 Cor.** 3:16–17. Drunkards shall not inherit the kingdom of God, **1 Cor.** 6:10 (Gal. 5:21).

Whoso forbiddeth that man should not eat meats is not ordained of God, **D&C** 49:18–21. All things which come of the earth are to be used with judgment, not to excess, **D&C** 59:20. The Lord counseled the Saints to not use wine, strong drinks, tobacco, and hot drinks, **D&C** 89:1–9. Herbs, fruits, flesh, and grain are ordained for the use of man and of animals, **D&C** 89:10–17. Obedience to the Word of Wisdom brings temporal and spiritual blessings, **D&C** 89:18–21.

Works

A person's actions, whether good or bad. Each person will be judged by his own works.

The Lord will render to every man according to his works, **Prov.** 24:12.

Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, **Matt.** 5:16 (3 Ne. 12:16). He that doeth the will of my Father shall enter into the kingdom of heaven, **Matt.** 7:21. Faith without works is dead, **James** 2:14–26.

They must be judged of their works, **1 Ne.** 15:32 (Mosiah 3:24). We know that

it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do, **2 Ne.** 25:23. Teach them to never be weary of good works, **Alma** 37:34. It is requisite that men should be judged according to their works, **Alma** 41:3. By their works ye shall know them, **Moro.** 7:5 (D&C 18:38).

I, the Lord, will judge all men according to their works, **D&C** 137:9.

World. See also Babel, Babylon; Earth; Mortal, Mortality

The earth; a testing place for mortal men. Figuratively, those people who do not obey God's commandments.

Mortal existence: In the world ye shall have tribulation, **John** 16:33.

Fear not unto death; for in this world your joy is not full, **D&C** 101:36.

People who do not obey the commandments: I will punish the world for their evil, **Isa.** 13:11 (2 Ne. 23:11).

If the world hate you, ye know that it hated me before, **John** 15:18–19.

The great and spacious building was the pride of the world, **1 Ne.** 11:36.

The world is ripening in iniquity, **D&C** 18:6. Keep thyself unspotted from the world, **D&C** 59:9. He that is faithful and endureth shall overcome the world, **D&C** 63:47. Ye shall not live after the manner of the world, **D&C** 95:13.

End of the world: I create a new earth: and the former shall not be remembered, **Isa.** 65:17 (Rev. 21:1; A of F 1:10).

In the end of this world, the tares will be gathered and burned in the fire, **Matt.** 13:40, 49 (Mal. 4:1; Jacob 6:3).

My vineyard will I cause to be burned with fire, **Jacob** 5:77 (D&C 64:23–24).

The Lord will destroy Satan and his works at the end of the world, **D&C** 19:3. The earth shall die, but it shall be quickened again, **D&C** 88:25–26.

The Lord showed Enoch the end of the world, **Moses** 7:67.

Worldliness. See also Money; Pride; Riches; Vain, Vanity

Unrighteous desires and efforts for

Worship

temporal riches and material goods while forsaking spiritual things.

For what is a man profited if he shall gain the whole world and lose his own soul, **Matt.** 16:26.

They set their hearts upon the vain things of the world, **Alma** 4:8 (**Alma** 31:27).

Lay aside the things of this world, **D&C** 25:10. Men's hearts are set so much upon the things of this world, **D&C** 121:35.

Worship. *See also* God, Godhead

Love, reverence, service, and devotion for God (**D&C** 20:19). Worship includes prayer, fasting, church service, participating in gospel ordinances, and other practices that show devotion and love for God.

Thou shalt have no other gods before me, **Ex.** 20:3 (**Ex.** 32:1–8, 19–35; **Ps.** 81:9).

Worship the Father in spirit and in truth, **John** 4:23. Worship him that made heaven and earth, **Rev.** 14:7 (**D&C** 133:38–39).

Worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, **2 Ne.** 25:29. They believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, **Jacob** 4:5. Zenos taught that men should pray and worship in all places, **Alma** 33:3–11. Worship God, in whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth, **Alma** 34:38. The people fell down at the feet of Jesus and worshiped him, **3 Ne.** 11:17.

All men must repent, believe on Jesus Christ, and worship the Father in his name, **D&C** 20:29. I give unto you these sayings that you may understand and know how to worship, and know what you worship, **D&C** 93:19.

This one God only will I worship, **Moses** 1:12–20. We claim the privilege of worshipping Almighty God, **A of F** 1:11.

Worthy, Worthiness. *See also*

Righteous, Righteousness

To be personally righteous and to

stand approved in the sight of God and His appointed leaders.

He that takes not his cross is not worthy of me, **Matt.** 10:38. The laborer is worthy of his hire, **Luke** 10:7 (**D&C** 31:5).

See that ye do all things in worthiness, **Morm.** 9:29. They were not baptized save they were worthy, **Moro.** 6:1.

The slothful shall not be counted worthy to stand, **D&C** 107:100. He that will not bear chastisement is not worthy of my kingdom, **D&C** 136:31. The priesthood was extended to all worthy male members, **OD** 2.

Wrath. *See* Anger

Yoke. *See also* Disciple

A device put around the necks of animals or men to harness them together. The yoke of Christ is a symbol for discipleship, whereas the yoke of bondage is a symbol for oppression.

My yoke is easy, and my burden is light, **Matt.** 11:29–30. Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers, **2 Cor.** 6:14. Be not entangled with the yoke of bondage, **Gal.** 5:1.

Neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage, **Alma** 44:2.

The sufferings of the Saints is an iron yoke, a strong band, and the chains of hell, **D&C** 123:1–3, 7–8.

Young, Brigham

An early Apostle in this dispensation and the second President of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. He led the Saints westward from Nauvoo, Illinois, to the Salt Lake Valley and was a great colonizer in the western United States.

Brigham Young was called to be President over the Twelve Apostles, **D&C** 124:127. Brigham Young was commended for his labors and relieved of future travel abroad, **D&C** 126. The Lord instructed Brigham Young how to organize the Saints for their westward

trek, **D&C** 136. Brigham Young was among the choice ones in the spirit world, **D&C** 138:53.

Zacharias. *See also* Elisabeth; John the Baptist

In the New Testament, the father of John the Baptist. Zacharias held the office of priest and officiated in the temple.

Zacharias was slain between the temple and the altar, **Matt.** 23:35 (Luke 11:51). The angel Gabriel promised Zacharias and his wife, Elisabeth, a son, **Luke** 1:5–25 (**D&C** 27:7). His tongue was loosed, **Luke** 1:59–79.

Zarahemla. *See also* Ammon, Descendant of Zarahemla; Mulek

In the Book of Mormon, Zarahemla refers to (1) a man who led Mulek's colony, (2) a city named after him, (3) the land of Zarahemla, or (4) the people who followed him.

Zarahemla rejoiced that the Lord had sent the Nephites, **Omni** 1:14. Zarahemla gave a genealogy of the fathers, **Omni** 1:18. Ammon was a descendant of Zarahemla, **Mosiah** 7:3, 13. The Church was established in the city of Zarahemla, **Alma** 5:2. Because of the righteous the wicked were saved in Zarahemla, **Hel.** 13:12. The city of Zarahemla was burned at Christ's death, **3 Ne.** 8:8, 24.

Zebulun. *See also* Israel; Jacob, Son of Isaac

In the Old Testament, a son of Jacob and Leah (**Gen.** 30:19–20).

The tribe of Zebulun: Jacob blessed the tribe of Zebulun (**Gen.** 49:13). The tribe of Zebulun joined with Deborah and Barak in fighting against the enemies of Israel (**Judg.** 4:4–6, 10). They also joined with Gideon in fighting the Midianites (**Judg.** 6:33–35).

Zechariah

An Old Testament prophet who

prophesied around 520 B.C. He lived at the same time as the prophet Haggai (**Ezra** 5:1; 6:14).

The book of Zechariah: The book is noted for its prophecies of Christ's mortal ministry and His Second Coming (**Zech.** 9:9; 11:12–13; 12:10; 13:6). Chapters 1–8 contain a series of visions of the future of God's people. Chapters 9–14 contain visions about the Messiah, the last days, the gathering of Israel, the final great war, and the Second Coming.

Zedekiah. *See also* Mulek

In the Old Testament, the last king of Judah (2 Kgs. 24:17–20; 25:2–7). Zedekiah imprisoned the prophet Jeremiah (**Jer.** 32:1–5), and Jeremiah prophesied Zedekiah's captivity (**Jer.** 34:2–8, 21). Lehi and his family lived in Jerusalem during the first year of the reign of Zedekiah (1 Ne. 1:4). All but one of the sons of Zedekiah were slain; his son Mulek escaped to the Western Hemisphere (**Jer.** 52:10; **Omni** 1:15; **Hel.** 8:21).

Zeezrom

In the Book of Mormon, a lawyer in the city of Ammonihah. Alma and Amulek perceived through the Spirit that Zeezrom was lying. He was then converted to the gospel of Christ (**Alma** 11:21–46; 15:1–12).

Zeniff

In the Book of Mormon, a man who led the group that returned to the land of Nephi; he became their king and led them righteously (**Mosiah** 9–10).

Zenock

A prophet of Israel in Old Testament times who is mentioned only in the Book of Mormon.

Prophesied of Christ's death, **1 Ne.** 19:10. Spoke of the Son of God, **Alma** 33:15 (**Alma** 34:7). Was a martyr for the truth, **Alma** 33:17. Prophesied concerning the coming of the Messiah, **Hel.** 8:20.

Zenos

Zenos

A prophet of Israel in Old Testament times whose prophecies of Christ's mission are found only in the Book of Mormon.

Prophesied of Christ's burial and three days of darkness, **1 Ne.** 19:10, 12. Predicted the gathering of Israel, **1 Ne.** 19:16. Jacob quoted Zenos's parable of the tame and the wild olive trees, **Jacob** 5. Jacob expounded Zenos's allegory, **Jacob** 6:1–10. Taught concerning prayer and worship, **Alma** 33:3–11. Taught that redemption comes through the Son, **Alma** 34:7. Was slain for his bold testimony, **Hel.** 8:19. Spoke of the restoration of the Lamanites, **Hel.** 15:11. Testified of the destruction at Christ's death, **3 Ne.** 10:15–16.

Zephaniah

An Old Testament prophet who lived during the reign of Josiah (639–608 B.C.).

The book of Zephaniah: Chapter 1 speaks of a coming day that shall be filled with wrath and trouble. Chapter 2 admonishes the people of Israel to seek righteousness and meekness. Chapter 3 tells of the Second Coming, when all nations will assemble for battle. The Lord, however, will reign in their midst.

Zerubbabel

In the Old Testament, when Cyrus gave permission for the Jews to return to Palestine, Zerubbabel was appointed governor or representative of the Jewish royal house. His Persian name was Sheshbazzar (Ezra 1:8). He was involved in rebuilding the temple in Jerusalem (Ezra 3:2, 8; 5:2).

Zion. *See also* Enoch; New Jerusalem

The pure in heart (D&C 97:21). Zion also means a place where the pure in heart live. The city built by Enoch and his people that was eventually taken to heaven because of righteousness was named Zion (D&C 38:4; Moses 7:18–21, 69). In the latter days a city named Zion

will be built near Jackson County, Missouri (United States of America), to which the tribes of Israel will gather (D&C 103:11–22; 133:18). The Saints are counseled to build up Zion wherever they are living in the world.

The city of David was called Zion, **1 Kgs.** 8:1. Out of Zion shall go forth the law, **Isa.** 2:2–3 (Micah 4:2; 2 Ne. 12:2–3). The Redeemer shall come to Zion, **Isa.** 59:20. I will take you one of a city, and two of a family, and I will bring you to Zion, **Jer.** 3:14. In mount Zion and in Jerusalem shall be deliverance, **Joel** 2:32 (Obad. 1:17).

Blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion, **1 Ne.** 13:37. The daughters of Zion are haughty, **2 Ne.** 13:16 (Isa. 3:16). Wo be unto him that is at ease in Zion, **2 Ne.** 28:19–25.

Seek to bring forth and establish the cause of Zion, **D&C** 6:6 (D&C 11:6). Him have I inspired to move the cause of Zion in mighty power for good, **D&C** 21:7. The New Jerusalem shall be called Zion, **D&C** 45:66–67. Independence, Missouri, is the place for the city of Zion, **D&C** 57:1–3. A scourge remaineth upon the children of Zion until they repent, **D&C** 84:58.

The Lord called his people Zion, because they were of one heart and one mind, **Moses** 7:18–19. Zion (the New Jerusalem) will be built upon the American continent, **A of F** 1:10.

Zipporah. *See also* Moses

In the Old Testament, the wife of Moses and the daughter of Jethro (Ex. 2:21; 18:2).

Zoram, Zoramites

In the Book of Mormon, the servant of Laban who joined with Nephi and Lehi to come to the promised land (1 Ne. 4:31–38). Because of Zoram's faithfulness, Lehi blessed him along with Lehi's own sons (2 Ne. 1:30–32). His descendants were known as Zoramites (Jacob 1:13).

